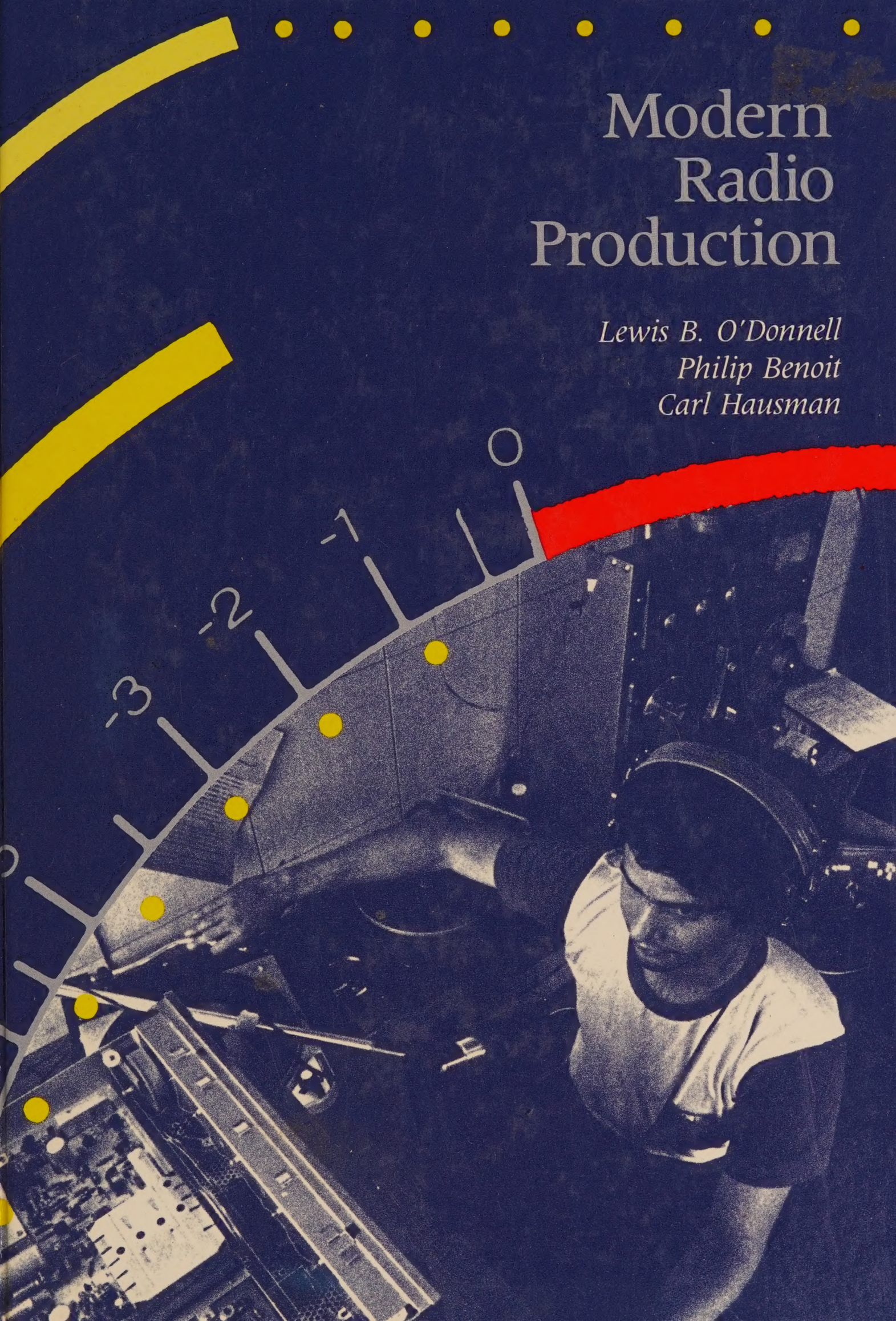
Modern Radio Production

Lewis B. O'Donnell
Philip Benoit
Carl Hausman



MODERN RADIO PRODUCTION

General

The New Communications by Frederick Williams
Mediamerica: Form, Content, and Consequence of Mass Communication, 3d, by Edward Jay Whetmore
The Interplay of Influence: Mass Media & Their Publics in News, Advertising, Politics by Kathleen Hall Jamieson and Karlyn Kohrs Campbell
Mass Communication and Everyday Life: A Perspective on Theory and Effects by Dennis K. Davis and Stanley J. Baran
Mass Media Research: An Introduction by Roger D. Wimmer and Joseph R. Dominick
Communication Research: Strategies and Sources by Rebecca B. Rubin, Alan M. Rubin, and Linda Piele
The Internship Experience by Lynne Schafer Gross

Broadcast and Cable

Stay Tuned: A Concise History of American Broadcasting by Christopher H. Sterling and John M. Kittross
Writing for Television and Radio, 4th, by Robert L. Hilliard
Communicating Effectively on Television by Evan Blythin and Larry A. Samovar
World Broadcasting Systems: A Comparative Analysis by Sydney W. Head
Broadcast/Cable Programming: Strategies and Practices, 2d, by Susan Tyler Eastman, Sydney W. Head, and Lewis Klein
Broadcast and Cable Selling by Charles Warner
Advertising in the Broadcast and Cable Media, 2d, by Elizabeth J. Heighton and Don R. Cunningham
Strategies in Broadcast and Cable Promotion by Susan Tyler Eastman and Robert A. Klein
Modern Radio Station Practices, 2d, by Joseph S. Johnson and Kenneth K. Jones
Modern Radio Production by Lewis B. O'Donnell, Philip Benoit, and Carl Hausman
Audio in Media, 2d, by Stanley R. Alten
Television Production Handbook, 4th, by Herbert Zettl
Television Production Workbook, 4th, by Herbert Zettl
Directing Television and Film by Alan A. Armer
Sight–Sound–Motion: Applied Media Aesthetics by Herbert Zettl
Electronic Cinematography: Achieving Photographic Control over the Video Image by Harry Mathias and Richard Patterson

Journalism

Media Writing: News for the Mass Media by Doug Newsom and James A. Wollert
Exercises for Practice in Media Writing by Doug Newsom and James A. Wollert
Excellence in College Journalism by Wayne Overbeck and Thomas M. Pasqua
When Words Collide: A Journalist's Guide to Grammar and Style by Lauren Kessler and Duncan McDonald
Exercises for When Words Collide by Lauren Kessler and Duncan McDonald
Interviews That Work: A Practical Guide for Journalists by Shirley Biagi
News Editing in the '80s: Text and Exercises by William L. Rivers
Reporting Public Affairs: Problems and Solutions by Ronald P. Lovell
Newswriting for the Electronic Media: Principles, Examples, Applications by Daniel E. Garvey and William L. Rivers
Free-Lancer and Staff Writer: Newspaper Features and Magazine Articles, 4th, by William L. Rivers and Alison R. Work
Magazine Editing in the '80s: Text and Exercises by William L. Rivers
This Is PR: The Realities of Public Relations, 3d, by Doug Newsom and Alan Scott
Writing in Public Relations Practice: Form and Style, 2d, by Doug Newsom and Bob J. Carrell
Creative Strategy in Advertising, 2d, by A. Jerome Jewler

MODERN RADIO PRODUCTION

Lewis B. O'Donnell
State University of New York at Oswego

Philip Benoit
Dickinson College

Carl Hausman
Free-Lance Writer and Producer

Wadsworth Publishing Company
Belmont, California
A Division of Wadsworth, Inc.

Senior Editor: Rebecca Hayden
Production Editor: Andrea Cava
Interior and Cover Designer: Andrew H. Ogus
Copy Editor: Brenda Griffing
Illustrator: Shirley Bortoli
Print Buyer: Barbara Britton

Photographs by Philip Benoit unless otherwise credited. Cover photograph copyright © Peeter Vilms/Jeroboam, Inc.

© 1986 by Wadsworth, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transcribed, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher, Wadsworth Publishing Company, Belmont, California 94002, a division of Wadsworth, Inc.

Printed in the United States of America

5 6 7 8 9 10—90 89

ISBN 0-534-05064-6

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
O'Donnell, Lewis B.
Modern radio production.
(Wadsworth series in mass communication)
Bibliography: p.
Includes index.
1. Radio broadcasting. 2. Radio plays—Production and direction. I. Benoit, Philip, [date].
II. Hausman, Carl, [date]. III. Title. IV. Series.
PN1991.75.O36 1986 791.44'0232 85-3346
ISBN 0-534-05064-6

Preface

Modern Radio Production will introduce you to the fascinating and challenging field of radio production. Why was it written? Because we perceived a need for a nontechnical text that provides step-by-step instruction in radio production and an insight into the world of professional radio. For too long the simple concepts of production have been shrouded in technical jargon, and the stress has been on the hardware, not on the product, the finished production.

The needless complication of radio production often results in gaps in the accumulated knowledge of both students and practicing professionals; it's all too easy to "tune out" when the terms and concepts become too ponderous. This is mentioned because some readers, perhaps through experience in the campus radio station, may have picked up some familiarity with equipment and practices and may feel that portions of this book are too basic.

We don't think that will be the case. Although hands-on experience is valuable, people working at campus radio stations aren't always exposed to a wide range of techniques and tend to rely on a mechnical, learned-by-rote approach, without an understanding of the theories behind the techniques.

Modern Radio Production is structured to provide that mix of techniques and theory, along with step-by-step instruction in hands-on production techniques. We believe that production is basically an extension of a particular station's programming "sound."

Part One, The Tools, comprises Chapters 1 to 5. Chapter 1 introduces radio and radio programming and tells how the role of production fits in. Chapter 2 demystifies the workings and operations of the broadcast console, the integral but often-misunderstood tool of radio production, and introduces some of the concepts that relate to the equipment and production technique chapters that follow. From Chapter 2 on, the text

includes *applications,* problems posed and solved in relation to the material presented in the chapter and exercises. The exercises provide a mixture of production work and thoughtful problem solving. Chapters 3, 4, and 5 explain the operation of basic equipment and deal, respectively, with turntables, tape recording and playback units, and microphones and sound.

The next three chapters, Part Two, deal with the basic techniques of production. Chapter 6 explains the basics of splicing and dubbing. Chapter 7 outlines many of the basic operations used in recorded production in a studio setting; Chapter 8 deals with production techniques from the standpoint of doing a live radio airshift.

Part Three, The Applications, focuses on the achievement of effects, producing radio that creates a mood and puts across a message. Chapter 9 blends the mechanics of production with artistic elements of communicating an idea. Radio drama and dramatic elements in radio production are featured in Chapter 10; its purpose is not to deal with radio drama as such but to show you how dramatic scenes are incorporated into a variety of productions. Commercials—a very important product in today's radio—are discussed in Chapter 11, where the techniques of construction and persuasion are outlined.

Chapter 12 centers on production for news and public affairs programming; Chapter 13 explains the intricacies of remote and sports production. The last chapter focuses on some of the more advanced aspects of radio production, such as multichannel production, music recording, and simple broadcast electronics.

This sequence of instruction will, we feel, provide a basic and well-rounded scope of knowledge to the student entering radio production. This knowledge will serve as groundwork for future experimentation, because in the fascinating field of radio broadcasting, a creative and energetic person never stops learning.

The authors would like to express their sincere gratitude to a number of people who made valuable contributions to the book. First, our thanks to Frank (Fritz) Messere of the State University College of New York at Oswego. Fritz served as our technical adviser and made contributions far above and beyond the call of duty. The book is a better one because of his willingness to help and, of course, his seemingly endless knowledge of broadcast audio.

Several reviewers spent a great deal of time going over the manuscript point by point, and they made valuable suggestions. We owe thanks to David E. Downing, Lansing Community College; Michael P. DuMonceau, University of Maryland; Kenneth E. Hadwiger, Eastern Illinois University; Charles T. Lynch, California State University, Northridge; John MacKerron, Towson State University; David C. Martin, California State University, Sacramento; Thomas O. Olson, Kent State University; and Charles L. Rasberry, Arkansas State University.

Also, we'd like to thank our editor, Becky Hayden, who cheerfully helped us wade through mountains of manuscript and photos to turn out a more polished final product.

Thanks, too, to David Gibson of NBC radio; to Less Ross of radio station WSRS; to all the professionals who lent us their time for interviews contained in the appendix; to Richard Wilson, one of the nation's most respected science fiction writers, who let us adapt his play *Another Time* for radio; to Vincent Doody of State University of New York at Oswego; and to Susan Rezen, who helped make the project possible.

Contents

Preface v

PART ONE: THE TOOLS

1 Production in Modern Radio 2
Sound of the Station 3
Formats 3
Networks 6
Other Programming Developments in Radio 6
The Role of the Producer in Modern Radio 7

2 The Console 10
Function of the Console 10
Understanding Console Function: Some Hypothetical Examples 11
Understanding Console Function: Actual Consoles 23
Operation of the Console 25
Applications 28
Exercises 29

3 Turntables 30
Structure of a Turntable 30
The Disc 31
Review of Turntable Operation 38
Compact Discs 39
Applications 41
Exercises 41

4 Tape Recording and Playback Units 43
Magnetic Tape 43
Workings of the Reel-to-Reel Tape Machine 44
Cueing a Tape 48
Heads and Tracks 49
Cassette Machines 51
Cartridge Machines 52
Special Problems Associated with Cartridge Machines 54
Relation of Record Units to the Console 57
Applications 58
Exercises 58

5 Microphones and Sound 60
The Basics of Sound 60
The Microphone: How It Works 67
Physical Types of Microphone 77
Microphone Selection and Use 79
Applications 85
Exercises 86

PART TWO: THE TECHNIQUES

6 Splicing and Dubbing 90
The Basics of Splicing and Dubbing 91
Splicing 91
Dubbing 97
Editing 101
Applications 104
Exercises 105

7 Recorded Program Production 106
Recorded Versus Live, On-Air Production 106
Layout of a Production Studio 107
Working in a Production Studio 109
Music 111
Recorded Voice 114
Sound Effects in Studio Production 120
Combining Elements in Production 121
Applications 122
Exercises 122

8 Live, On-Air Production 124
Typical Airshift 124
Sound of the Station 130
Suggestions for Live, On-Air Production 131
Applications 133
Exercises 134

PART THREE: THE APPLICATIONS

9 Achieving an Effect 138
What Is an Effect? 138
Kinds of Effect 139
How Production Elements Support a Theme 139
How a Producer Utilizes Production Elements 141
Using Elements of Sound to Achieve an Effect 147
Applications 149
Exercises 151

10 Drama and Dramatic Elements in Radio Production 152
The Structure of Drama 152
Role of Dramatic Elements in Radio Production 154
Role of Dramatic Elements in News Production 156
Technical Considerations of Radio Drama 158
Applications 160
Exercise 161

11 Commercial Production 162
What Makes a Commercial Effective? 163
Elements of Effective Radio Advertising 164
Practical Approaches to Radio Commercials 168
Suggestions for Producing Effective Commercials 172
Applications 175
Exercises 176

12 Radio Production for News and Public Affairs 178
Newsgathering 179
News Writing 180
News Assembly 181
News Reading and Reporting 182

News and Public Affairs Programming 182
Newscasts 183
Talk Shows 187
Special Events 189
Production Techniques for News and Public Affairs 189
Applications 193
Exercises 193

13 Remote and Sports Production 195

Remote Radio Equipment 196
Planning the Remote 199
The Sports Remote 202
A Final Note 204
Applications 205
Exercises 205

14 Advanced Radio Production 207

Multichannel Recording 207
Stereo 213
Recording Music 213
Electronic Equipment and Its Use in Radio Production 218
Applications 223
Exercises 223

Appendix A Radio Production Techniques and Equipment: Views from Practicing Professionals 225

Appendix B Conversation with a Radio Network Producer 230

Appendix C *Another Time,* A Play by Richard Wilson 235

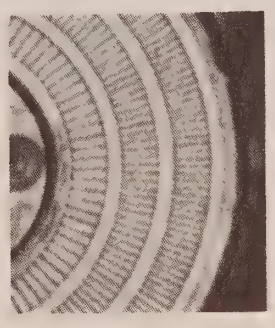
Suggested Reading 244

Glossary 246

Index 253

MODERN RADIO PRODUCTION

PART ONE
THE TOOLS



1
Production In Modern Radio

Radio broadcasting in America has never been healthier. Despite the forecasts of doom that grew out of television's emergence as the major entertainment medium in the 1950s, radio has adapted and grown. In fact, today there are more stations—with more listeners—than ever before.

Radio's beginnings in the early part of this century gave no hint of the role it would play in today's world of exciting media possibilities. The early radio experimenters such as Marconi and Fessenden never envisioned an era when their electronic toy would become a means of providing entertainment and information to audiences in their cars, in their boats, and in their homes, and even to audiences who are jogging.

Early radio programming gradually evolved from a novel attempt to bring the cultural offerings of major cities to the living rooms of all America; gradually, radio assumed its current status as a "companion." Early radio programming consisted of live symphony broadcasts, poetry readings, and live coverage of major news events, along with the kinds of drama, situation comedy, and other programming that form the bulk of today's television schedules.

Many radio historians put the time of radio's emergence into its present form at 1935, when Martin Block first aired his "Make-Believe Ballroom" show on New York City's WNEW. The idea for the program came from a West Coast station when a planned remote broadcast of a band performance at a local ballroom was canceled. To fill the time, the enterprising broadcaster obtained some of the band's recordings and played them over the air. He identified the program as coming from a "make-believe" ballroom, and the time was filled. When Block brought the idea to New York, it was the birth of the "disc jockey" era in radio.

Today, the mainstay of radio is recorded music, interspersed with news and information—and, of course, commercial messages, which pay for the whole operation in commercial stations. When television took over

the living rooms of American homes and supplied, in a far more explicit way, the drama, variety, and other traditional program fare that had marked radio in its heyday, it was the "DJ" form that became the dominant form of radio. Music and news and personality became the foci of radio's ability to attract listeners.

The development of solid-state technology and later microchip electronics freed radio from bulky, stationary hardware. At the beach, in the car, and on the city streets, radio can be the constant companion of even the most active of listeners. And freedom from the long program forms that typify television programming means that information cycles quickly in radio. For example, when people want to find out about a breaking news event, they turn first to the radio.

All this has great significance for you as you learn the techniques of radio production. Production in radio is basically the assembly of various sources of sound to achieve a purpose connected to radio programming. You, as the production person in radio, are responsible for what is known as the "sound" of the station.

SOUND OF THE STATION

The sound of a station is planned for an effect that uses the combination of various sources of sound to create a specific result, a specific product that appeals to specific listeners. It's how these sources go together that makes one station different from the others that compete for the attention of the audience.

The sound of a station is constructed by things such as the type of music programmed, the style and pace of vocal delivery used by the station's announcers, the sound effects used in the introductions to newscasts, and other special techniques of recording and sound production methods. All are elements of the station's sound, and the way they are combined makes each station's sound unique.

FORMATS

Commercial radio stations make their money by reaching audiences for the advertisers who pay for time on the station's airwaves. The audiences are "delivered" to the advertisers. They are measured by rating services, which use sophisticated sampling techniques to provide a head count of the audience that includes data on characteristics of that audience, such as age, sex, and income level.

The programming mission of a commercial radio station is to provide on the air something that will attract audiences, who then can be "sold" to

advertisers. If the programming doesn't achieve this, there will be no advertisers, and of course no money coming into the station coffers. Without money, the station cannot operate. So, the name of the game is to get and hold an audience that will attract advertisers. This crucial aspect of radio programming—that is, developing a **format**—becomes a highly specialized field of its own.*

Just as commercial radio strives to attract and hold a specific audience to be successful in the marketplace, public radio stations must use the same fundamental techniques to design programming that will meet the needs of their audiences. Though public radio stations do not sell time to advertisers, they must successfully package their programming to obtain program underwriters and individual subscribers.

Reaching a specific audience

Unlike television, which tries to appeal to a broad segment of the public with its programs, radio has developed into a medium that focuses on smaller groups, the so-called target audiences. For example, a station may choose to program rock music to attract what's known as a young demographic. ("Demographics" are the statistical characteristics of human populations, and the word is commonly used in the singular form in the broadcasting industry to designate any given segment of the audience.) By appealing to one segment of the public, which shares a preference for a certain type of music, a station can hope to attract advertisers wishing to sell products to people of that group.

How target audiences affect format

Much time and money has gone into determining the types of programming that attract different types of audience. The results of these efforts are identification of formats that appeal to specific audiences.

A format is essentially the arrangement of program elements, often musical recordings, into a sequence that will attract and hold the segment of the audience a station is seeking. For example, a format labeled "top 40" is constructed around records that are the most popular recordings sold to an audience mostly in its teens. By programming these recordings successfully, a station will attract a number of teen-age listeners. The more teen-agers who listen to the station, the more the station can charge the advertisers who want to use station airwaves to reach this group via broadcast commercials.

There are a great number of formats, including adult contemporary (which reaches adults with modern music), country, hit radio (which is similar to

*Terms set in boldface type are defined in the glossary.

the top 40 format), album-oriented rock (which features "progressive" music and is a fixture on the FM band), and classical. There are other specialized formats, too, such as black/urban contemporary, all-news, and all-jazz. An interesting phenomenon in recent times has been the decrease in the differences between formats of AM and FM radio. The "screaming rocker," once heard solely on AM, is beginning to appear on FM; in a surprising number of markets, the top-rated stations are FM rockers. Talk radio on FM is undergoing trial runs, too.

Format, by the way, is more than music. The formula for constructing a format might be considered to be production, personality, and programming. How the production, personality, and programming are integrated into a format depends on a marketing decision by the station's management. This decision is usually based on a careful analysis of the competition in a given market and an ascertainment of which audience segment can be realistically expected to become listeners to a particular station.

Stations switch formats frequently. This is sometimes done because of a decision to go after a more attractive demographic segment; or, the tastes of an audience may shift. Perhaps there is too much competition in a particular format, and one station elects to go after another segment of the audience, a segment for which there is less competition.

How formats are constructed

Stations assemble their formats in several different ways. Some simply obtain recordings and program them in some sort of sequence throughout the schedule. Other stations carry different formats for different parts of the day.

Incidentally, the different times of the broadcast day are called "dayparts," and research has shown that often different populations or demographics listen to different dayparts. We tune to one station because we want to hear traffic reports in the morning, although we may prefer another station in the afternoon because of the music that particular station plays. We tune to a third station at night because it carries a sports broadcast we're interested in hearing.

A very big industry that has grown up in recent years provides stations with "ready to use" formats. Firms known as syndicators will, for a fee, provide music tapes ready for broadcast. The music has been carefully researched and arranged in a pattern designed to attract maximum numbers of the desired audience segments. Some of these services have all the music and announcer segments included, with spaces for local commercials and newscasts. Others simply supply music tapes.

Automation in radio has made possible the use of tapes from syndicators by a minimum number of people at the station level to get the program on the air. Many stations on which the programming *appears* as though a num-

ber of people are doing various functions over the air are staffed by a sole operator, babysitting a large bank of automation equipment.

NETWORKS

In the 1930s and 1940s radio networks were major sources of programming for affiliated radio stations around the country. They supplied news, variety, and dramatic shows, along with music programs. At one point, local origination on many stations merely filled the hole in the **network** schedules. In fact, rules were developed by the Federal Communications Commission to prevent the total domination of radio station schedules by network programming.

Today's radio networks serve a function quite different from that of the networks of the earlier era. Stations today depend on their networks as adjunct sources of programming and use them to supplement locally originated programming. Many stations take news from networks, and this provides a national and worldwide news service that usually is not available from a strictly local operation. In addition, radio networks often offer short feature programs to their affiliated stations; these programs may be carried directly from the network or used at a later date. Increasingly, networks are providing other forms of programming such as music or holiday specials; programming of these types is used by affiliates to supplement their local schedules.

Networks are also taking advantage of modern technology to offer programs to their affiliates via satellite (Fig. 1.1), which provides an excellent quality of sound reproduction, higher than that obtainable from "land lines." And while radio networks are certainly less a programming centerpiece than in pretelevision days, growth in services is occurring rapidly. The day is foreseen by many when network services will not differ greatly from those of format syndicators.

OTHER PROGRAMMING DEVELOPMENTS IN RADIO

Format syndication, network programming, and locally produced elements form the bulk of programming sources in modern radio. Variations, such as syndicators specializing in short health features, food shows, and so on, emerge almost daily. And nonmusical formats such as all-news and all-talk also thrive.

We won't discuss all the programming developments in depth. Essentially, our point is that radio is a medium of great vitality, a medium that is still developing rapidly. It is exciting and full of career opportunities. Pro-

Figure 1.1. *A satellite dish for a radio station.*

duction—using sound elements to create an effect or deliver a message—has always been and always will be a key element in radio.

THE ROLE OF THE PRODUCER IN MODERN RADIO

With all the excitement over automated radio and prerecorded formats, it may appear that little remains to be done in radio production at the local level. In fact, the opposite is true.

Production skills form the basis of producing a station's sound. Without those skills, the unique sound can't be created. But skills alone won't suffice, and that's why we've started this production book with a discussion of programming. Good production is an extension of the station's programming, and a producer—anyone who manipulates sound to create an effect or deliver a message—must tailor that production to reinforce the station's sound.

In this text we explore the nuts and bolts of radio broadcasting. By learning the elements of radio production, you will be exploring the essence of radio programming. Production, from a mechanical standpoint, can be seen as the method of combining various sources of sound into a product that accomplishes something specific. Anyone in a radio station can perform this function. The sales manager who records and assembles a commercial is a producer. So is the person who constructs a newscast. The staff announcer who runs the console (known as doing a "combo" operation) is a producer. In larger stations, the bulk of the production may be done by a production

Figure 1.2. *Production studio of a major market radio station.*

manager, who specializes in producing such items as commercials, public service announcements (PSAs), or talk shows. Very large stations and networks often have full-time producers who exclusively handle specialized programming, such as concerts and sporting events.

Obviously, the particular responsibilities of a producer depend on the station where he or she is employed. Radio stations run a wide gamut in sophistication, from small daytime-only stations with minimal and aging equipment to high-tech powerhouses in major cities (Fig. 1.2). But regardless of the size of the station, *the role of production is the same.*

The producer at any level may be called on to create and execute a commercial that sells a product for an advertiser, to put together a newscast introduction that arrests the attention of the listener, or to combine a number of previously recorded elements with live vocal delivery in a distinctive package known as an **airshift.** All these functions, and more, create the radio product in small, medium, and large markets.

By becoming proficient in these skills, you will be opening the door to a variety of opportunities in the radio field. And, although our focus is radio broadcasting, the skills and knowledge in this text can be applied in a variety of other professional situations. Studio recording, sound production for multimedia presentations, audio for television, and specialized sound production for advertising agencies and other commercial clients are only a few of the professional areas that require many of the skills you'll learn about in this text.

Overall, you will be exploring a field that requires a variety of skills, and you'll need to invest some time in learning them. But learning the basics is

just the beginning. Real proficiency in radio production requires experience, creativity, and a certain sense of adventure. The truly effective production bears the identifying mark of the producer. It is unique.

The skills involved are tools. It's how you use the tools that makes the difference. And while there is more than a small degree of frustration in trying to come up with a production that sounds the way you've heard it in your mind, there is a high degree of satisfaction when the magic happens and you can hear the finished result of your efforts—and you say, "Yes! That's it!"

Ask radio veterans, and you're likely to find that they feel that production is one of the most satisfying parts of the job. It's a chance to be an artist, a craftsman, and a performer, all at once. Production is one of the key jobs in any radio station. The people who do production well are the ones who form and shape the foundation of radio broadcasting.

So enjoy yourself while you learn how to produce the magic. You'll work hard, but the rewards are long-lasting. You will be acquiring not only skills that will last a lifetime, but perhaps an enduring passion for an exciting and rewarding activity in a profession that is a vital part of our world today.

2
The Console

Probably nothing in radio production is more intimidating than one's first exposure to the **console**—a complex network of switches, knobs, and meters. However, operation of the console, or **board,** soon becomes second nature. In fact, most radio professionals will tell you something like: "When I first started in radio, all I thought about was running the board, and what would happen when I changed jobs and had to learn a new board. But after a few months, I found out that running the board was really one of the simplest aspects of the job. And when I changed stations, I picked up the new board in an afternoon."

We think it's important to emphasize that one does acquire familiarity with the console because many newcomers to radio production become discouraged with their first few experiences at the controls and never gain the confidence they need to experiment, to use the board as a versatile tool, and to "play it" like a musical instrument.

Remember, anyone can learn to run a console. You don't have to be an engineer or a technician; all you need is an understanding of what the console does and some practice in the necessary mechanical operating skills.

FUNCTION OF THE CONSOLE

The console is simply a device for amplifying, routing, and **mixing** audio signals. "Audio" is the term used to refer to the electrical signals that are involved in the reproduction or transmission of sound. It's important to keep the distinction between audio and sound firmly in mind. **Sound** is a vibration through air or other medium; **audio** is the electrical signal used in reproduction or transmission of the original sound.

Amplification

Amplification is the boosting of a signal to a usable level. The tiny voltage produced by a phonograph is not strong enough to send to a loudspeaker or over the **air.** (This is precisely why the turntable on a home stereo is connected to an amplifier, whether built-in or a separate component.) The console allows the operator to conveniently control the **volume** of various signal sources such as microphones, turntables (professional-quality record players), and tape playback units.

Routing

The console allows the producer to determine the path of the signal, or to route it. As we'll see, the console can send a signal either over the air or into a "cue" channel, which lets the operator hear an audio source without having the signal go over the air. In addition to routing signals through the console, the operator can turn signals on and off.

Mixing

The console can put two signals out at once—the announcer's voice and music, for example. The console also allows the volume of both to be controlled separately, or mixed, so that the music doesn't drown out the announcer.

By amplification, routing, and mixing, the console operator can produce a final product that will be sent out over the air (as in the case of a radio announcer doing an airshift) or routed to a tape recorder (as someone would do when producing a commercial to be played back over the air later).

UNDERSTANDING CONSOLE FUNCTION: SOME HYPOTHETICAL EXAMPLES

Amplification, routing, and mixing are fine for a theoretical explanation of how a console works, but how do they function in practice? To explain, we'll take an approach that is a bit unusual: We will present a series of hypothetical consoles used at equally hypothetical radio stations. While we'll briefly touch on the use of turntables, microphones, and tape playback units, detailed instruction about these devices comes in later chapters. So don't worry about anything except understanding what the console does and why it does it. The purpose of these examples is to demonstrate how a console carries out certain operations.

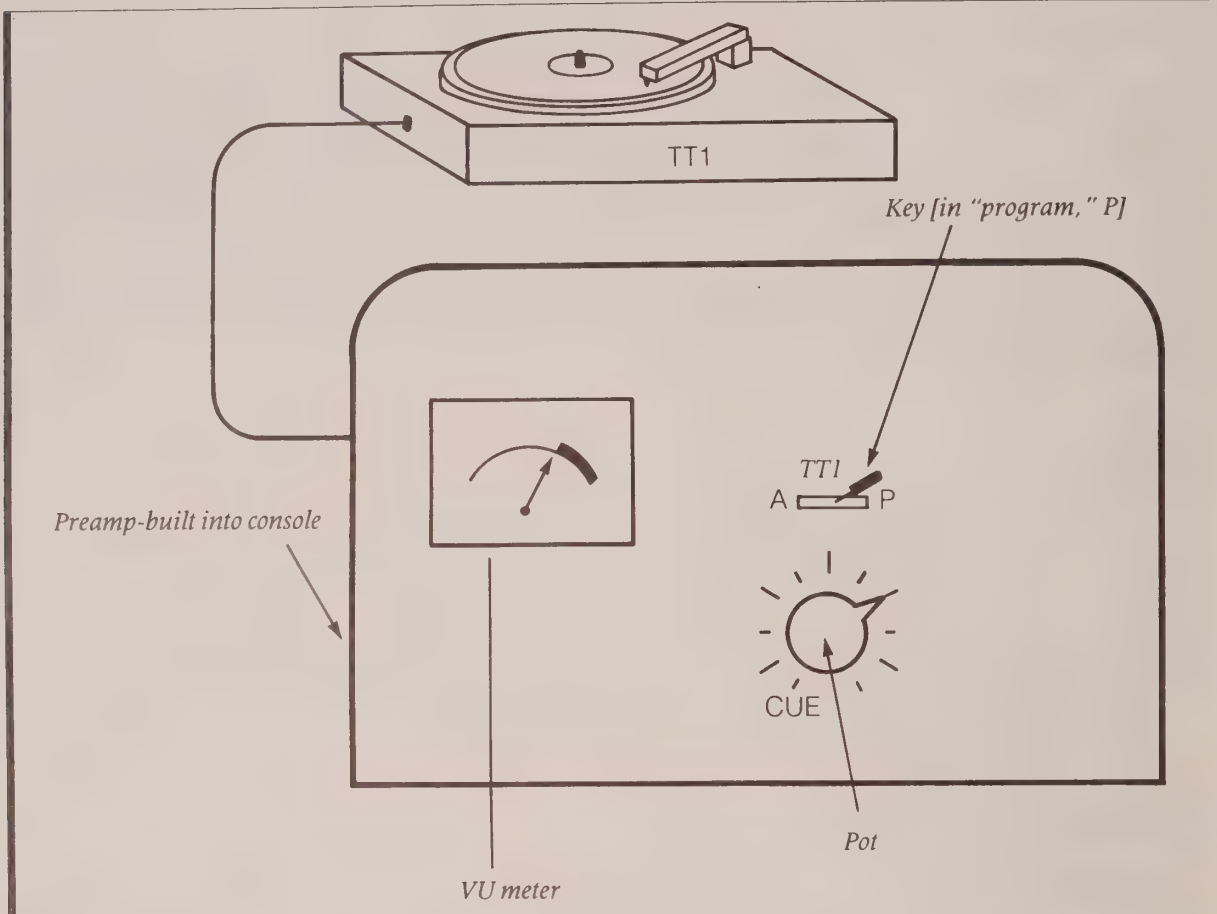


Figure 2.1. *A console at a station that uses only one turntable (TT1).*

Hypothetical console A

The radio station using console A plays only one record, the same record, over and over. The only equipment owned by this station consists of a **turntable** and console A (Fig. 2.1). Here are the features on console A.

Preamplifier. The signal from a turntable is very weak, so a device called a preamplifier (usually shortened to **preamp)** boosts it to a more usable level. Note that the preamplification process on turntables is different from some other sources; a turntable preamp can be outside the console, or "outboard." For the purposes of explaining the console, though, it really makes no difference, so you'll find the preamp shown on the console diagram.

Potentiometer. In engineering terms, a potentiometer is a variable resistor; in layman's terms, it's nothing more than a loudness control. The potentiometer is almost always referred to as a **pot.** Usually, it is a knob that raises volume when twisted clockwise, just as a rheostat switch turns up the level of lights in a dining room. Some modern consoles have bars that perform the same function by being raised and lowered vertically. Often, these are called "vertical or slide faders," but for the sake of simplicity we'll refer to both kinds as pots.

Key. This is an on–off switch that puts the signal out over the air when the key is pushed to **program.** The key is thrown into program by moving it to the right. Other functions of this key are shown in later examples.

Volume-unit meter. You remember that the pot allows adjustment of the level of volume, but how do you know what level is correct? Volume is a pretty subjective judgment.

The volume-unit meter, usually called a **VU meter,** gives an objective visual representation of loudness. It's a very important component of the console, and the ability to read it properly is critical in every phase of radio production.

Essentially, the most important aspect of reading a VU meter is to know that zero on the top scale is the reference for proper volume. A close-up of the meter on console A (Fig. 2.2) shows that the record is playing at proper volume.

A reading of +1 volume unit (Fig. 2.3) means that the signal is playing too loudly; if it goes much higher the signal will sound distorted. (A volume unit is a relative measurement of audio loudness and is similar to a **decibel,** a measurement discussed in Chapter 5.) A reading above zero is known as being "in the red," since the part of the scale above 0 is colored red. A reading of +2 indicates that matters are worse, and +3 will put the needle all the way to the right, known as "pinning the meter," and can cause severe distortion.

On the other hand, too low a reading will result in too little music level and too much noise. Noise is always present in these electrical components, and when there's not enough signal volume, the noise becomes much more apparent; this is known as an unacceptable **signal-to-noise ratio.** This is the ratio of signal in a **channel** to noise in a channel; the greater the signal-to-noise ratio, the better. A reading of −10 or −20 (Fig. 2.4) is known as running "in the mud."

The operator of console A is responsible for keeping the peaks as close to zero as possible. This isn't particularly difficult because the VU meter is built to respond to averages. The needle tends to float around, seeking an average volume level. The operator should *not* crank up the pot each time the level drops below zero, or crank the pot down each time the needle goes into the red. Riding the pot too closely will result in an elimination of loud and soft passages in music, especially classical music.

By the way, you can also read the VU meter according to the bottom scale, which indicates the percentage of **modulation.** Modulation is the imprint of sound on a radio signal, and 100% is the ideal. Modulation is a measure in percentage of voltage passing through the console to a transmitter or to a recording device. If 100% represents the maximum voltage permissible, the fluctuating VU meter can compare our source to that of the maximum desired level.

Note that 100% corresponds to zero volume units, also the ideal reading.

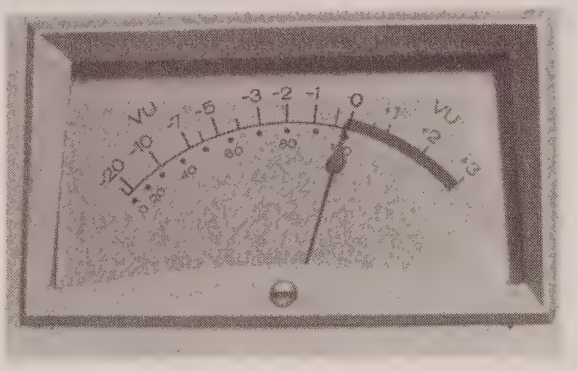


Figure 2.2. *A VU meter showing a proper level reading.*

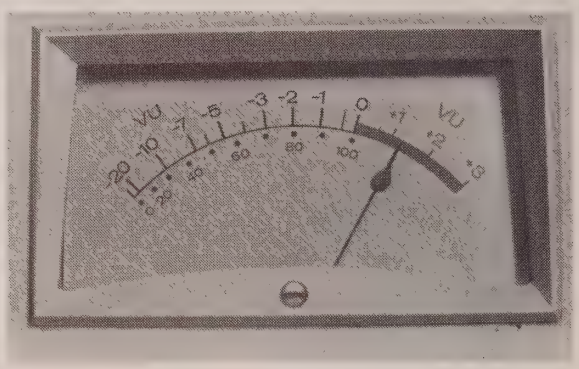


Figure 2.3. *Reading "in the red."*

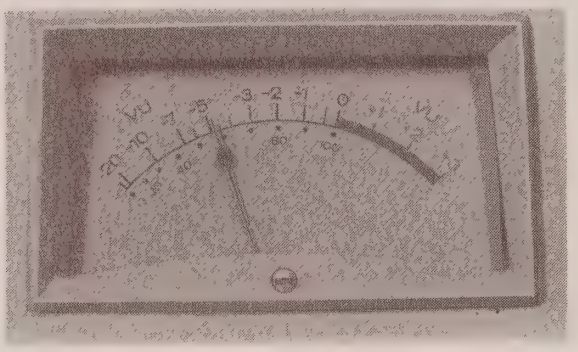


Figure 2.4. *"In the mud."*

Too much modulation results in an *overmodulated,* distorted signal; too little causes problems with signal-to-noise ratio and makes the signal sound muddy. Regardless of which scale is used, the major task facing a console operator is to keep the needle on the VU meter hovering around the points marked 0 (top scale) and 100 (bottom scale). Occasional peaks into the red are acceptable—indeed, unavoidable—as are infrequent dips into the mud.

Monitor. This is a loudspeaker that lets the operator hear what's going over the air. The **monitor** is not really a part of the console, although it is connected to the console and operated by console controls. These controls allow the monitor to be used by the operator to listen to a number of sources other than what's going over the air.

Amplifier. Before the signal leaves the board, it must be amplified—boosted—again. This is the final step.

Review of the function of console A. The signal from the turntable first passes through the preamp, an internal electrical function of the console. The volume of the preamplified signal is controlled by a pot. After the signal has run through the pot, a key functions as an on–off switch; in this case the on position is referred to as *program.* (You'll learn more about the need for this switch in the next console.) Finally, the signal is amplified again. In the case of a radio station that plays only one record, the **output** of the console is then sent to the hypothetical transmitter.

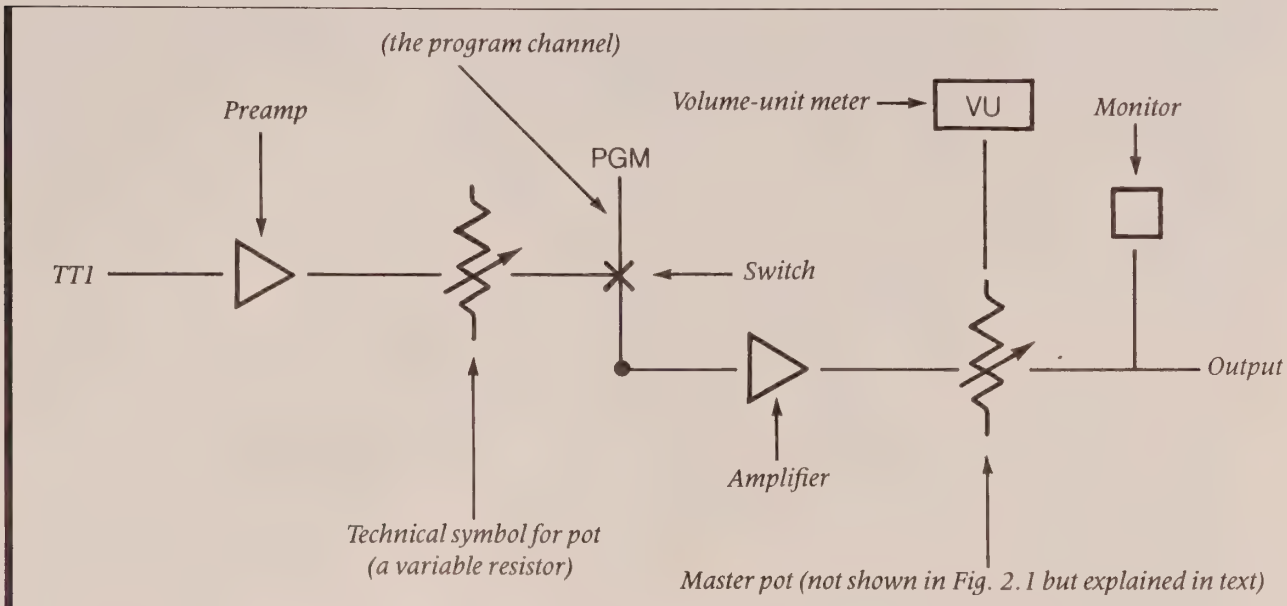


Figure 2.5. *An engineering diagram of console A.*

In Figure 2.5, we have diagrammed console A the way a broadcast engineer would do it.

Console A is certainly simple to operate, and it ideally suits the needs of a station that plays just one record. But it has no flexibility. It allows only the constant repetition of a record played on the station's only turntable. You could, of course, change records, but doing so on-air would leave even larger gaps in the program than just picking up the tonearm at the end of the record and quickly placing it back at the beginning. So let's see how a more advanced console solves the problem.

Hypothetical console B

The station using hypothetical console B has two turntables (Fig. 2.6). This allows the operator to make smooth transitions between records by having another record all set to go when one ends. This will eliminate gaps in the program, known in the trade as "dead air."

But if the goal is to eliminate gaps, the operator must know where the starting point of the record is. There has to be a way to **cue** up the record, to hear where the first sound in the piece of music starts and back the record up slightly so the sound can start immediately after the turntable is started. And, as is common in many radio formats, the end of one song and the beginning of another can be overlapped for a second or two.

Console B is similar to console A but has several additions that allow the operator to eliminate gaps and overlap music.

Multiple input channels. Having two pots allows the use of two turntables. There are two *input channels* on this console, channel 1 for turntable 1 and channel 2 for turntable 2. Turntable 1 and turntable 2 are both sources; that

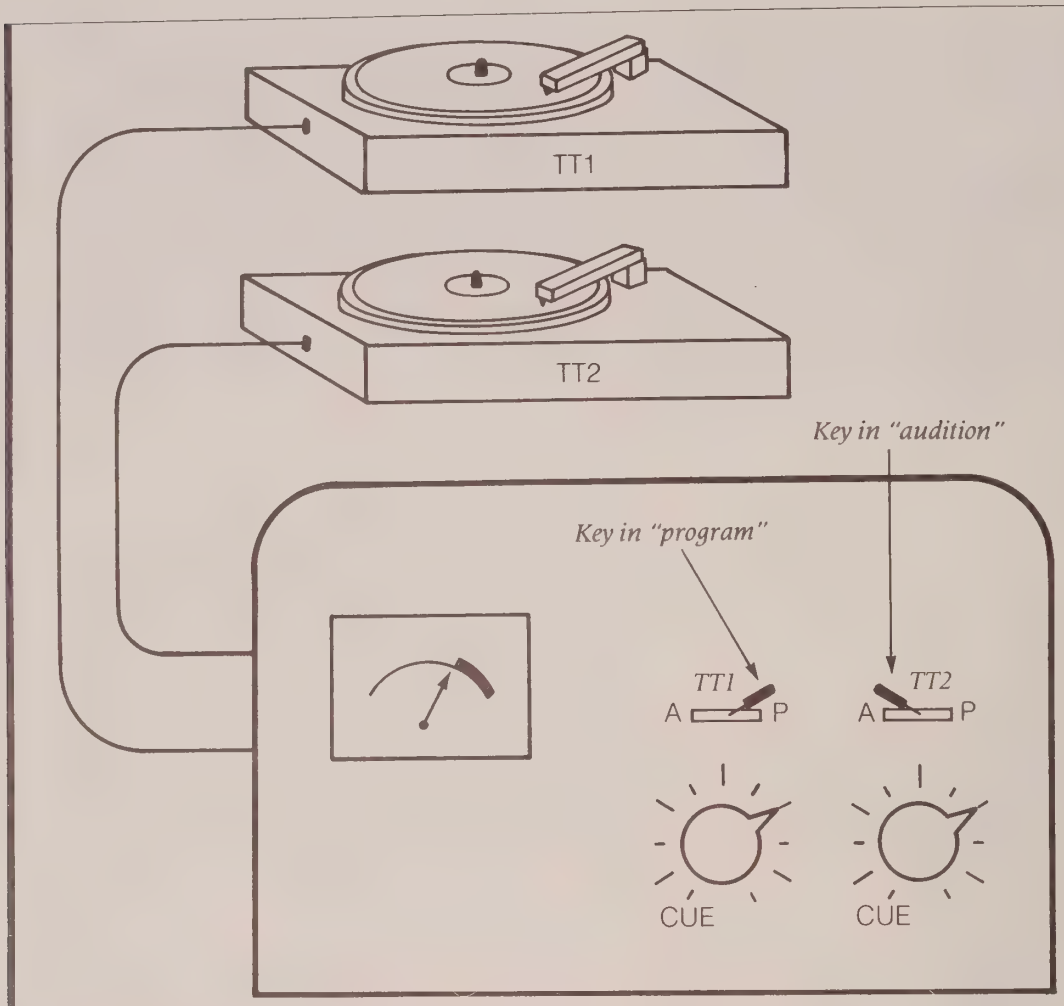


Figure 2.6. *A console at a station that uses two turntables (TT1 and TT2).*

is, they provide an incoming signal. So, aside from the two pots, there will also be two preamps and two keys.

The audition channel. Don't confuse the audition channel with the input channels on console B. The audition channel is a completely different animal.

Audition allows you to hear a record, tape, or other source without putting it over the air. The audition channel routes the signal from a source to a speaker in the control room. (And, there's another specialized application, discussed in a moment.) Anything that can be put on program can be played over audition.

Do you notice, in Figure 2.6, the provision made for selecting the audition channel? The key in console B now has a left position for putting the signal through the **audition** channel in addition to the **program** position, which was its only on position in console A.

The cue channel. The cue channel serves one of the same purposes as the audition channel: It allows the operator to hear a source without putting it

over the air. The operator of console B is able, using cue, to find the point at which the music begins on the records played over the station, and can therefore cue up the records to start immediately. Since cueing up a record involves some strange-sounding noise (the cueing technique is demonstrated in Chapter 3), the operator certainly doesn't want to do it over the air. The cue channel plays over a small speaker located within the console. To put the pot in cue, the operator generally turns the pot counterclockwise until the pot clicks into the cue position.

Why, you might wonder, are there two provisions for hearing sources that are not on the air? Well, cue and audition have their separate advantages and disadvantages. Cue is very simple to use, since it takes only a flick of the wrist to put the pot in the cue channel. After cueing up a record, the operator of console B doesn't have to do anything until putting the turntable on air, "potting it up," in radio lingo. But the cue speaker is often tinny and cheap, so if the operator wants to listen to a new piece of music to gauge its suitability for airplay, the cue system is a poor choice.

Audition, on the other hand, routes the signal through a high-quality loudspeaker. Sometimes, it is a separate speaker in the control room, though often the audition channel is fed through the same speaker as the program. The operator uses a special monitor switch to determine which channel—program or audition—goes to the speaker.

Audition has another very useful capability: The operator could, if desired, play a record over the air on the program channel while producing a commercial on the audition channel. The way this is done is explained later.

Adding the multiple-source channels, the audition channel, and the cue channel to the broadcast engineer's diagram, we have the signal flow of console B as shown in Figure 2.7.

Review of console B. The outputs of two turntables are fed into console B; each turntable has its own source channel. Because of the two turntables, two source channels, and of course, two pots, the operator of console B is able to make smooth transitions between records, even overlapping the beginning of one with the end of another. More important, the operator of console B can use the audition or cue channel to listen to a source channel without putting it over the air.

As shown in Figure 2.7, the signal flow path for console B starts at the turntables, proceeds through the appropriate source channels, through the pots, and to the key. On this console, the key has the capability of putting the signal through the program channel or through the audition channel. Note, too, that the cue channel is activated by the pots, not by the key. The loudness of the signal is gauged by the VU meter, the output of the board is amplified, and the signal goes to the transmitter.

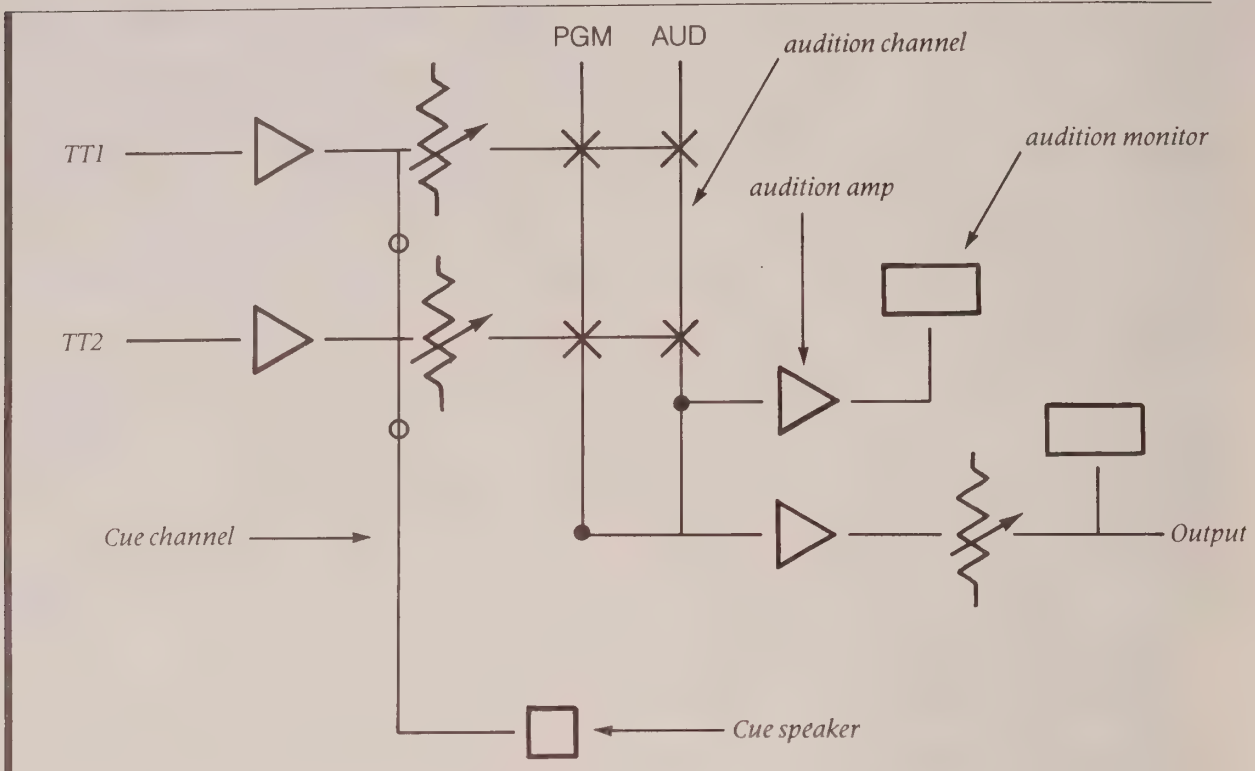


Figure 2.7. *Signal flow of console B.*

Hypothetical console C

The operator of hypothetical console C has a microphone (Fig. 2.8) in the control room and, because of the expanded capabilities of console B, can put the microphone over the air and mix it with other sources. The **microphone** is on source channel 3. The abbreviation "mic," which, of course, is pronounced "mike," is now used widely in the profession (in vendors' literature, in-station printed material, and audio and broadcasting publications). You will see newer consoles with labels "Mic 1," "Mic 2," and so on, and we have used "mic" both as noun and as adjective. However, the past and present participles, which are essential in many discussions of radio production, are spelled "miked" and "miking," respectively. This small inconsistency represents an accommodation to ingrained habits of reading and pronunciation.

Aside from the microphone, there are some other additions on this console.

Muting system. This cuts the monitor, the loudspeaker that lets the operator know what's going over the air. The muting system is essential when a mic and a speaker are in the same room, because without muting, the mic picks up the output of the speaker, feeds it through the amplification system, picks it up again as it exits the speaker, and so on. The result is known as **feedback,** the same unpleasant phenomenon that occurs when a rock singer gets careless with a microphone too near a speaker. So, every time the key switch on the mic channel is opened, the muting system built into the con-

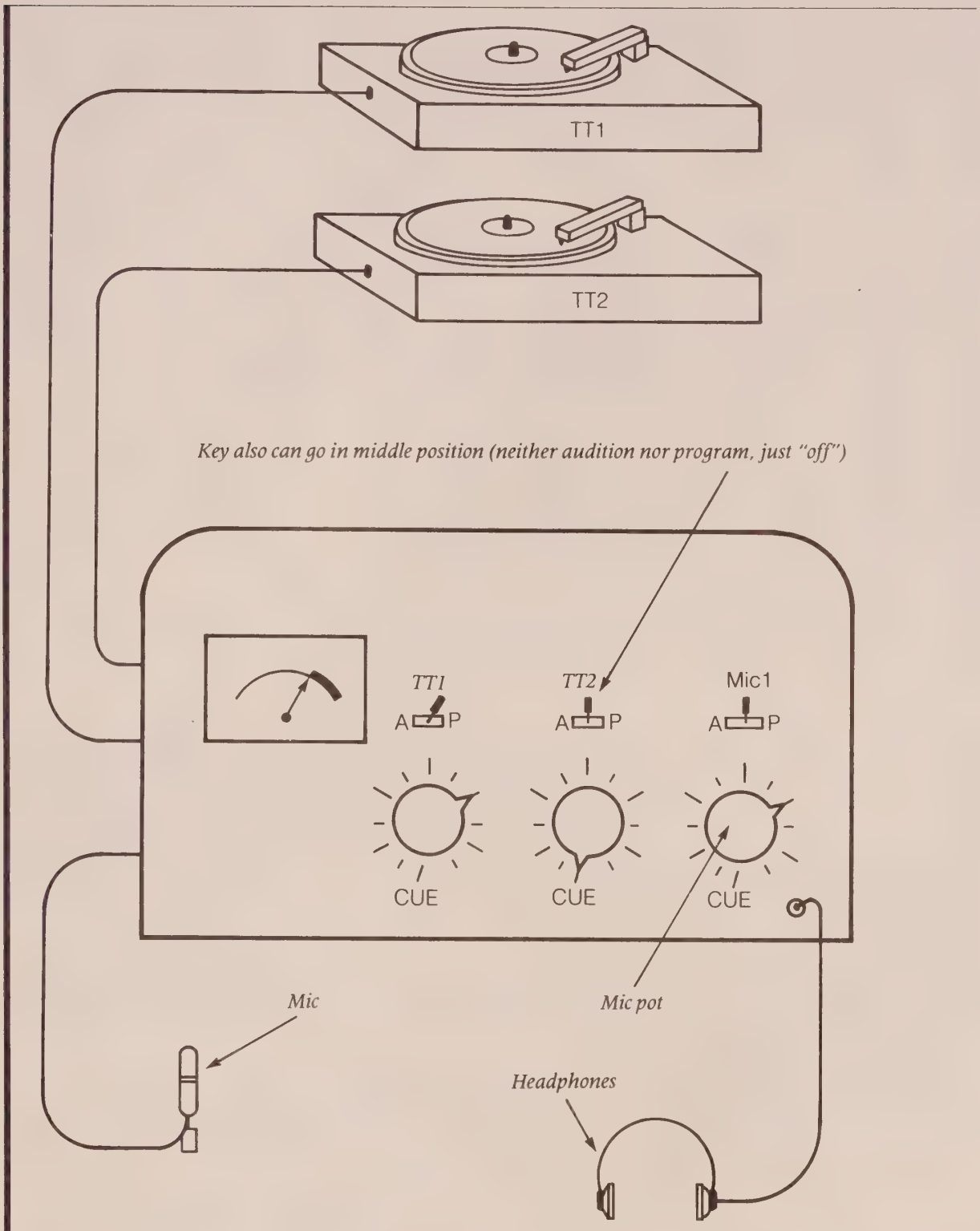


Figure 2.8. *A console that could be used with turntables and a microphone.*

sole will cut the speaker off. This, of course, makes necessary the use of the next item: headphones.

Headphones. These form a close seal over the operator's ears, preventing any possibility of feedback. Because the headphones operate when the mic

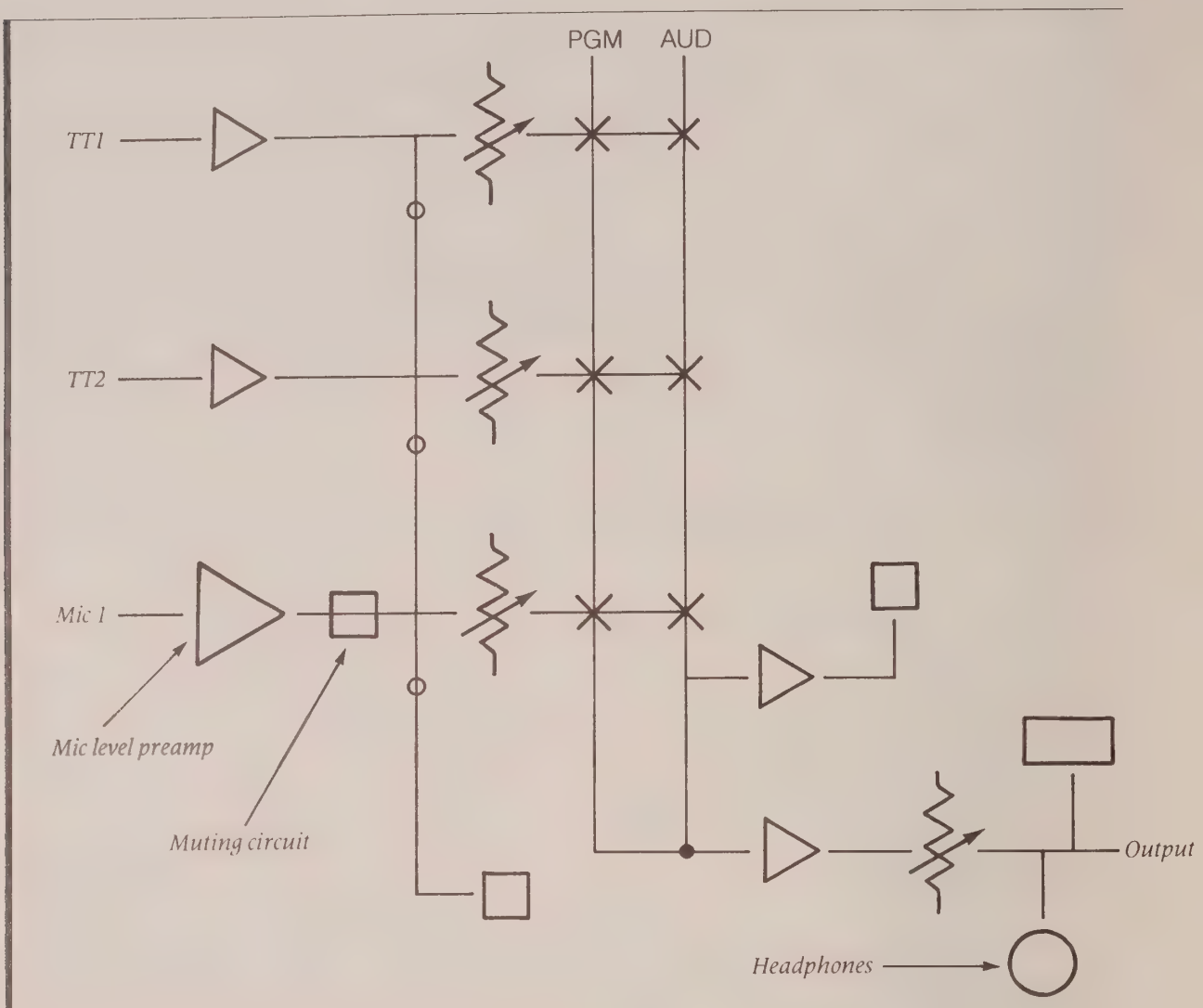


Figure 2.9. *Signal flow in console C.*

is open, they allow the operator to hear himself or herself speaking into the mic. There's an output for headphones on the console, and a pot that controls the headphone volume.

Notice that console C also contains a headphone selection button. This allows the operator to hear, for example, the audition channel over the headphones, or the cue channel (very useful if the operator is talking over the air and finds that the next record hasn't been cued up yet).

Master pot. This pot controls the entire output of the board. Usually its proper setting is marked by the engineering staff and is not changed by the operator. The VU meter actually reads the output of the **master pot.**

Review of console C. There are three paths from the equipment in the control room: the two turntables and the mic. In each path the source channel feeds through a preamp, a pot, a key, the console amplifier, and the master pot. Figure 2.9 is an engineering diagram of console C.

One bit of new information: Note that the preamp for the mic is different

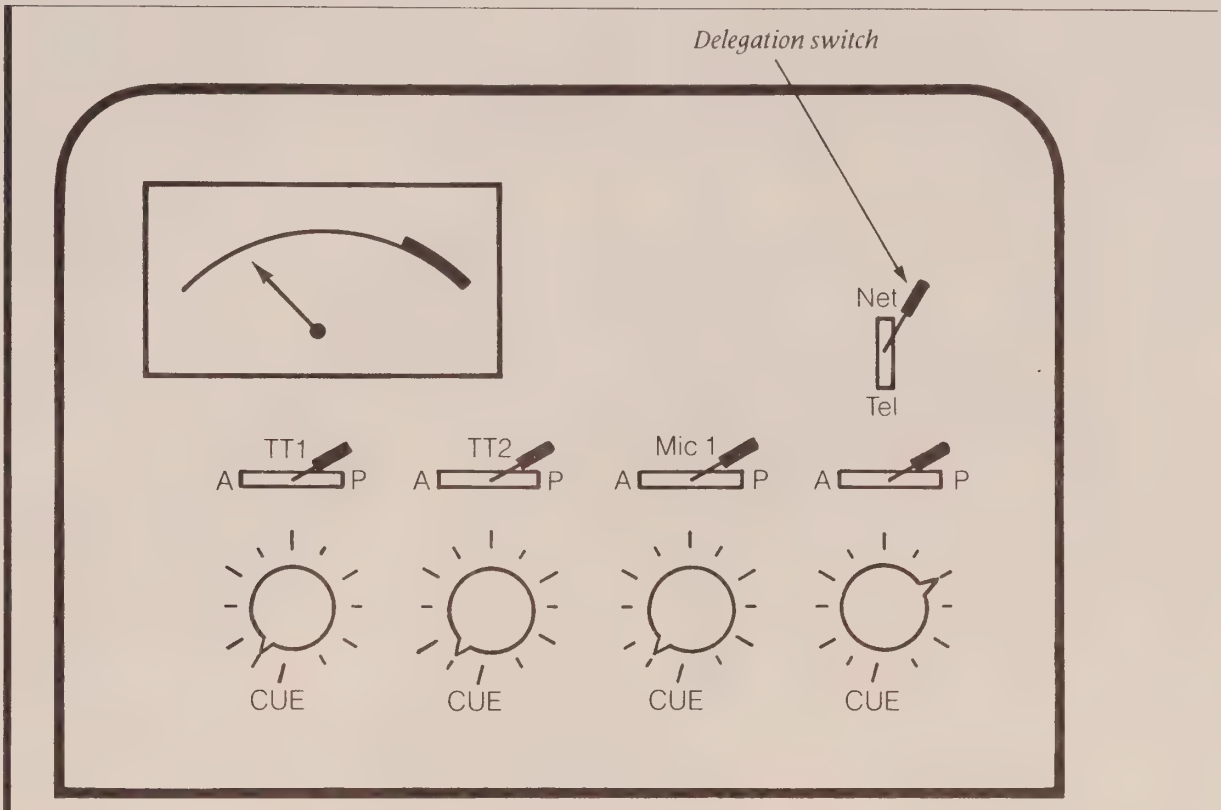


Figure 2.10. *A console with a delegation switch.*

from the preamp for the turntables. Turntables commonly have preamps outside the console (those preamps are not shown in Fig. 2.9), and the turntable signal is brought into the board at what is known as *line level.* Other playback devices, such as tape machines, also come into the board at line level. Mics come to the board at a lower level than line level sources, and the signal goes through a *mic level* preamp. Mic level is lower than line level, and therefore preamps on mic level channels must raise the level of the signal higher than the preamps for a line level input. The goal of preamps, of course, is to bring both mic level and line level sources to the same level within the console. Turntable preamps also change the **equalization** of the audio signal; equalization is explained in connection with advanced radio production (Chapter 14).

Hypothetical console D

The radio station using console D is linked up with a radio network that supplies a 5-minute newscast every hour on the hour. The network *feed* is brought in by a special telephone line, which the engineer has wired into the board. (These sources are often brought into the station via satellite, too.) Another program offered on the station using console D is a 10-minute telephone talk show, which starts at 30 minutes after the hour.

Now, it certainly doesn't make sense to have two separate pots for signals that are never used at the same time. Console D (Fig. 2.10) has an option

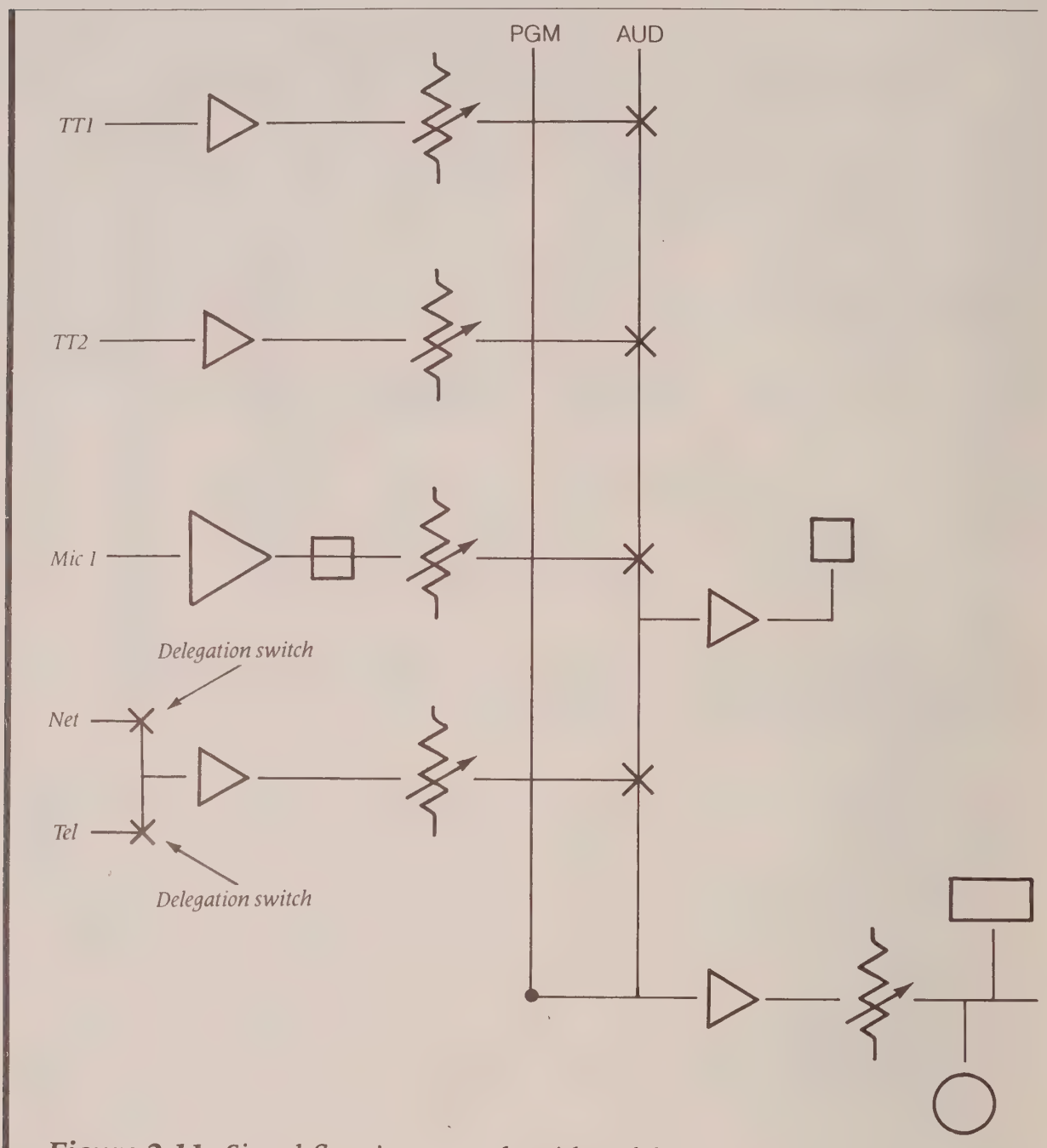


Figure 2.11. *Signal flow in a console with a delegation switch.*

that allows the operator to choose the network (Net) *or* the telephone (Tel). Many boards label these signals "remote lines," because the sources are located outside the studio.

Delegation switch. The operator has to be able to decide which signal will be chosen, or delegated, to go onto the source channel. Figure 2.11 shows how the delegation switch, which permits this, is drawn into the engineer's diagram of console D. The **delegation switch** is often, but not always, immediately above the pot.

Review of console D. The only new addition to this console is the delegation switch, which brings a fourth input into the board. It allows the operator to select the signal that will go onto the source channel and be governed by the pot.

Summary of the hypothetical consoles

The consoles we've illustrated wouldn't be of much use in a modern radio station. Even the relatively sophisticated console D doesn't have the flexibility typically needed in a broadcast station, which may use two turntables, three mics, two reel-to-reel tape units, and perhaps eight or nine **cartridge machines.** But the basic principles illustrated are common to every console. If you understand the basic principles, *you will be able to figure out the operation of any actual radio console.*

UNDERSTANDING CONSOLE FUNCTION: ACTUAL CONSOLES

The radio consoles shown and described in Figures 2.12 and 2.13 allow the operator—who perhaps should now be called a producer—to choose from a large number of sources. The producer can mix the sources, route them, and put the combined product over the air or record it on tape.

Notice that the console pictured in Figure 2.13 has circular pots while the console in Figure 2.12 has vertical or slide faders; both types accomplish the same purpose, utilizing the same basic principles demonstrated in the hypothetical consoles. As is apparent from the descriptions of the consoles, both units have:

- Preamps, which are built into the console and aren't visible.
- Input channels, which allow a number of signal sources to be used, and possibly mixed together.
- A delegation switch, to determine which signal of several will go onto the source channel.
- Pots (either the traditional circular pot or the more modern vertical fader).
- A cue channel.
- A key to put the signal over either the audition channel or the program channel.
- A VU meter to give an objective reading on the loudness of the signal.
- An amplifier, which boosts the output of the console (and is not visible because it is built into the console).
- A master pot, which controls the level of the output of the console.

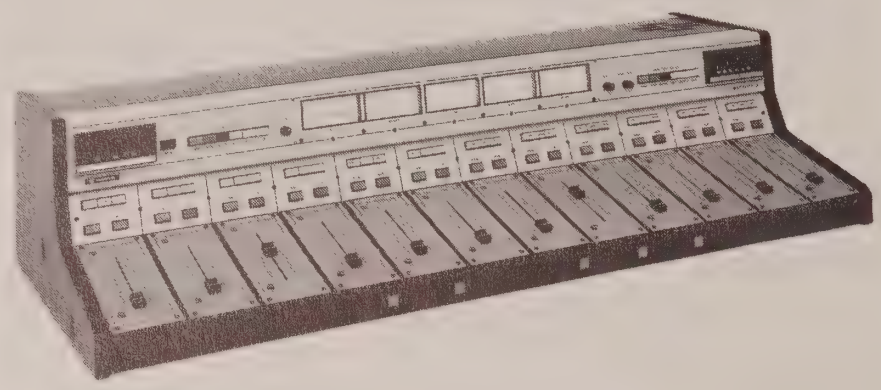


Figure 2.12. A broadcast audio console that uses slide faders. (Photo courtesy of Harris Corporation, Quincy, Ill.)

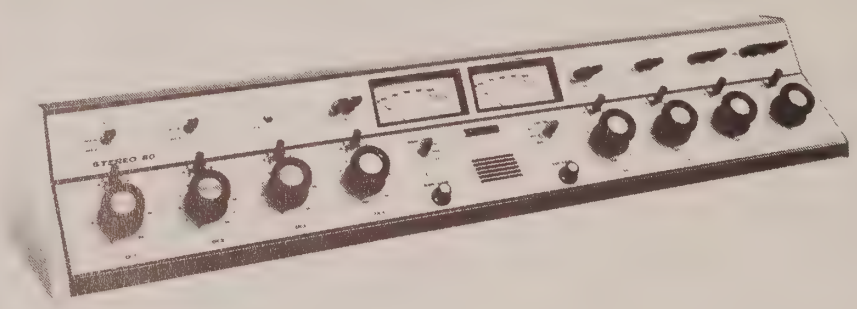


Figure 2.13. A console that uses knob style potentiometers. (Photo courtesy of Harris Corporation, Quincy, Ill.)

- Some miscellaneous controls, which allow the producer to adjust headset volume, choose the source feeding into the headset, or other convenient functions. An important control is the monitor volume control, which should always be used when adjusting the level at which you choose to *listen*.

All consoles do essentially the same thing, using the principles shown with the hypothetical consoles. Think in terms of those principles, rather than using a learned-by-rote knowledge of console switches and knobs, and you'll be able to operate any board after a bit of mechanical practice.

Figure 2.14 shows a board in use at a radio station; you can see by the labels on the pots and delegation switches how many different sources are available to the operator.

There are many console types other than those shown in Figures 2.10, 2.12, and 2.13. It is not practical to try and present a "catalog" of radio consoles, though. Don't get hung up on hardware. Rely on a thorough understanding of the principles of console function, and operation of almost any console will be a snap.

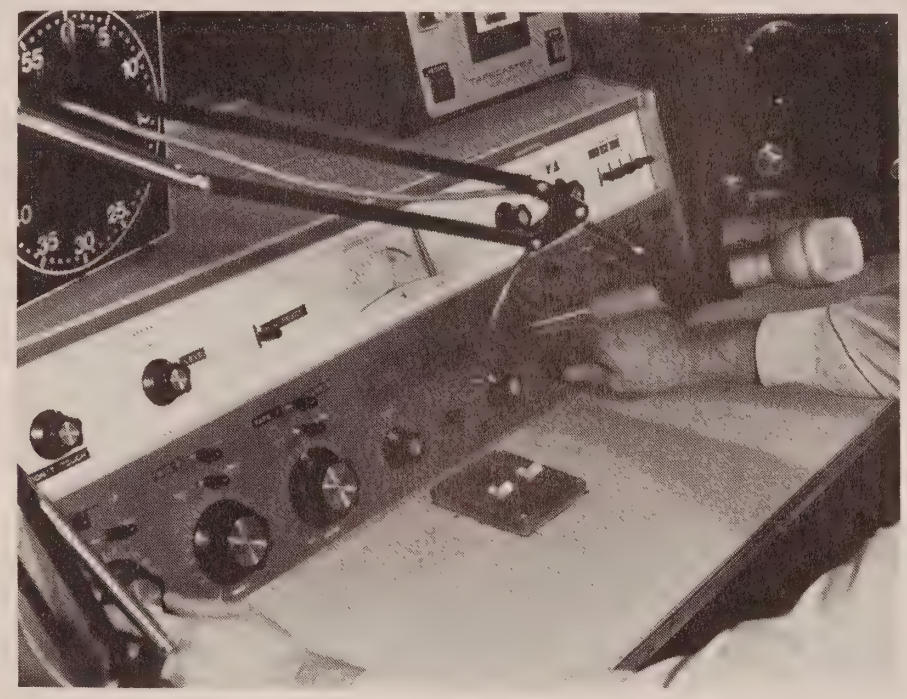


Figure 2.14. *A board in use; note the labels.*

OPERATION OF THE CONSOLE

The workings of your particular console will be explained to you by an instructor or an experienced operator at your radio station. Exercises at the end of this chapter will help build mechanical skills. Regardless of what equipment is hooked up to the console, and regardless of what kind of production is being done, you'll still be doing these three basic operations:

- Amplification
- Routing
- Mixing

All these operations are used in the production techniques introduced in later chapters.

At this point, you should primarily be concerned with finding the signals from input sources on the console, riding the levels properly (with the VU meter) to avoid distortion or muddiness, and understanding the signal path. The fine points of production will come later, and your performance will be enhanced with practice.

One other aspect of console operation concerns the use of stereo consoles. A stereo signal, as you're probably aware, has been routed into two channels, and a stereo receiver decodes the signal and gives the impression of sound sources being located in certain positions. A station broadcasting a stereo signal uses a stereo console, as examined in Chapter 14 (Advanced Radio Production). For now, all you need to know is that for all intents and

Figure 2.15. *The Electro-Voice ELX-1 is a four channel mixer that can be used to expand the capability of an audio console. (Photo courtesy of Electro-Voice, Inc., Buchanan, Mich.)*

purposes, operating a stereo console is exactly the same as operating the consoles described above.

The next steps are to become familiar with the units that feed signals into the console: recording and playback units (Chapter 4) and microphones (Chapter 5). First, however, let's wrap up our discussion of console operation with a brief introduction to two options that extend the flexibility of the radio console: *submixing* and *patching*.

Submixing

A **submixer** is nothing more than a miniature console that combines or "gangs" a group of inputs; the output of the submixer is fed into the radio console.

An example will make it clear. Suppose you have in your studio four talk show guests and one moderator, each with a separate mic. It might not be possible to use five separate pots, since your particular console might not have five mic level inputs, or you might not be able to rearrange existing assignments. The solution? Plug the mics into a submixer (which has several pots and a VU meter so that each mic level can be adjusted), and run the output of the submixer (which is at line level) into your console, where it ties up only one pot.

Figure 2.15 shows a popular submixer. Submixers come in handy during remote recordings or broadcasts, as explained in later chapters.

Patching

Patching allows you to route a signal in a way different from that envisaged when the board was wired together by the station's engineer.

Basically, the patchbay (explained in a moment) performs the same function as an old-time telephone switchboard, using connectors (plugs) to send

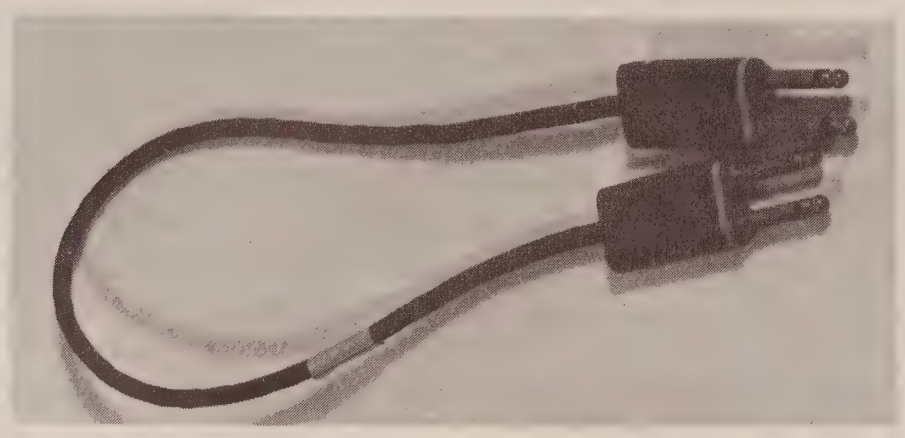


Figure 2.16. *A patch cord.*

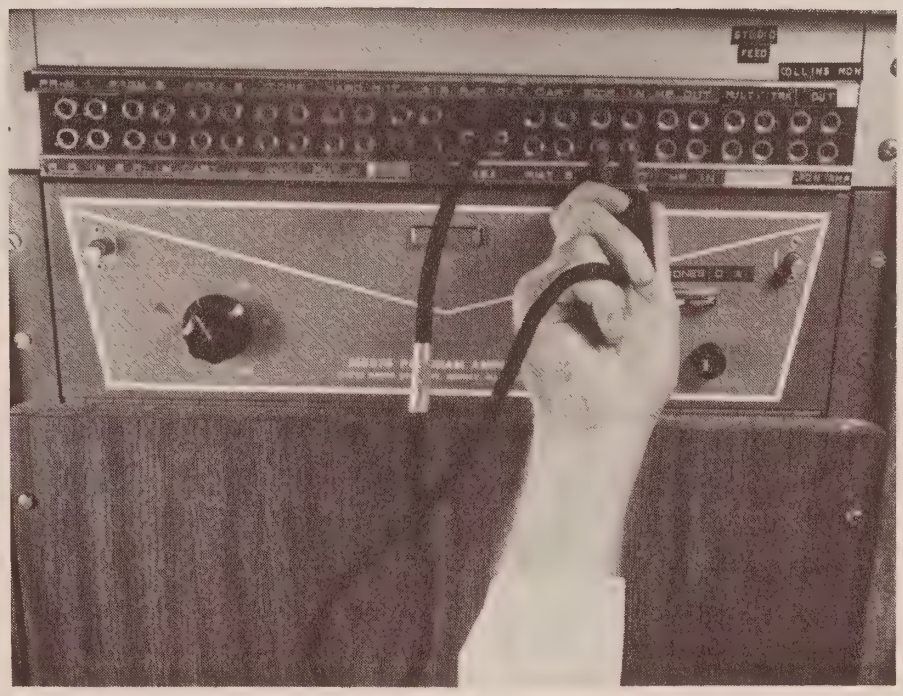


Figure 2.17. *A typical patchbay.*

a signal to a specific source. You, as a radio producer and console operator, will use the patchbay from time to time to make an operation easier or as a short-term emergency measure if something breaks down.

For example, let's assume that the output of a reel-to-reel tape recorder is normally connected to source channel 3 of a console. Suppose, though, that the tape recorder is broken. Suppose, too, that the only other tape recorder hooked up to the console can't be used because it's on the same pot with a turntable that is in constant use. (How? Using a delegation switch.)

The solution would be to patch the output of the working tape recorder into channel 3. This is done with a *patch cord* (Fig. 2.16), which plugs into jacks on what's called the *patchbay* (Fig. 2.17).

Generally, the outputs, or sources, are on the top row of the patch locations, with the inputs on the bottom. In other words, you will usually find what comes out of a unit, such as the working tape player, on the top row

labeled "TAPE 2 OUT" or something similar. The place where the signal can go in usually is on the bottom row, labeled, perhaps, "CHANNEL 3 IN."

Close examination of a patchbay will reveal that the outputs and inputs that normally match up are in line vertically. Let's say that turntable 1 (TT1) normally goes into channel 2. The holes for TT1 will be directly above the holes for CHANNEL 2. This, not surprisingly, is called a *normal connection.* The term is also used as a verb: TT1 *normals through* to CHANNEL 2. And when you change the arrangement with a patch cord, you are *breaking normal.*

There's a special jack in the patch panel called a *multiple.* This allows you to patch one source into the multiple and plug in several patch cords, which all carry the same output. That way you can route one signal to several sources, a practice that is useful on rare occasions, such as recording a network signal and sending it over the air simultaneously. Note that in Figure 2.17 Programs 1, 2, and 3 (located on the left side of the patchbay) feed different tape recorders.

APPLICATIONS

Situation 1/The Problem. A baseball game, fed from a network, was being aired, and would last until 11:30 P.M. At 10:00 P.M., a call came in from the station's general manager: A new commercial had to be made for a client, to go on the air first thing in the morning. Would the operator on duty produce the commercial?

One possible solution. The operator on duty decided to produce the commercial, which consisted of an announcement read over a record, on the audition channel. To do so, she keyed the control room mic and a turntable to the audition channel. She then found the audition output on the patchbay and patched AUDITION OUT into TAPE 1 IN.

By producing the commercial on audition, she was able to use the same console that was sending the baseball game out on program. As an additional benefit, she was in the control room, not in a separate studio, and therefore was able to check on the game from time to time—not necessarily because she wanted to know the score, but because network feeds can and do run into technical problems, and an inattentive operator can put a half-hour of static over the air. Most boards have separate VU meters for audition and program.

Situation 2/The Problem. The pot on channel 3 caused a crackling static noise every time it was adjusted. (This happens from time to time, often because the internal workings of the pot are shorted or badly in need of a cleaning.) The pot on channel 3 controlled the turntable, and since the operator was in the midst of a record show, the problem was becoming critical.

One possible solution. The operator simply patched the output of the turntable into a different channel, *breaking the normal.* Now, the turntable would be governed by a different pot and key until repairs could be made to the console.

Exercises

1. Perform a combo operation (operate the console and announce) with two records and a mic. The goal is not clean production, just board operation. Start one record, and place the tonearm on the other record. (Don't worry about hitting a specific point in the music; that's "cueing," discussed in the next chapter.) Start the second record after the first one ends, potting it up on the console. Try talking over the music, making what you think is a proper balance between voice and music. Do the typical disc jockey routine: Announce the name of the song just played, introduce the next song, and start the turntable and bring it up on the board.
2. Make out a slip of paper with the name of each piece of equipment hooked to the console in your radio production studio or lab, for example: TURNTABLE 1, MIC 2, CART 1, TURNTABLE 2. Toss the slips of paper into a hat.

   Put records on the turntables and put tapes on the reel-to-reel and cartridge (cart) machines. Have someone standing by the mic(s). Your instructor or lab assistant will draw slips of paper out of the hat and announce the name of the piece of equipment.

   Your assignment is to quickly start the piece of equipment and pot it up on the board. There may be more than one source called up at the same time. When a mic is called out, you—the operator—are responsible for *throwing a cue* to the person stationed at the mic; that is, you point to him or her sharply. This is the standard instruction to begin speaking.

   When your instructor calls out "Lose it," you must first pot down what's up on the board and then turn that piece of equipment off. Give the person at the mic a *cut signal* by drawing a finger across your throat. (Some of the more common visual signals used in radio are discussed in Chapter 7.)

   This drill may seem a little like boot camp; in fact, this is pretty much the same approach used to teach soldiers operation of equipment or assembly of weapons. You'll find, though, that trying to locate pots and equipment under this kind of pressure is a very effective way to learn the operation.
3. Draw a diagram, such as the engineer's diagrams shown in this chapter, of the console in your studio or radio production lab. Don't worry about the details; just try to include the channels and label the sources and delegation switches.

3
Turntables

In the preceding chapter we spoke about the way an audio signal is routed through a console; we touched only briefly on the sources that produce that signal.

Chapters 3 and 4 describe all the sources you're likely to encounter in a modern radio station (except for microphones, which are dealt with in Chapter 5). Turntables are the subject of this chapter. Chapter 4 deals with tape recording and playback units. Learning the specifics of the function and operation of record and playback units will prove to be a great help during actual production.

STRUCTURE OF A TURNTABLE

A turntable operates the same way as a record player, except that it's a heavier duty device and has a different type of mechanism to turn the record.

Now, to clear up some questions of terminology. In radio parlance, the turntable is never referred to as a record player. And a phonograph record, more often than not, is called a *disc.* From now on, we'll use the terms "turntable" and "disc."

The broadcast turntable pictured in Figure 3.1 has several components. And although there will be some minor operational and cosmetic differences among various turntable models, all work in basically the same fashion.

The plate

The disc is placed on top of the plate; this is the part of the turntable that actually turns around.

The switch

"The" switch, also known as the start switch, is a smooth-action, noiseless switch (Fig. 3.2) which, of course, turns the turntable on and off. It's noiseless because you don't want a click while the mic is open.

The speed control

The speed control is somewhat akin to the gear shift in a manual transmission auto. On the unit shown in Figure 3.2, the operator can select speeds of $33\frac{1}{3}$, 45, and 78 rpm (revolutions per minute). The 12-inch discs play at $33\frac{1}{3}$, while the smaller discs with the large holes play at 45 rpm. Although 78 rpm records aren't made any more, many turntable units retain the option of playing that speed. There is a neutral position, too, which allows the motor to idle out of gear.

The drive mechanism

What the gear shift controls (in this unit—some are driven by other means) is a rubber drive wheel, which makes contact with a rim on the inside of the plate. We've removed the plate (Fig. 3.3) to show you the rubber drive wheel. It's important to leave the turntable speed control in the neutral position when the unit won't be in operation for a long time; otherwise the drive wheel can be flattened.

Some newer broadcast turntables are known as direct drive turntables; that is, the motor drives the plate directly. With these turntables there is no neutral position, and speed change is accomplished electronically.

The tonearm

The tonearm (Fig. 3.4) is the movable device that is put onto the disc. At the end of the tonearm are the **stylus** and the **cartridge.** The stylus (Fig. 3.5) is usually a pointed piece of diamond; some people call it a "needle," but it really isn't. The stylus is attached to a strip of metal called a cantilever, which in turn is attached to the cartridge (Fig. 3.5). The cartridge translates the physical vibration of the stylus into an electrical signal. The process of changing one form of energy into another is called *transduction. Transducing* is a very important concept, and we'll refer to it many times in this text.

THE DISC

Where do the vibrations picked up by the stylus come from? They're impressed into the grooves on the disc. The vibrations cut into the grooves correspond to variations in the sound that was recorded.

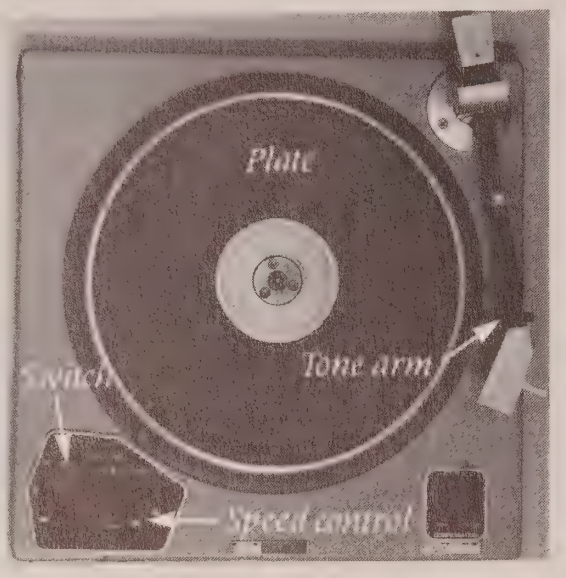


Figure 3.1. *Components of a turntable.*

Figure 3.2. *Closeup of switch and speed control.*

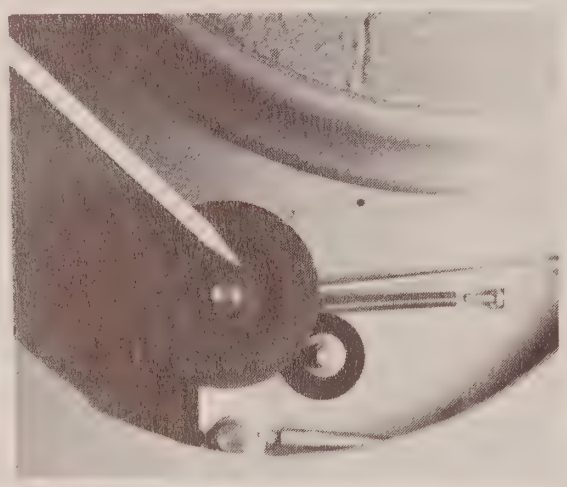


Figure 3.3. *The drive mechanism of a turntable. The rubber wheel (with pencil pointing toward it) turns on the inside rim of the plate.*

Figure 3.4. *The tonearm.*

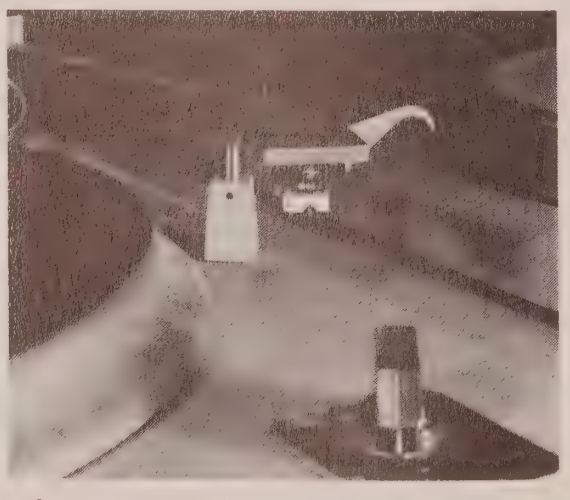


Figure 3.5. *The cartridge and stylus.*

Actually, the vibration patterns are pressed into the grooves of the disc. At the beginning of the manufacturing process, the master disc is cut with a stylus, which is connected to the output of a tape machine. When the master disc is cut, an electrical signal is transduced to a physical vibration.

You'll note that there are gaps between the *cuts,* or individual pieces of music on the disc; these separating grooves (and the groove at the beginning of the disc) carry no sound. These are called *lead grooves.*

During operation of the turntable, you will want to place a disc on the plate, place the stylus at the beginning of the cut you select, and position the disc so that the beginning of the music will start immediately, or at least within a second or so of starting the turntable. Positioning the disc, as noted earlier, is called *cueing.* Handling discs and cueing them up are very common tasks in radio production, and there's a proper way to do both.

Handling discs

Putting your fingers on the grooves of the disc will coat the grooves with oil; worse, the stylus may pick up that oil, causing the sound quality of the playback to deteriorate. You can avoid this problem by handling the disc as shown in Figure 3.6. To turn the disc over, hold the edges of the disc with the palms of your hands and flip it, as shown in Figures 3.7 and 3.8.

These ways of handling discs may seem awkward at first, but with practice they'll become second nature. To be realistic, you will see some pretty careless handling of discs at many radio stations. Although you can sometimes get away with handling a disc by the grooves, it's just as easy to do things right from the beginning. Incidentally, another good habit to get into is using commercially available disc washing machines and hand-held dust and static removers frequently. Clean discs produce much better audio quality.

Cueing a disc

The first step is to select the cut you wish to play and place the stylus in the lead groove, the gap preceding the cut. If the cut you wish to play is the first on the disc, place the stylus at the beginning groove.

All cueing operations involve a **backtracking** of the disc. You will spin the record (and/or the plate, as explained in a moment) backward and forward until you've pinpointed the spot where the sound starts. Don't be squeamish about backtracking a disc—the stylus of a broadcast turntable won't damage the grooves.

There are three methods of cueing a disc: spinning the plate, spinning the disc, and slipcueing.

Spinning the plate. Put the turntable speed control in neutral. This will enable the heavy metal plate to spin freely. Start the plate spinning with your

Figure 3.6. *Holding the disc in this manner prevents oil from your hands from contaminating the grooves.*

Figure 3.7. *You can observe both sides of the disc by holding the edges with your palms . . .*

Figure 3.8. *. . . and turning it in the manner shown. This way you won't touch the grooves.*

Figure 3.9. *Set the plate spinning with your hand.*

Figure 3.10. *Rock back and forth until you locate the first sound . . .*

Figure 3.11. *. . . then backtrack the plate a quarter-turn. Note that the speed selector has been put into gear.*

hand (Fig. 3.9); you should try to spin it at the approximate speed it normally runs. The plate is heavy and will keep up to speed for a surprising amount of time.

Drop the stylus in the beginning or separating grooves and wait until the sound begins. (Remember to use the cue or audition channel of the console; you don't want the cueing noises to go out over the air.) Stop the motion of the disc with your hand and move the plate in the opposite direction, backtracking the disc. By rocking the disc clockwise and counterclockwise, you'll be able to pinpoint the exact spot where the sound begins.

With the stylus over the exact point where the sound begins, move the plate counterclockwise one eighth to one fourth of a turn. Backtracking the plate and the disc will give the turntable time to get up to speed before the cut begins. If the turntable can't get up to speed before the sound starts, there will be an objectionable noise known as a **wow.**

Figures 3.10 and 3.11 review the sequence of cueing a record. For the sake of illustration, we've placed an arrow on a disc to show the point at which the sound begins. (Be careful to keep your hand away from the tonearm while backtracking, or you may accidentally bump the arm and knock the stylus out of the groove.)

Keep in mind that the amount of backtracking you'll have to do to allow the turntable to get up to speed varies with the turntable. Some older models may need a full quarter-turn to get up to speed, while modern models usually need only an eighth of a turn. The correct amount of backtracking depends on how quickly a particular turntable gets up to speed. Some models require as much as a third of a turn.

In any event, after you've pinpointed the sound and backtracked the disc by spinning the plate, make sure the motor is off and put the speed selector in the proper gear. You're all set to start the disc by turning on the switch and potting the proper channel up on the board.

Spinning the disc. There's a piece of hard rubber or (on very old turntables) felt covering the turntable plate that provides just the right amount of friction. This material holds the disc in place as the plate spins, but also allows the operator to spin the disc separately from the plate.

To cue up by spinning the disc, leave the speed selector in gear; this way, the plate won't spin freely. Drop the stylus into the groove preceding the cut you want to play. Then, placing your finger on the label as shown in Figure 3.12, spin the disc until you hear the first sound. Remember, you're spinning the disc on top of the plate; the plate is in gear and does not move.

This method is somewhat difficult to master and is not as popular as spinning the plate. In fact, it's rarely used nowadays, but you should be familiar with it as a possible option. Some producers, for instance, find spinning the disc handy when cueing 45 rpm discs. Figures 3.13 through 3.15 show the sequence of events involved in cueing by spinning the disc.

Slipcueing. Find the point where the sound begins, either by spinning the plate or by spinning the disc. With the turntable in gear and the motor started, hold the disc by the very edge, as shown in Figure 3.16. The disc won't spin, even though the plate is spinning. Then, at the instant you want the music to start, release the disc (Fig. 3.17). With slipcueing, of course, you do the actual cueing in the cue or audition channel. You pot up the turntable before releasing the disc.

An important point: Terminology varies across the country. What we have called slipcueing—which actually includes a method of putting a re-

Figure 3.12. *Place your fingers on the label to spin the disc.*

Figure 3.13. *Spinning the disc to find the first sound. Note that the plate is being held in place.*

Figure 3.14. *The start of the sound has been found . . .*

Figure 3.15. *. . . and the record backtracked. The turntable is in gear and all set to go.*

cord on the air—is called **slip starting** in some areas. Some people use "slipcueing" to refer to what we have described as "spinning the disc." The terms themselves are not important; the methods are.

Once you become proficient at the slipcueing method, you can drop the stylus in the groove while the disc is turning and stop the movement of the disc (but not the plate) as soon as you hear the first sound. If you do this fast enough, you'll have to back up only a fraction of a turn; now, you're ready to let the disc go when you want the cut to start.

A combination of spinning the disc and slipcueing is a very popular way of cueing a disc: Place the stylus in the lead groove of the cut with the

Figure 3.16. *The plate is spinning, but the disc is being held in place.*

Figure 3.17. *The disc is released.*

turntable motor off, start the motor, and when the first sound is heard, stop the disc by placing your finger on the edge. Then, stop the motor and backtrack the disc.

Summary of cueing. We've identified three basic methods of cueing a disc and one variation that combines two methods. All have individual advantages; the one you choose is pretty much a personal decision.

In some cases, slipcueing is handy when you need to make a very tight entrance with music; slipcueing starts the cut immediately, without the momentary wait for the turntable to get up to speed. This is very useful when cueing up live concert album cuts, because the sound of the audience would create a wow if the record were started by other methods.

When slipcueing (slip starting), it's advisable not to pot up the turntable until immediately before you plan to start the cut; this is called dead-potting. Otherwise, you may pick up the rumble of the turntable motor and the spinning disc. Starting the turntable with the pot up is known as *hot-potting*. Potting up, or dead-potting, the turntable is generally considered better practice, but with modern, rumble-free turntables hot-potting seems to be gaining acceptance.

A disadvantage of slipcueing is that it ties up one of your hands during production.

REVIEW OF TURNTABLE OPERATION

The turntable is a heavy-duty version of a record player. It's almost always called a turntable (rather than a record player), and records are more com-

Figure 3.18. *EMT 948 turntable. (Photo courtesy of Gotham Audio Corporation, New York City.)*

monly called discs. The parts of the turntable are the plate, the switch, the drive mechanism, the tonearm, the stylus, and the cartridge.

All turntables have the same basic components, and although there are a variety of models manufactured, such as those pictured in Figures 3.18 and 3.19, they have the same basic principles of operation.

Turntable cartridges operate on the principle of transduction; that is, one form of energy is changed into another. In this case, vibrational energy picked up by the stylus vibrating in the grooves is changed—in the cartridge—to electrical energy. The principle of transduction will surface again and again in radio production, so it's a good idea to become familiar with it.

The discs themselves require some care in handling, to avoid getting skin oil on the grooves. There are three methods of cueing: spinning the plate, spinning the disc, and slipcueing.

COMPACT DISCS

At the time of this writing, devices known as compact discs are beginning to make inroads into the world of commercial radio. Compact disc players essentially perform the same function as standard turntables but with increased fidelity. Although you may not immediately have access to compact

Figure 3.19. *Technics Turntable System SL-B210. (Photo courtesy of Panasonic Company, Secaucus, N.J.)*

discs and although these devices may not be a staple of radio production for several years, a brief summary of what compact discs are and how they work is included.

Essentially, the compact disc (CD) player uses a laser beam to read information encoded on the disc. (A conventional turntable, of course, utilizes a stylus.) The music is "programmed" onto the disc digitally—in other words, in computer language. The digital imprint gives sound reproduction that is of much greater dynamic range than that of a conventional disc.

The compact disc itself is a one-sided piece of plastic that measures less than five inches across and can contain about an hour's worth of material. Because the compact disc isn't physically touched by a stylus and because it's protected by a special coating, the compact disc doesn't scratch or wear out. Another feature of the compact disc and compact disc player is that the computerized functions allow you to play back selections in any order and to access them without having to pick up and drop a tonearm.

Compact disc players can, at this time, be programmed to find and play selections; some units even allow you to program the stopping and starting time of the unit. They are play-back-only units.

The difference in digital audio quality is readily apparent, and you probably have heard music played on home units. Interestingly, the sound of digital music is not completely appealing to all audiophiles. Some regard it as "unnatural" (although the fact that sound must be mechanically and electronically manipulated to form any sort of audio makes it difficult to pin down exactly what "natural" playback would be).

In any event, many knowledgeable people in the broadcast industry predict that this new development eventually will be the standard. They also note that improvements in the technology will undoubtedly continue, with new advances in reproduction quality and control adaptability.

APPLICATIONS

Situation 1 /The Problem. A producer at a rock station was putting together a commercial that called for very tight meshing of musical elements. The station format involved fast-paced, extremely closely packed sound elements. Backtracking the disc and potting it up on the board resulted in a tiny, but noticeable gap in the sound.

One possible solution. The producer decided to slipcue the musical elements. By identifying the first sound of the music selection desired, backtracking every so slightly, and hot-potting the cut, she was able to make a very tight production.

Situation 2/The Problem. The producer of a spot wanted to use a lyric from a popular song. Unfortunately, there was an instrumental introduction leading directly into the beginning of the lyric. The spot really needed that lyric, but the 10-second instrumental before the lyric wasn't appropriate.

One possible solution. The producer elected to use a combination of slipcueing and potting up. She made a very tight backtrack before the beginning of the vocal and kept the turntable motor running. She did not, however, choose to hot-pot. Instead, she released the disc and very quickly potted up. By using this method, she avoided the slight wow that can be heard when slipcueing (starting) a record if there is audio in the grooves.

After a few practice runs, she was able to coordinate the slipcue and the quick pot-up so that the vocal seemed to start cold, with no wow and only the briefest (almost unnoticeable) portion of the instrumental lead-in.

Exercises

1. This exercise is strictly a matter of practice on some mechanical movements. It may seem a bit tedious, but practicing some of the basic movements will make the more complex operations much easier.

   The movements to practice are:

- ☐ Dropping the stylus into the lead grooves on a disc. Keep trying until you can hit all the grooves on an entire side without picking up any of the music.
- ☐ Handling the discs as shown in Figures 3.6 through 3.8.

2. Using three discs, go from one piece of music to another, and then to another. (With two turntables, obviously, you'll have to change one disc.) Play each disc for 10 or 20 seconds; then fade it down and bring up another.

   The trick to this exercise is this: Cue each disc by a different means

(if, of course, your equipment allows). For the first disc, cue it by spinning the plate. After you start the first disc (and put the output of that turntable in program) cue up the second disc by spinning the disc. While that's playing, cue up the third disc and slipcue it.

3. **Cross-fade** from a vocal to an instrumental; choose an instrumental cut that has a definite ending (rather than just a fade-out). Make the resulting segment *exactly* 5 minutes long. To do this, of course, you will have to backtime and dead-pot the instrumental.

4
Tape Recording And Playback Units

Most material in radio today is prerecorded. Discs, obviously, provide the vast majority of music. A disc, though, can't be used to record material during production. It might interest you to know, however, that as late as the 1950s many radio stations had disc-cutting machines just for this purpose.

Cutting discs was impractical because discs are useful primarily for permanent storage of sound. The need for a convenient way to record material that might be used only once or a few times, with further changes possible after recording, led to the development of *audio tape.*

Audio tape is often called **magnetic tape** because its magnetic properties allow the storage of sound. Actually, sound isn't stored on the tape. Sound energy is first transduced to electrical energy, and that electrical energy is then transduced into magnetic form. To understand this process, let's start by examining how the tape itself works. Then we'll discuss the machines that record and play back the tape.

MAGNETIC TAPE

Audio tape is a strip of material with a thin coating of iron oxide (a fancy name for rust) on one surface. The iron oxide particles line up when they are exposed to an electromagnetic field (more on that in a moment) and are the elements that hold the magnetic information.

The backing of the tape—the material over which the coating is applied—is made of *acetate* or *mylar.* Acetate is similar in composition to Scotch tape. It is somewhat brittle and can be snapped easily. Mylar is a resilient, extremely tough substance that will stretch before it breaks. This isn't necessarily an advantage, because a snapped tape can be repaired, whereas a stretched tape can't.

Figure 4.1. *Reels in 10-, 7-, and 5-inch sizes.*

The most commonly used tape in radio is a quarter-inch wide, although there are different sizes for specialized applications. The most common sizes of reels for broadcast use are 5, 7½, and 10½ inches (Fig. 4.1). The larger reels need a special kind of hub arrangement to hold them on the tape machine.

WORKINGS OF THE REEL-TO-REEL TAPE MACHINE

The process of magnetic tape recording happens when a tape passes by an electromagnet, which arranges the pattern of magnetism in the particles to correspond with the sound message being fed into the recorder.

A device called a **head** is the electromagnet in the tape machine. There are three functions performed by the heads in a typical tape recorder, but before describing them, let's see where the heads are, and how the tape is brought into contact with them.

Figure 4.2 is a simplified diagram of a reel-to-reel tape machine. All reel-to-reel tape machines, regardless of their design differences, operate in pretty much the same way. Notice how the units pictured in Figures 4.3 and 4.4 have the same basic anatomy.

Basically, the tape machine draws the tape from the left reel to the right reel. The technical names of the left and right components, respectively, are supply reel and takeup reel. When tape passes from the supply reel to the takeup reel it is drawn across the heads, where a signal will be implanted

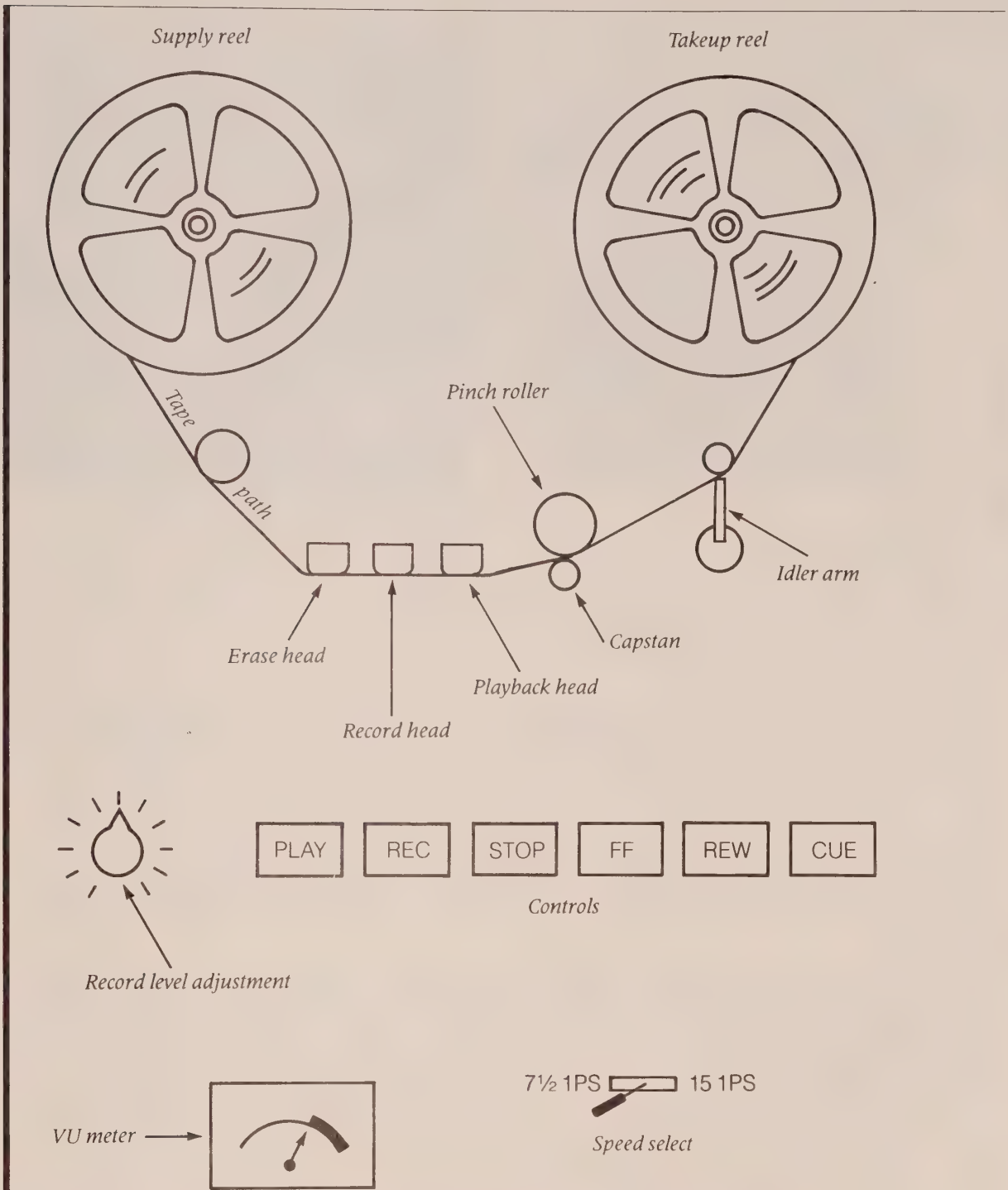


Figure 4.2. *The tape path in a typical tape recorder. The control buttons are identified on pages 47–48.*

on the tape or played back from the tape. We'll start with an explanation of the heads and then move on to the tape transport system.

The heads

Figure 4.5 shows the heads on a tape machine. The heads perform three distinct functions: *erase, record,* and *play.*

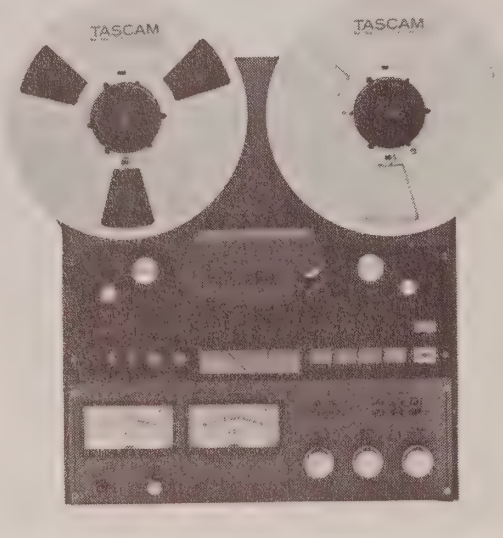


Figure 4.3. *Reel-to-reel tape recorder that will accept up to 10-inch reels. (Photo courtesy of TASCAM, TEAC Professional Division, Montebello, Calif.)*

Figure 4.4. *This tape recorder is frequently used in broadcast operations.*

The **erase head** produces a magnetic field, called a *flux,* which scrambles the pattern of the iron oxide particles and obliterates any information previously stored on them.
The **record head** produces a magnetic field that arranges the iron oxide particles in a particular order, storing the information on the tape.
The **playback head** reads the patterns formed by the arrangement of the iron oxide particles and produces an electrical signal carrying the sound information.

The heads are always arranged in this order: erase, record, playback. If you're ever stumped in the identification of a head (you'll need to know the location of the heads during tape editing), try and think the problem out logically. Erase *must* come first; if the erase head were second in line, you'd erase whatever had just been recorded on the tape. It makes sense to have the record head in the second position because it allows the tape to then pass over the playback head, which is in the third position. Since the tape passes the record head immediately before the playback head, the operator of the tape machine can play back what was just recorded to make sure that there is, indeed, a recording on the tape. You wouldn't have this option if the positions of the record and playback head were reversed.

Remember: erase, record, playback. And if you can't recall the logical explanation of their order, just remember that they spell ERP.

Now, to throw you a curve: In some machines, there are only two heads: an erase head and a combination record/playback head. For the purposes of radio production, all you'll have to remember is that erase comes before record/playback. Cartridge machines, as you'll see in a moment, have only record and play heads.

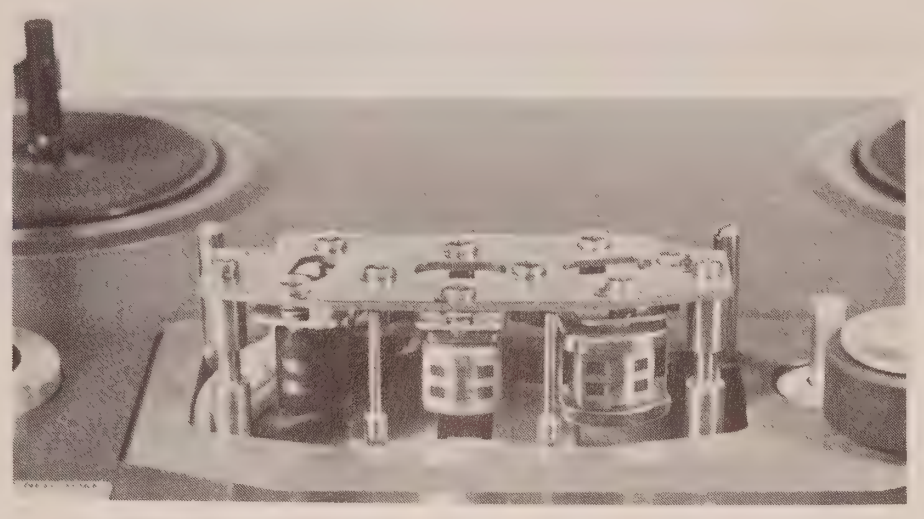


Figure 4.5. *Heads of a typical tape recorder. Left to right: the erase head, the record head, and the playback head.*

The tape transport mechanism

Regardless of the differences among models, the goal of all tape machines is the same: to pass a tape across the heads at a constant rate of speed. Refer back to Figure 4.2. Here's what the components of the drive mechanism do:

- The supply reel, as mentioned, contains the tape that will be drawn across the heads.
- The takeup reel draws the tape up after it passes across the heads.
- The tape guides are precision designed to keep the tape exactly in position.
- The capstan is a revolving metal post that determines the speed of the tape's movement. It turns the next piece of equipment—the pinch roller.
- The tape passes between the pinch roller, which is made of rubber, and the capstan, and is pulled along at the proper speed. The capstan and the pinch roller keep the tape moving at a constant speed, and they are connected to the feed and takeup reels through a series of clutches.
- The tape idler arm (a feature on most larger tape machines) will drop down if the tape breaks; when the idler drops, it shuts down the tape machine's drive mechanism. This prevents tape from spilling out onto the floor if there's a break, and will shut down the drive mechanism when the tape runs completely off either reel.

Tape machine controls and indicators

Although the style of levers and buttons differs from machine to machine, the controls and indicators perform typical functions (see Fig. 4.2).

Play. Depressing the PLAY button (or, in some units, flicking a lever) will cause the machine to play back the recording on the tape. The tape moves

from the supply reel, across the heads, to the pickup reel. The erase and record heads don't operate when the machine is in play.

Record (REC). Usually, record is a button that is pushed along with the play control. When record is activated, the record head impresses a signal on the iron oxide particles on the tape; this is the signal that can be read back by the play head. When the machine is in the record mode, the erase head is also activated; there would be no point in recording if the previous information (if any) on the tape were not removed.

VU meter. Like the meter on the console, this monitors the signal coming into the tape machine so that proper levels can be maintained when recording. There are also separate controls on the tape machine to govern the level of the incoming signal.

Fast-forward. The FF control moves the tape forward (in the same direction as *play*) at a high rate of speed. In some units, the fast-forward control brings the tape into contact with the heads, and you'll hear the chattering of the fast-moving tape. Some machines, though, lift the tape away from the heads, so you'll have to use the next feature if you want to hear the sounds of the tape.

Cue. The CUE control brings the tape into contact with the heads by defeating the tape lifter; it allows you to cue the tape when it's moving in fast-forward or in rewind (see below). The cue control also, on some machines, is used if you want to hear the sounds on the tape when moving the reels by hand (which you will do when editing tape).

Rewind (REW). Activating the rewind control causes the tape to move backward, that is, from the takeup reel to the supply reel.

Stop. Pressing STOP brings the motion of the reels to a halt.

Speed select. This control governs how quickly the tape moves past the heads. The most frequently used speeds on broadcast reel-to-reel tape machines are $7\frac{1}{2}$ and 15 inches per second (IPS); that is, $7\frac{1}{2}$ (or 15) inches of tape is driven past a given point per second. A seldom-used but still sometimes available speed is $3\frac{3}{4}$ IPS. Note that each speed is exactly double or half the previous speed.

CUEING A TAPE

Just as in the case of discs and turntables, you'll need to know where the sound information on a tape begins so that you can put it out over the air or use it in studio production. Say, for instance, that you have a recording of an interview show. You might thread the tape and fast-forward with the

cue control on (although some machines play sound in fast-forward without a cue control) until you hear the chattering of sound on the tape—over the console's cue speaker, of course! Then, rewind it to that approximate point at which the sound started, stop the tape machine, and rock the reels by hand until you hear the beginning in cue.

Usually, there'll be a countdown or cue tone on prerecorded tapes to help the operator in cueing. For instance, the interview show might start with the host saying: "Meet the Community Program for air Sunday, March 17, rolling in five, four, three, two, one, Good afternoon, welcome to. . . ."

With experience, you'll learn to listen to the countdown on cue, stop the tape machine after "one," and be set to put the program on air.

You can also use leader tape to cue. Leader tape, which is described fully later in the book, can be inserted within the tape and used as a visual cue to make the cueing job easier.

HEADS AND TRACKS

Now that we've covered the manner in which the heads impress a signal on the audio tape, let's look at a technical detail that can be confusing.

A tape machine's heads place the signal on a specific location on the tape, a strip called a **track.** It is a function of recorder/player configuration, not a property of the tape itself. Many tape machines place the signal across the entire width of the tape; sensibly, this is called a *full-track* recording (Fig. 4.6).

Some machines record on only half the track, as pictured in Figure 4.7. This allows a stereo signal to be recorded on the tape, as explained in later chapters. A half-track recording is also known as two-track. Another type of recording is quarter-track (Fig. 4.8). The quarter-track system can be used to record stereo. Two of the stereo tracks would be recorded with the tape moving in one direction (tracks 1 and 3), two would be recorded going in the other direction (tracks 2 and 4). This track system is not commonly used in radio.

How tracks work

Each track is placed onto the tape by means of a separate head. However, multiple heads can be placed onto the same structure. The element that actually puts the signal on the tape is a tiny rectangle on the structure that holds the head. When there's more than one head, the structure holding them is called a *headstack.*

There are machines that contain up to 32 heads on a stack, but those commonly aren't used for general radio production. There are applications for multiple-track recording in radio, though, and those are considered later.

Figure 4.6. *Full-track recording.*

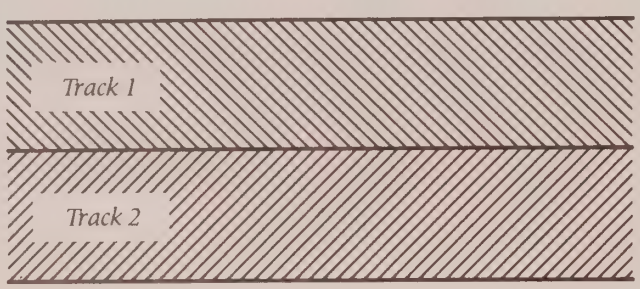


Figure 4.7. *Half-track (or two-track) recording.*

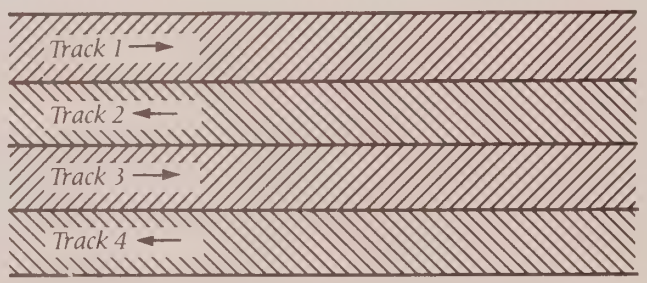


Figure 4.8. *Quarter-track recording.*

Why there are different head mechanisms

The varied types of track arrangement give different options to the producer. In the case of half-track, the producer has the ability to record a **stereo** signal or a **monaural** signal on both tracks. (As you probably know, a monaural signal is not separated into components. For now, don't worry about the fine points of monaural and stereo.)

A version of quarter-track recording is generally used on cassette machines (Fig. 4.9). Cassettes have some use in radio broadcasting, and are discussed briefly later in this chapter.

Machines using more than four tracks use tape wider than quarter-inch, and generally are used for recording original music.

Regardless of the track system, you'll find that the basic operating principles are the same, and the difference in track formats shouldn't present a problem. The only point that can foul you up is this: A tape recorded on only one track of a two-track format will lose quality when played back on a full-track machine, because the full-track head will be playing back half a

Figure 4.9. *A broadcast-quality cassette recorder. (Photo courtesy of TASCAM, TEAC Professional Division, Montebello, Calif.)*

track of nothing except hiss and other electrical noise. Likewise, a quarter-track tape cannot be played back on a half-track machine—you would be hearing information played forward and backward. So always strive to play back tapes on a machine that has the same track arrangement as the machine on which they were recorded.

Review of reel-to-reel tape machines

The purpose of a reel-to-reel tape machine is to pass audio tape, also known as magnetic tape, over the heads. The heads are tiny electromagnets that erase, record, and play. The functions erase, record, and play are always performed in that order, although the record and play head are sometimes combined.

The erase head scrambles the alignment of iron oxide particles on the audio tape. Those particles are aligned again by the record head.

CASSETTE MACHINES

Cassette record and playback units are highly portable, which is why such devices have come into such common use in radio newsrooms. The size of the tape, however, limits its usefulness in other areas of radio production. Smaller tape size (and therefore a smaller area of the track) yields a recording of lower quality. A slower recording speed ($1\frac{7}{8}$ IPS) also detracts from sound quality. Noise reduction devices, such as Dolby, are used to counteract these problems. Noise reduction is dealt with in Chapter 14. Another problem with cassette machines, at least from the standpoint of radio production, is that the tape is difficult to edit mechanically. Most news operations dub cassettes up to quarter-inch for editing.

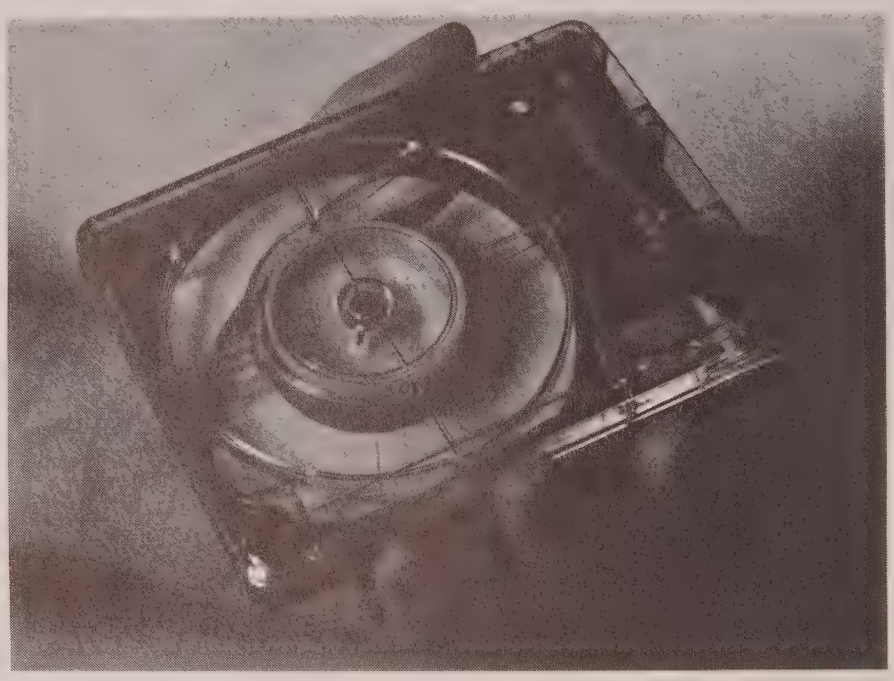


Figure 4.10. *A broadcast cartridge.*

Some newer units operate differently from the standard cassette machine and are, in some cases, used for playback of music over the air.

CARTRIDGE MACHINES

While reel-to-reel tape provides high quality there are some drawbacks. For one thing, it's time-consuming to thread up a reel of tape and find the cue. Reels of tape are somewhat cumbersome to handle. Cartridge machines were developed as a solution to this problem. They utilize a cartridge—usually called a *cart*—which is an endless loop of tape (Fig. 4.10).

The advantage of using carts is that the units designed to play them (Fig. 4.11) are able to sense a cue tone on the tape that will stop the tape automatically after it has played through full cycle. *This means, too, that the tape will be all set to start again from the beginning.* This is why cart machines are so useful in radio production. There are two tracks on a mono cart machine; one track contains only the cued tone.

A 60-second commercial often is put on a 70-second cart. The commerical, for reasons to be explained in a moment, is all set to go when it's put into the machine. To play the spot, the operator on air hits the cart machine's play button. The tape, an endless reel, is pulled past the heads; when the commerical ends, the producer lets the cart play until it reaches the cue tone and stops automatically. The cart is then said to be *recued.*

Carts can also be loaded with a number of different spots—for instance,

Figure 4.11. *A cart machine.*

seven 10-second station identifications on a 70-second cart. This is a convenient way to play such cuts and ensures that they will be rotated throughout the broadcast day.

Now, let's see exactly how the cart machine works. The cart is an endless loop of tape; that is, the start of the tape is spliced to the end of the **cartridge tape,** a special heavily lubricated tape that feeds out from the middle of the reel. A rubber drive wheel snaps into place when the cart is locked into its location; this is done differently in various models—sometimes a lever is used to swing the drive wheel into the proper spot.

A cart machine also has a stop control and a record control. The record control puts the unit in the record mode; this also activates the function of the machine that places the cue tone on the tape. Some cart machines are **playback only** and do not record.

The cue tone (which you can't hear) is placed on the tape when the cart

machine is in record and the start button is pushed. Like a reel-to-reel tape machine, there is a VU meter to gauge the level of the recording. Also like reel-to-reel machines, cartridge units have a record head and a playback head. What they don't have is an erase head. This is because an erase head would erase the cue tone before the cue tone reached the play head, where it would be sensed and the recording stopped.

Because of the lack of an erase head, you'll have to use what's called a *bulk eraser* to wipe the cart clean. The bulk eraser, often called a *bulker,* is a large electromagnet that will scramble the impulses on the iron oxide coating of the tape. The bulk eraser will work with reel-to-reel tapes and cassettes, too, should you desire to erase them completely.

There's a technique to using a bulk eraser properly (Figs. 4.12–4.14) and, if you practice it, you can save yourself a great deal of trouble. Essentially, you must move the bulker slowly, in a circular motion, across the flat side of the cart; then wipe it across the front of the cart, the head area of the tape, to ensure that that section is erased. Finally, move the bulker slowly away from the cart before turning it off—suddenly collapsing the magnetic field will impart a noise on the tape. Follow the same procedure for bulking a cassette or reel-to-reel tape, although with the reel-to-reel tape you obviously won't have to erase the head area. Note that we've described the procedure as moving the bulker; you also, of course, can move the tape.

Any strong magnetic field can erase a tape, so be cautious and never place tapes or carts near strong magnetic fields like transformers, amplifiers, or speakers, which could damage or erase your production. By the same token, magnetism from the bulking operation can damage your wristwatch, so be sure to remove your watch before you began to erase tapes.

SPECIAL PROBLEMS ASSOCIATED WITH CARTRIDGE MACHINES

Improper erasure is one problem with working with carts. As handy as they are, it's important to point out that a good share of the errors heard on live radio and made in studio production can be traced to faulty use of carts. Let's consider some special problems we face when working with carts.

Sound over sound

If you don't erase the cart before recording over it again, you'll get *double audio.* If you don't do a good job of bulking, you'll get the residual sounds of a "dirty" cart in the background; those residual noises often sound something like a heartbeat. And if you don't erase the front of the cart (the opening where the tape is), an extra cue tone can be left on the tape.

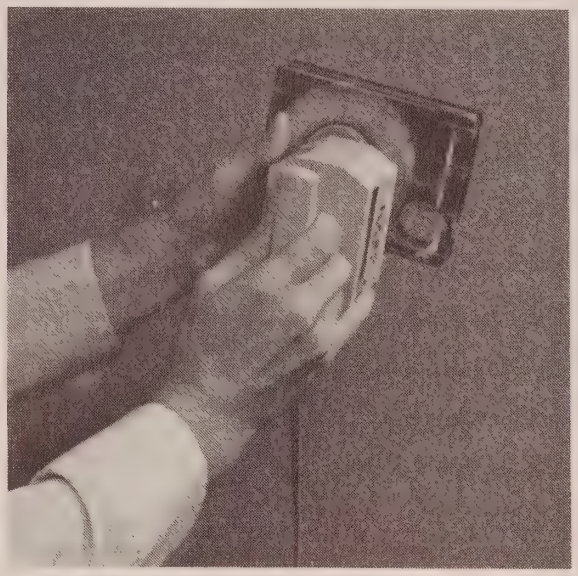


Figure 4.12. *Using a swirling motion, erase the cart from the front . . .*

Figure 4.13. *. . . then make sure to swirl the bulker in front of the head area of the cart.*

Figure 4.14. *Move the bulker away from the cart gradually before you turn off the switch. If the magnetic field is suddenly turned off, it can impart a noise on the tape.*

Recueing

A cart must be given the opportunity to cycle through the full length of tape to return to where the recording started, the cue tone. For various reasons, carts sometimes get taken off the machine and aren't recued. Punching up an uncued cart can be inconvenient and, in some cases, embarrassing.

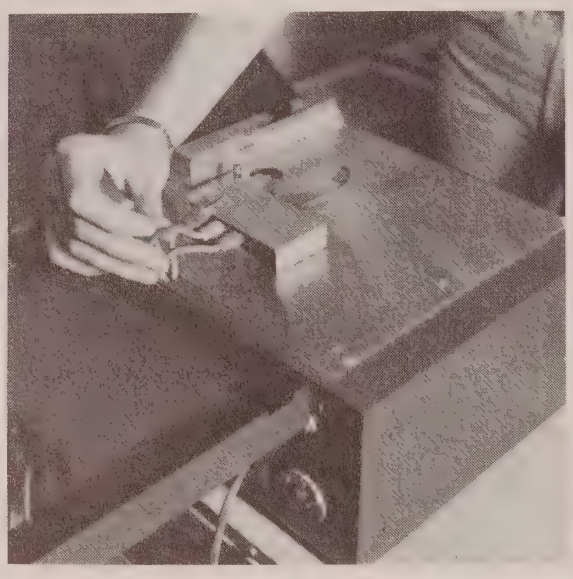


Figure 4.15. *To prevent the cue tone from being recorded on the cart, remove the green wire from the connecting point on the machine.*

Wowing

A wow (the noise made by a sound source that is picking up speed) can happen on a cart machine if the start button is pressed too soon after the cart was locked in place. The motor on a cart machine doesn't start until the cart is locked into place, so if you quickly jam the cart into the machine and smack the start button, you'll get a wow for the first few moments of the tape. The solution is to plan ahead: Don't hit the start button until the cart machine has sat for a second or two after the cart has been locked in place.

Other features of cart machines

Eliminating the cue tone on a cart machine. With some machines, such as the one pictured in Figure 4.15, you can pull out the wire that places the cue tone on the tape, producing a cart without a cue tone—that is, a cart that will run endlessly. This maneuver is called disabling the cue tone, and it can come in handy in certain applications. For example, you can elect to use such arrangement for a **sound effect** (discussed in the Applications section of this chapter). Just be sure to plug the green wire back in when you're done.

Intentional sound-on-sound on carts. Earlier, we mentioned that since a cart doesn't erase itself, sound will be recorded over previous sound. If that

happens by accident, it's a problem. But the feature can be turned to your advantage in some production situations.

Several layers of sound can be recorded onto a cart. If, for instance, you are recording a production that calls for a sound effect and a narration, the sound effect could conceivably be layered directly onto the cart that contains the narration. You'll save a step—that is, you won't have to do another dub and mix—but sound layering on carts can add quite a bit of noise to the production.

Review of cartridge machines

A cart is an endless loop of tape in a plastic case. The case is locked into a cartridge machine, which has a start button, a stop button, and a record control (except for units that are playback only, which just have stop and start buttons).

When you record a cart, put the record control on and hit the start button. This will automatically put a cue tone on the lower half of the tape. The cue tone, which is inaudible, will be sensed by the play head. It allows the tape to play through its entire length and then stop automatically, ready to be played again.

Cart machines don't have an erase head, so carts must be wiped clean with a bulk eraser.

Although carts are convenient, problems that can accompany them include sound inadvertently recorded over sound, failure to recue the cart, and wowing (if started too soon after being put in the machine).

RELATION OF RECORD UNITS TO THE CONSOLE

Throughout this chapter, we've avoided calling reel-to-reel, cassette and cart machines *recorders.* The reason is that they are used both for record and for playback; the term *machine* (or *unit*) is more accurate and less confusing. *Deck* is also a commonly used and accurate term. We take this approach because it's especially important for the producer to separate mentally the difference between playback and record, and to translate these functions to console operation.

Nothing seems to cause more confusion to newcomers in radio production than what to do with the console when recording in one unit and playing back in another. Suppose, for example, you are mixing the output of a tape machine and a microphone, and you want to record the product on a cart machine. What happens on the console?

You put the mic and the tape machine in program. You want to play back

these units, and therefore want the signal to go through the console, where it will be amplified, mixed, and routed.

Whenever you switch a tape or cart machine to record, the signal from the board will—in most cases—be routed directly to the tape or cart. (Sometimes you'll have to patch the signal to the record unit.) The important thing to remember is that when you are recording on a particular unit, *you do not want to pot that unit up on the board.*

You are not playing the output of that particular machine, so there is no reason to bring it up on the console. You will, in fact, cause feedback by potting up a unit when that unit is in the record mode. (For now, don't be concerned about the reason, just be aware of this source of feedback.)

In summary, always remember: When you want to play back the output of a tape or cart machine, bring the unit up on the console. (Most tape devices are hot-potted, by the way.) When you want to record on a tape or cart machine, do NOT bring the unit up on the console. In almost all production work, you are recording the output of the console.

APPLICATIONS

Situation 1/The Problem. The producer of an hour-long news program wants the sound of a teletype in the background. He has a sound effects record with the teletype sound, but the cut runs only 3 minutes, and it would be impractical to keep dropping the stylus back at the beginning of the cut.

One possible solution. The producer pulled the green wire (see Fig. 4.15) on the cart machine, placed a 70-second cart in the machine, and recorded exactly 70 seconds of the teletype effect on cart. Now, the cart plays endlessly throughout the newscast.

Situation 2/The Problem. A community bulletin board segment airs twice every hour at 15 minutes and 45 minutes after the hour. The producer has found a perfect piece of music to introduce the segment, but she notes how inconvenient it is to tie up a turntable twice an hour for 10 seconds of music.

One possible solution. The producer simply records, or *dubs,* the first 10 seconds of music from the disc onto a cart. The cart is labeled and is placed in a rack; it's now very convenient for the console operator to grab the cart and plug it in.

Exercises

1. Using a reel-to-reel tape machine, record someone counting from 1 to 20. Then have someone call out a number between 1 and 20; your as-

signment is to cue the tape up, as quickly as possible, to start AT THAT NUMBER. For example, if the number 16 is called out, you'll want to find the part of the tape on which the announcer is reading 13 . . . 14 . . . 15 . . . and stop it there. (You will, of course, do this on cue or in audition.) Then, bring the tape recorder up on program and start it. You should hear the tape cleanly start with the number 16. Have several numbers called out until you're proficient at cueing up the tape.

2. Decide which type of machine (turntable, cassette, reel-to-reel tape, or cart) would be best for the following applications, and explain your reasons.

- ☐ The musical opening to a news program.
- ☐ An interview a news reporter will be doing at the site of a demonstration.
- ☐ A 60-second commercial.
- ☐ A half-hour radio drama.
- ☐ A 10-minute interview segment done in the studio.
- ☐ Multiple station identifications. (You might want to try producing sample station IDs on the type of machine you decide is most appropriate.)

5
Microphones And Sound

In many cases you don't need to know all the details of microphone use to do your job in a radio station. A person doing production duties in a small radio station will generally use the mic that happens to be hooked up to the console. A reporter will use whatever mic is handed out before going out on assignment. And there are many production situations in which the simplest of miking techniques and arrangements will be used time and time again.

However, you'll be able to do even a basic production job better with a good working knowledge of microphones. In some cases a detailed knowledge of microphone use will help you solve a thorny problem. And, in the more advanced areas of radio production, such as recording live music, you *must* know mic use inside and out.

We're offering an honest explanation of the situation because many newcomers to radio production become somewhat cynical after plowing through explicit details of microphone use and selection but never using the knowledge during the class or in their first few jobs. But even though this knowledge might not seem essential right now, it just might prove invaluable down the road.

THE BASICS OF SOUND

The microphone is, like many other pieces of equipment discussed earlier, a **transducer.** It changes the energy of the motion of sound into electrical energy. The microphone is the instrument that transforms sound into something usable by the record and playback units hooked up to a radio console.

Sound itself is a vibration—a specific motion—of air molecules. What happens is this: A sound source, a cymbal, perhaps, sets up changes in

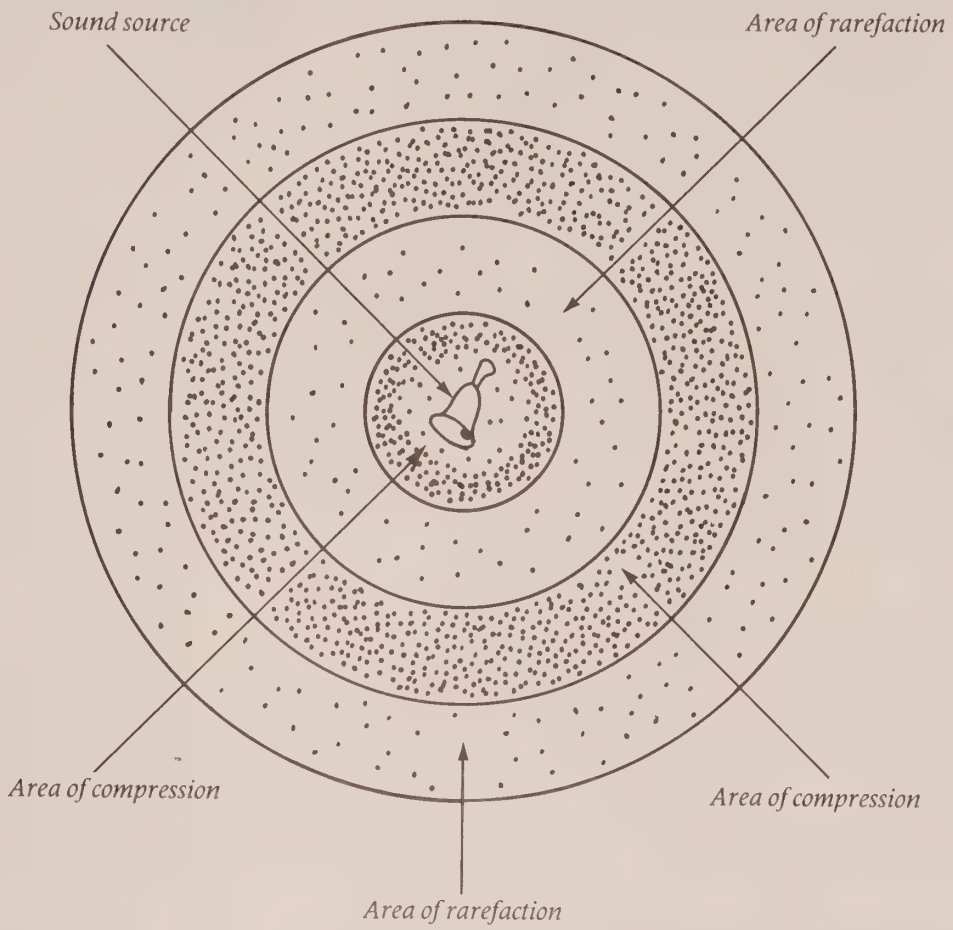


Figure 5.1. *Compressions and rarefactions.*

air pressure. When molecules are pushed together, they are said to be in **compression.** Areas of low pressure, where molecules are pulled apart from each other, are called **rarefactions.** To visualize the situation, look at Figure 5.1. A sound source causes alternating waves of compression (heavy dots) and rarefaction (sparse dots) through the air.

Now, that vibration traveling through the air carries information. The way that the cymbal sounds to our ears is determined by the pattern of vibration. As a matter of fact, the eardrum is a transducer, too. It is the first step in converting motional energy of vibration into electrical energy in the brain.

The microphone also transduces the motional energy into electrical energy. That energy then might be transduced to electromechanical energy (storage on audio tape) or transduced back to motional energy by a loudspeaker.

How does a mic do this, and why are certain mics better than others at reproducing certain sounds? To understand that, let's first explore a bit further the nature of sound itself. The information will come in handy when we try to understand the behavior of sound and how mics affect its reproduction.

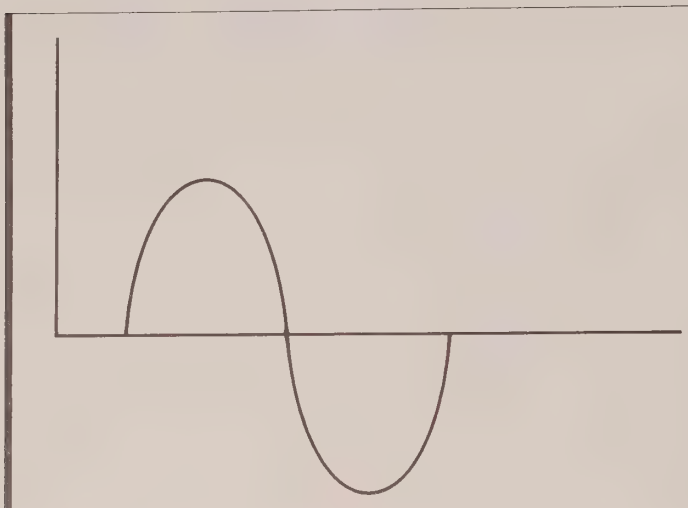


Figure 5.2. A sine wave.

The elements of sound

A pure tone sound is represented by a *sine wave* (Fig. 5.2), one of the most frequently used symbols in the world of sound and microphones and radio, and one of the most frequently misunderstood. A sine wave is a graphic representation of the rarefactions and compressions of air molecules. If we were to sample the density of the molecules of a wave (pictured in Fig. 5.3), we'd find a thick area, then an area becoming thinner, an area very thin, an area somewhat thicker, then a thick area again. A graph of this pattern would look like Figure 5.4, which is a plot of the sound pattern, not a picture of it. Thus, the sine wave only represents sound; there are no sine waves emanating from a sound source. The sine wave can be used to analyze several elements of sound.

Cycle. Each time a wave goes through its pattern and returns to its starting point, it has completed one *cycle.* A cycle passes through a complete rotation every 360 degrees. The time it takes for a wave to make a complete cycle is called an interval.

A cycle can be measured from any starting point. A cycle is illustrated in Figure 5.5. Note that though a sine wave has 360 degrees in a complete rotation, this representation has two equal intervals, called positive and negative intervals, and each interval is 180 degrees long.

Frequency. This is a measure of how often a cycle is repeated in a given period of time. Formerly **frequency** was measured in *cycles per second.* In recent years, "cycles per second" has been replaced by the term **hertz** (Hz), named in honor of the mathematician Heinrich Hertz, who first demonstrated the existence of radio waves. We'll see how frequency plays a role in the nature of sound shortly.

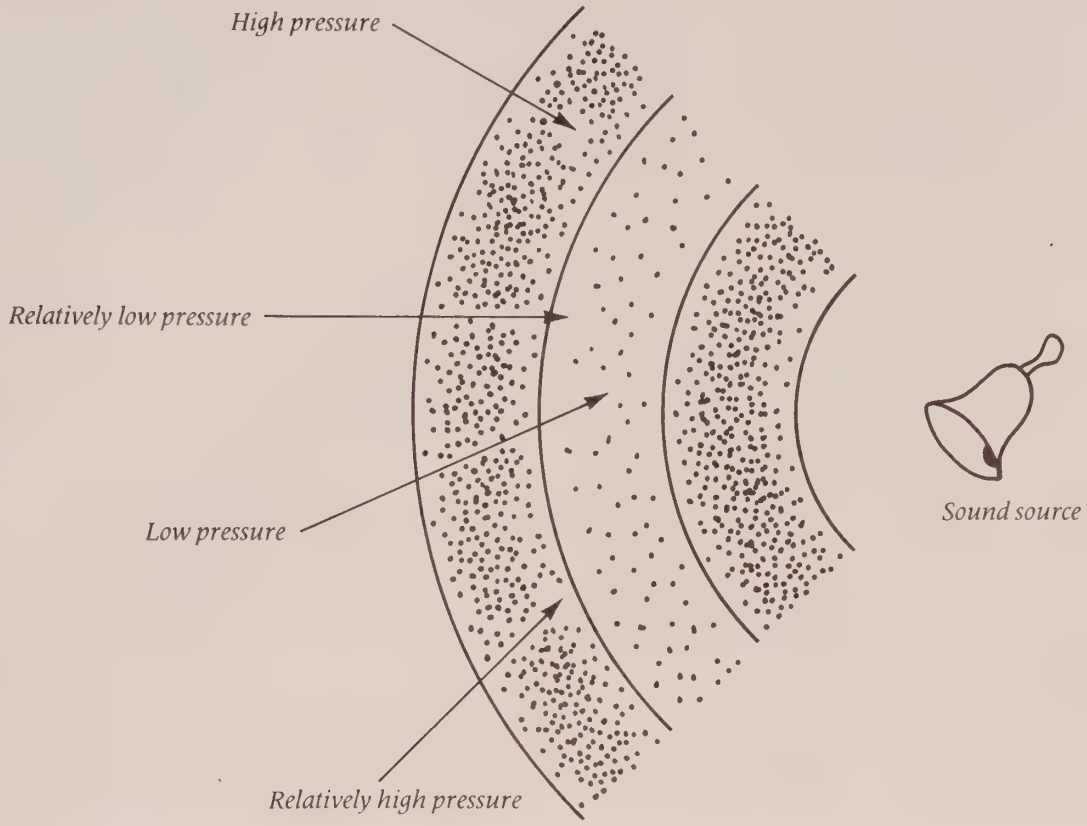


Figure 5.3. *Measuring compressions and rarefactions.*

Amplitude. In technical terms, the **amplitude** is the height of the sine wave. Amplitude indicates the volume of the sound. The higher the amplitude, the louder the sound.

These elements determine the characteristics of sound, and the sine wave is a visual representation of those characteristics. If nothing else, remember that any sound can be *described* by one or more sine waves.

The nature of sound: frequency

Why one or more sine waves? Essentially, because sounds are a combination of wave patterns. While a device called a tone generator will produce, by electronic circuitry, a pure wave (when represented on an oscilloscope), most sounds are a combination of many waves of different shapes and frequencies and are called *complex waveforms.*

Frequencies and your ears. The human ear can hear frequencies from about 35 to 16,000 Hz. This, of course, depends on the age and health of the ear's owner. Older people generally don't hear high frequencies as well as young people. The low end of the scale is a deep bass rumbling; the high end is a thin whine that's barely audible to people.

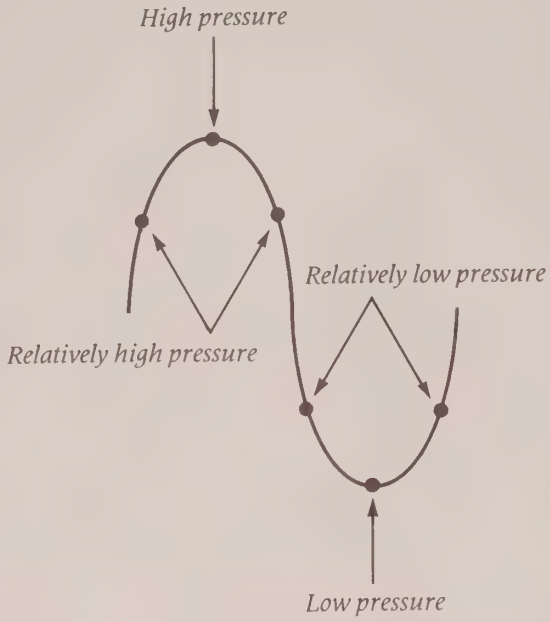


Figure 5.4. *This is what a sine wave represents.*

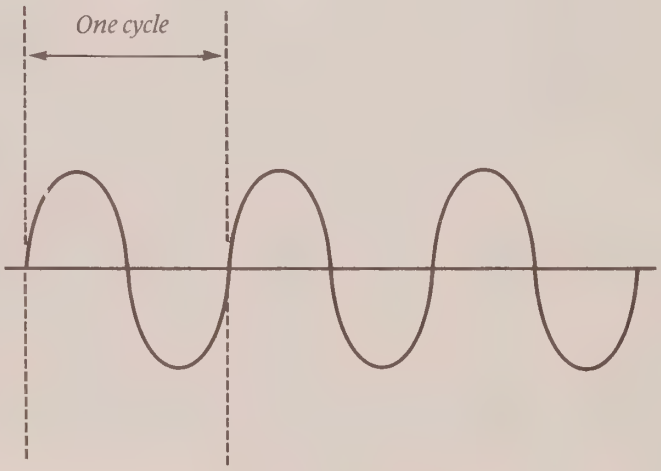


Figure 5.5. *One cycle.*

How frequency shapes sound. A sound is a combination of various waves, some higher, some lower. The *fundamental* (basic, most important) frequency of an average male voice, for example, can be in the range of 300 Hz. But the consonant sounds such as *t* and *d* are much higher, perhaps in the 1000-Hz range. The very high, hissy consonants, such as *s* can be well into the 4,000-Hz range, while the *th* in thin can range up to 6,000 Hz. There are other components of the sounds of human speech that can range as high as 9,000 Hz.

The higher frequency sounds, the consonant sounds, *lend intelligibility to speech.* If high consonant sounds are not reproduced by any of the transducers in the radio production chain, human speech will be less intelligible. Music in which the high frequencies are not present will sound muddy and dull; the high frequencies add clarity and vibrancies.

A limited range of frequencies will affect the tone of speech, too. The telephone reproduces frequencies from about 300 to 3,000 Hz. The difference between speech over a telephone and speech over a high-quality mic is readily apparent. Various mics reproduce frequencies with varying degrees of effectiveness.

The nature of sound: amplitude

The amplitude of the sine wave represents the volume of the sound. Another way to measure sound volume is in *decibels.* A decibel (dB) is a very complex measurement. There are two essential points about decibels.

1. The higher the decibel reading, the louder the sound. 20 dB is a whisper; 55 dB is loud conversational speech; 75 dB is city traffic; 110 dB is a loud, amplified rock band; 140 dB is a jet engine at takeoff. (These measurements are in a particular form called dB SPL—decibel sound pressure level.)
2. It is considered that 2 dB SPL is the smallest change in sound level a human ear can perceive. A change of 6 dB SPL is what the human ear perceives as doubling the sound.

A more detailed explanation is this: The ear does not hear in a linear fashion. That is, if you were playing a radio with a level that was equal to 10 watts of power and you turned it up to equal an output of 15 watts, an addition of 5 watts, you would not perceive an increase of 1.5 times. Rather, because it would be difficult then to measure "apparent" volume by talking about watts, we use a system that measures sound in a geometric fashion and *corresponds to the way the ear appears to hear sound.* Hence, the decibel is a very useful tool to measure significant "apparent volume" increases or decreases.

Remember the VU meter, and the readings on the top scale? Those volume units correspond to decibels. People often wonder why the VU meter uses zero dB as the loudest modulation of sound we would wish to transmit when common sense suggests that the louder the sound, the higher the dB reading. Actually, it would be very confusing to have a VU meter scale that read, perhaps, from 60 to 120 dB. Therefore, in broadcasting we have standardized zero VU to equal a relative sound level that will power our transmitter or recording devices to their maximum permissible outputs. This way, we don't have to work with such large dB numbers. Remember, *the zero dB reading is relative.* A reading of -1 means that your input is 1 dB lower than the optimum level.

Other characteristics of sound

We've pretty well covered the physical properties that make up the nature of sound. Some other areas are also worth considering. Pitch, a commonly

used term to describe sound, is not the same thing as frequency. Frequency is a physical measurement; pitch is the ear's and mind's interpretation of frequency, the way we hear a frequency. The human ear just doesn't hear the same way a scientific instrument does.

Duration is a characteristic of sound, too. It means the amount of time a sound exists. It also refers to the amount of time individual harmonics exist within a complex waveform.

Velocity and distance also play a role in the way we hear sound. Sound is not very fast; it travels through air at only a little more than 1,100 feet per second, or 750 miles per hour. Sound travels at different rates through different media; it travels about four times as fast through water, for example. But it has to vibrate through a medium; there's no sound in a vacuum.

The relative slowness of sound in air can be illustrated by a familiar example. When sitting in the bleachers during a baseball game, you will see the batter complete his swing before you hear the crack of the bat hitting the ball. Because of the slowness of sound, you can perceive echoes (the immediate bounceback of sound) and reverberation (the continued bouncing of sound) in an enclosure with reflective walls. A large room with reflective walls will cause the reverberations to take longer to *decay,* or die out.

Distance also makes a difference in how loud the sound is when it reaches us. When sound travels two times a specified distance, it arrives at only one-quarter of its original intensity. This behavior is said to be in compliance with the inverse square law.

A final characteristic is the quality, or timbre. This, again, is a factor of how our ears and mind perceive sound. It has to do with the way harmonics are combined, and the relative intensities of those harmonics. Those combinations make us perceive a difference between the middle C played on a piano and the same note played on a harpsichord.

Summary of the basics of sound

Understanding how sound behaves is a prerequisite to learning about microphones, and much of what you need to know concerns how a mic reproduces sound.

Sound is a vibration of molecules in the air, and it consists of rarefactions and compressions. A sine wave is a graphic representation of a sound wave; it is not supposed to be a picture of the wave.

Sound is measured in terms of frequency and amplitude. Frequency, which tells how often in a given period of time the sound wave makes a complete cycle, is measured in cycles per second, now called hertz. Amplitude is the height of the sine wave. It refers to the loudness of the sound and is measured in decibels. Sound travels at about 1,100 feet per second.

Some characteristics of sound include pitch (the way we perceive fre-

quency), loudness (the way we perceive volume), and quality or timbre (the way we interpret the complex waveforms).

Now that we've prefaced this chapter with an explanation of sound, let's move on to the ways mics work, the various types, and their uses.

THE MICROPHONE: HOW IT WORKS

One of the ways in which a producer selects a microphone and decides on its use is by determining how that microphone reproduces sound and, also, how it *colors* that sound. (The meaning of this term should become clear shortly.)

Electronics of the microphone

Sound reproduction is effected by the mechanical and electronic means used within the mic to change the **acoustic** or motional energy of sound—a vibration of molecules in the air—to electrical energy. Certain varieties of microphones are much better adapted to some tasks than other types. That's why it's important to understand the workings of the three types of microphone most common in radio broadcasting: the **moving coil,** the **ribbon,** and the **condenser.**

Moving coil. Electricity is formed by moving a conductor through a magnetic field. That's exactly what happens in a generator: Coils of wire are moved through a magnetic field, and electrical current results.

And that's also what happens in a moving coil microphone. The diaphragm in a moving coil mic (Fig. 5.6) is attached to a coil of wire. The **diaphragm,** a thin membrane, vibrates as it is driven by the sound waves. The coil attached to the diaphragm vibrates, too—and the vibration of this moving coil cuts through the magnetic lines of force produced by the magnets within the microphone. The electrical wave produced now carries the imprint of the sound wave by mirroring both the frequency of the acoustical energy and the amplitude of that energy. Moving coil mics are sometimes referred to as **dynamic mics.**

Ribbon. This type of mic has a thin, usually corrugated, metal ribbon suspended between the poles of a magnet (Fig. 5.7). The ribbon vibrates in harmony with the sound waves. Technically, the ribbon mic responds to a difference in pressure between the front and back of the ribbon; that's why some people refer to this type of instrument as a *pressure gradient* mic. Ribbon mics are gradually becoming less common in radio.

Condenser. A condenser mic operates by use of an electrical element called a *capacitor.* "Condenser" is actually an old-fashioned name for capacitor,

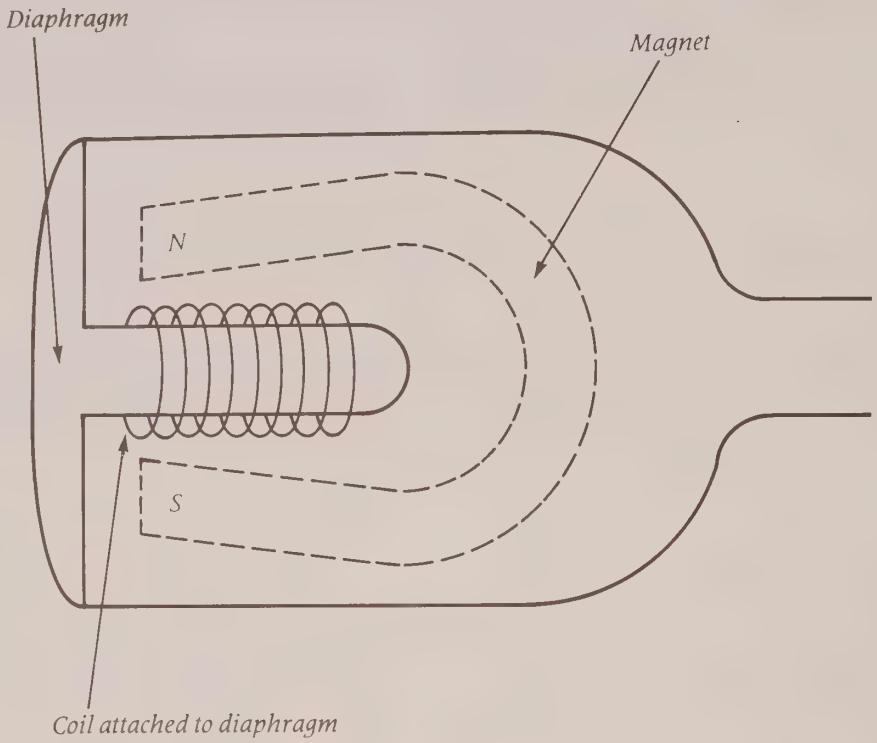


Figure 5.6. *Diagram of a moving coil mic.*

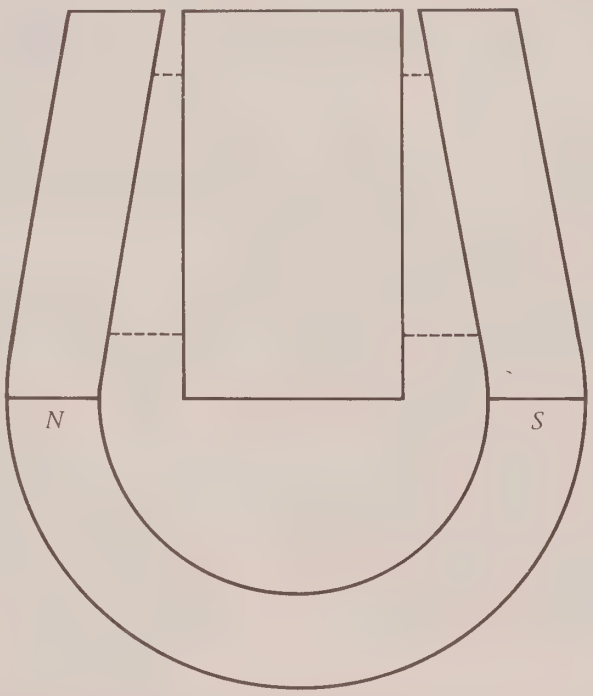


Figure 5.7. *Diagram of ribbon mic.*

and it stuck as the name for this type of mic. A capacitor stores an electrical charge. In a condenser mic (Fig. 5.8) a charge is applied to the back plate; as the diaphragm vibrates, it changes the distance between itself and the back plate and changes the amount of charge held by the back plate.

Condenser microphones often need a separate power supply to place a charge on the back plate. Some more modern condenser microphones draw a charge from the console, a "phantom" power supply.

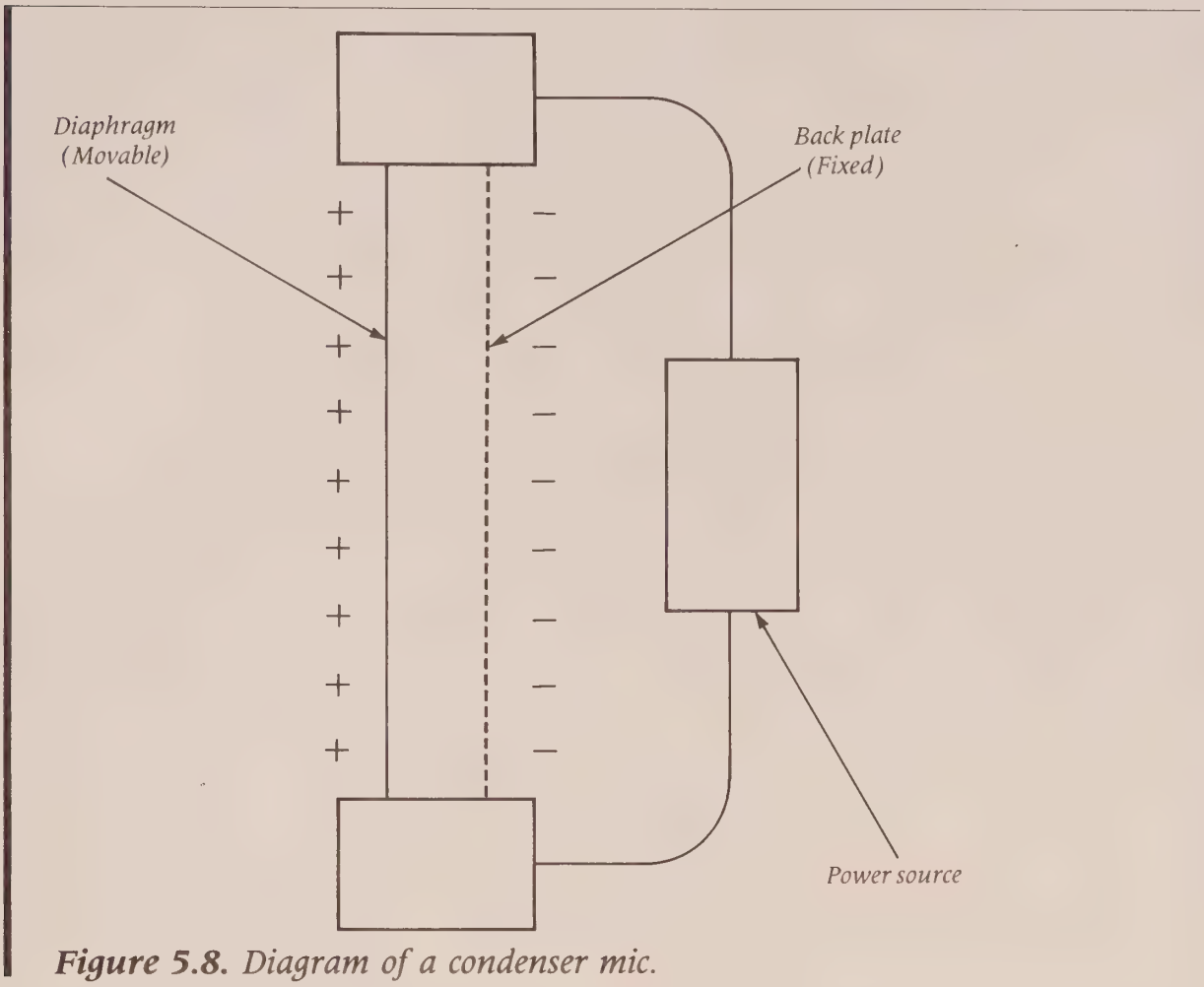


Figure 5.8. *Diagram of a condenser mic.*

Pickup (polar) patterns of the microphone

The electronics of a mic also affect the pattern in which it picks up sounds. These patterns are called **pickup patterns,** or **polar patterns,** and they have a major effect on how a particular mic is used. Some mics pick up sounds from all directions, or from the front and back and not the sides, or from the front only. The basic pickup patterns are **omnidirectional, bidirectional,** and **cardioid.**

Omnidirectional. An omnidirectional mic picks up sounds equally well from all sides, as pictured in Figure 5.9. To visualize what a polar pattern is, it's helpful to know how one can be drawn. The mic is placed on a stand, pointed toward a speaker, and twisted in a circle (kept parallel to the floor). Then the amplitude of the wave it picked up at various poles is measured. As shown in Figure 5.9, the amplitude is as great at 90 degrees as at 0 degrees (0 being where the mic faces dead-on to the speaker). Remember, the pickup pattern is a *three-dimensional* representation, so mics hear sound from above and below, too. Although we generally assume that the omnidirectional mic picks up sound equally well from all directions, there is a small glitch at 180 degrees, simply because the mass of the microphone gets in the way of the sound waves.

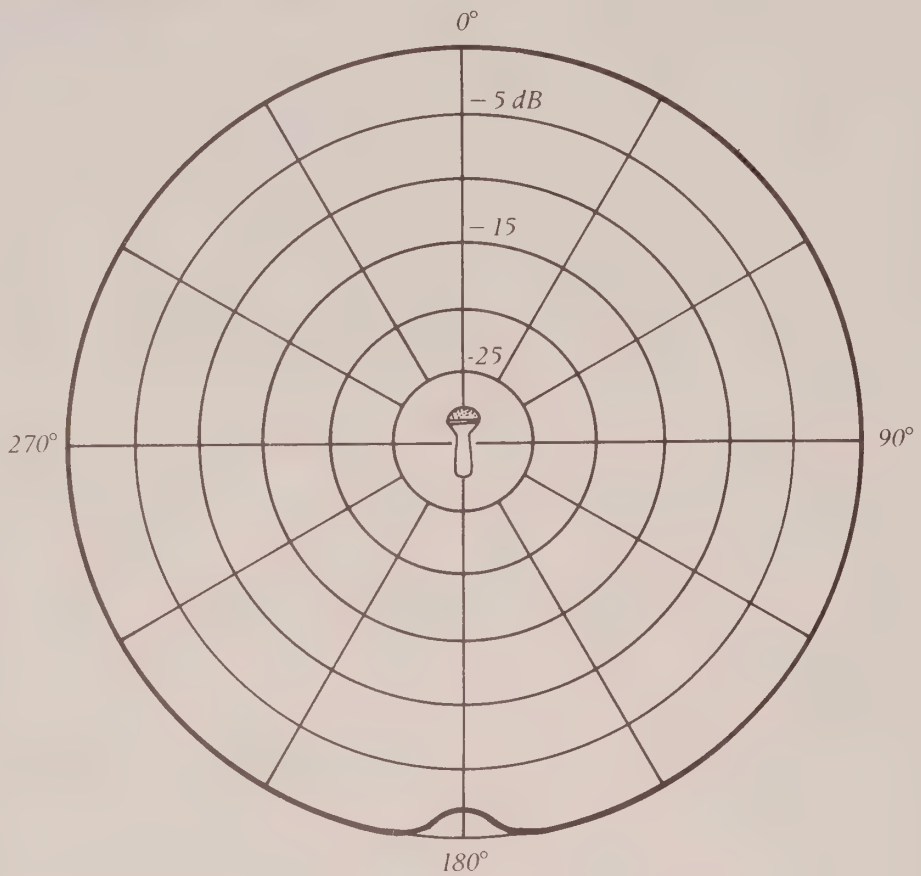


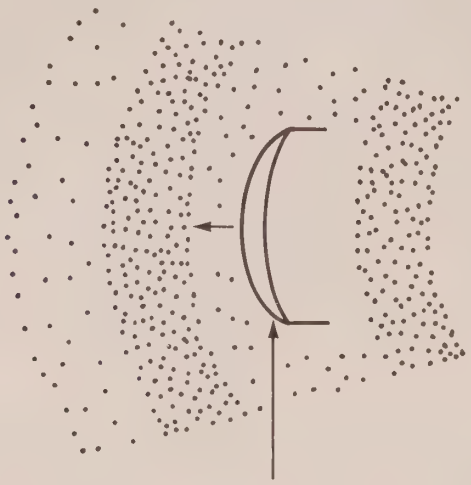
Figure 5.9. *An omnidirectional pickup pattern.*

The reason, incidentally, that an omnidirectional mic can be equally sensitive to sounds from all directions is related to the fact that sound is a series of rarefactions and compressions of air molecules. Since the back of the microphone is closed to air, the diaphragm is pulled out by the rarefactions and pushed in by the compressions, regardless of the direction of the sound. The importance of this concept, illustrated in Figure 5.10, will become apparent shortly.

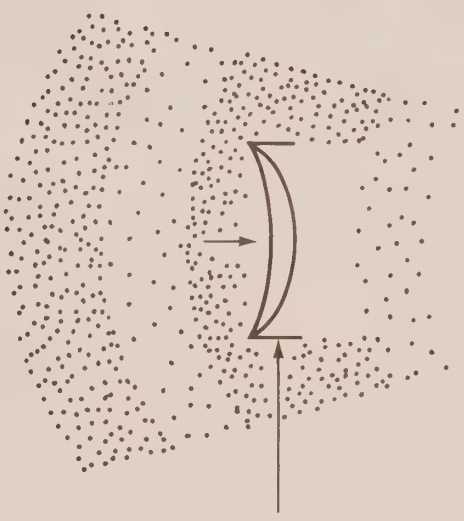
Bidirectional. The bidirectional mic accepts sound from the front and rear, and rejects it from the sides. Note the polar pattern in Figure 5.11. Notice, too, that the concentric rings indicate sound level in decibels; when the polar pattern dips toward the center of the circle, it's declining by the number of decibels indicated on the concentric rings. The bidirectional pattern is typical of ribbon mics which have the ribbon open to air on both sides.

Cardioid. Cardioid means "heart shaped," as in Figure 5.12. You can visualize this pattern in three dimensions by imagining that the mic is the stem of a gigantic apple.

A microphone with a cardioid pattern achieves this directionality by means of holes or "ports" in the back of the mic. Sound entering these ports is routed through an acoustic network (Fig. 5.13) that causes the mic to cancel



Diaphragm pulled out by rarefactions (low pressure)



Diaphragm pushed in by compressions (high presssure)

Figure 5.10. *Reaction of a mic's diaphragm to sound. Note that it makes little difference to the diaphragm which way the sound is coming from.*

sound coming from the rear. In physics terms, the sound waves from the rear are *out of phase* with sound waves entering the front of the mic (Fig. 5.14). That is, when the waves are combined, the high points will combine with the low points and the low points will combine with the high, thus canceling each other out. The concept of **phase** is important in advanced radio production.

The cardioid pattern is a function of sound wave cancellation because of porting in the mic and is not a result of the particular electronic element in the mic. Mics with a cardioid pattern can have moving coil, ribbon, or condenser elements. Mics with an omnidirectional pattern usually have a moving coil element, and occasionally a condenser.

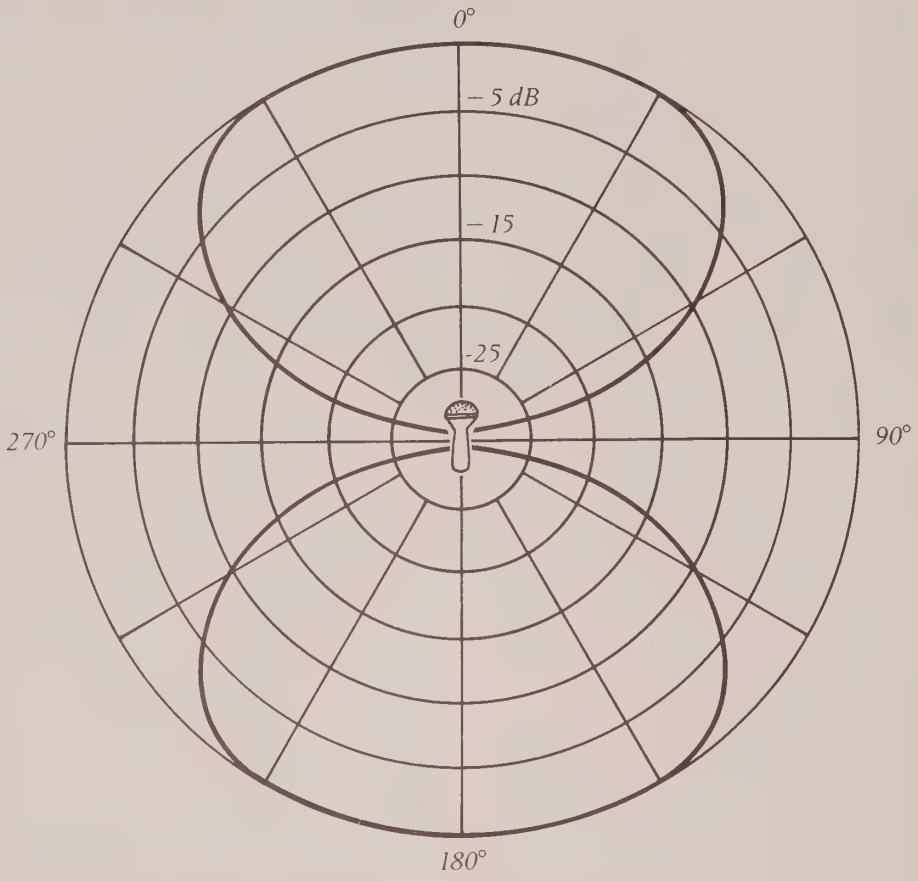


Figure 5.11. *A bidirectional polar pattern.*

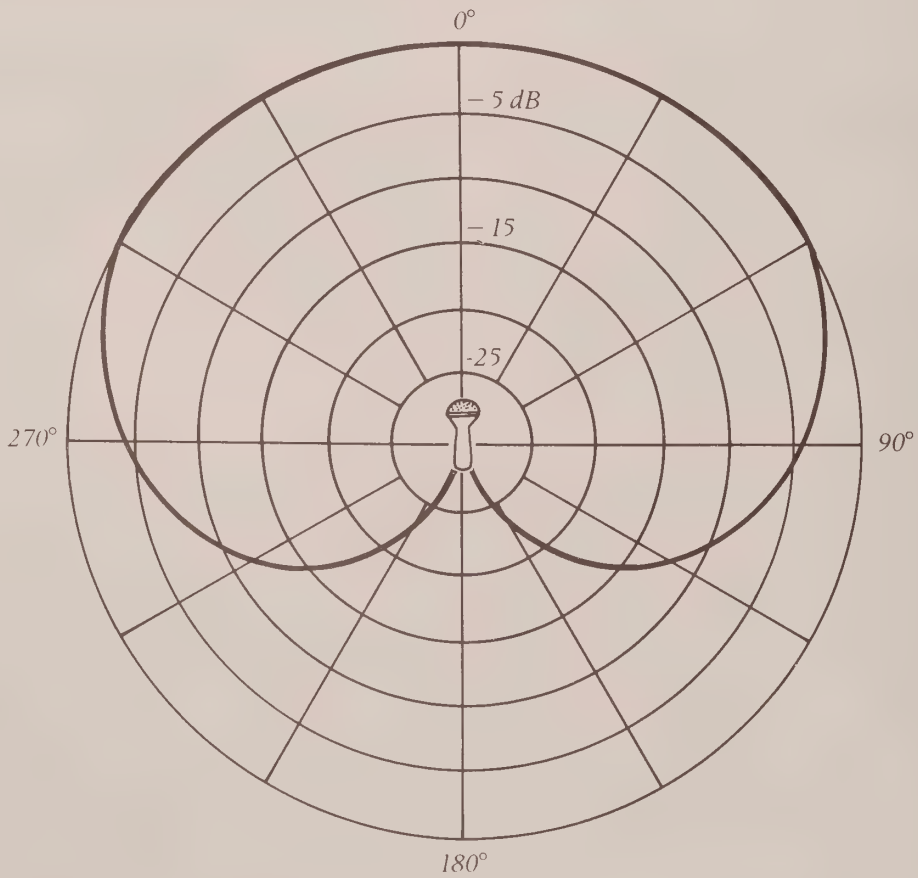


Figure 5.12. *A cardioid polar pattern.*

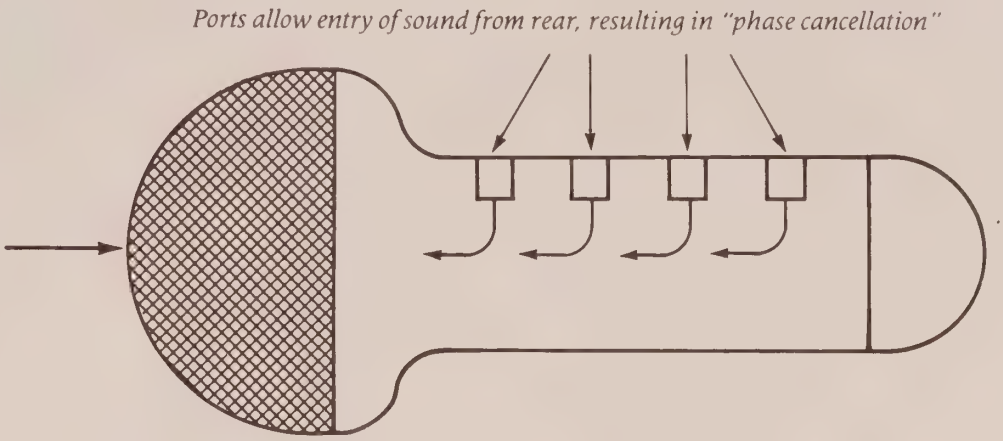


Figure 5.13. *A simplified diagram of ports in a mic. The ports let sound enter from the rear and, in effect, cancel itself out.*

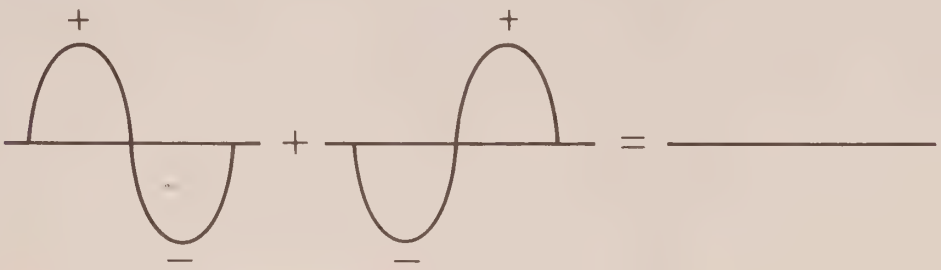


Figure 5.14. *Phase cancellation.*

A special version of the cardioid pattern is the supercardioid pattern (Fig. 5.15), which has a tighter curve in front with a lobe in back. The hypercardioid pattern (Fig. 5.16) has an even narrower front angle and a bigger rear lobe. Supercardioid and hypercardioid patterns, also called **unidirectional,** are generally used for highly directional applications on booms, such as in television studio work, when it is important to reject unwanted noises.

Frequency response of microphones

Different mics respond differently to sound frequencies. There are two components of **frequency response:** *range* and *shape.*

Range. Range simply means the amount of the frequency spectrum a mic can hear. Good mics can hear frequencies all the way up to 20,000 Hz, which is beyond the range of most normal human ears. A good mic can also hear all sounds equally well, plus or minus about 5 dB. Figure 5.17 is a graph of frequency response. How far such a graph extends to the right shows how high a frequency the mic can pick up. The graph also indicates how well the mic reproduces frequencies: the higher the line, the better the mic reproduces the frequency indicated on the bottom line of the graph. This characteristic of the response curve is known as shape.

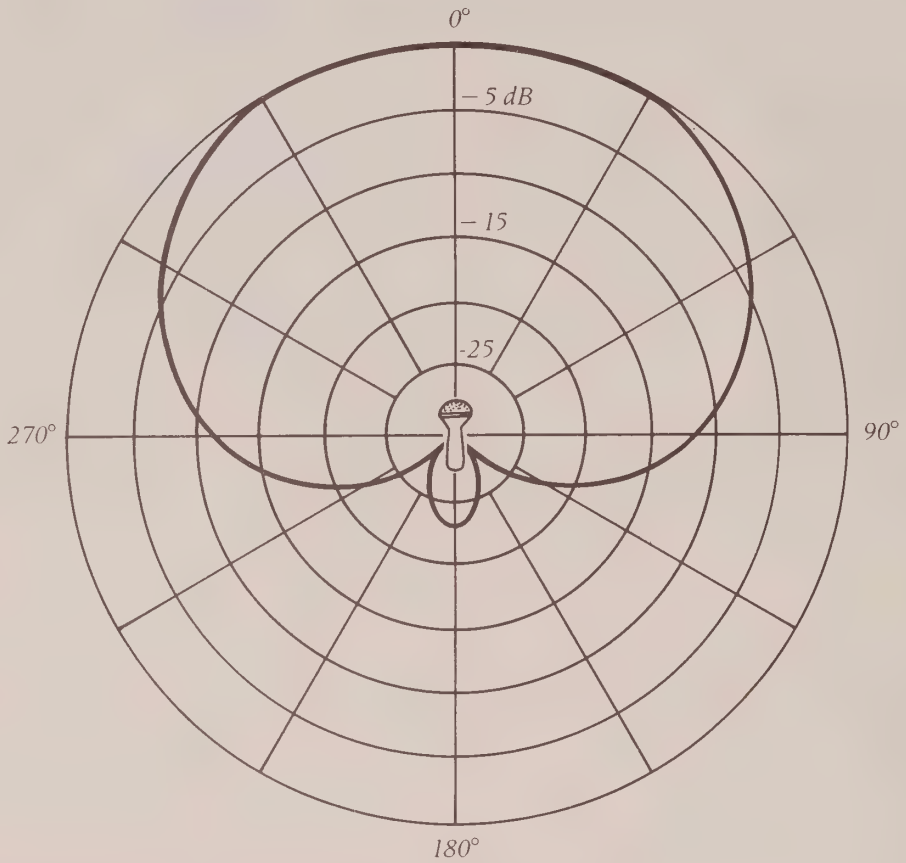


Figure 5.15. *A supercardioid polar pattern.*

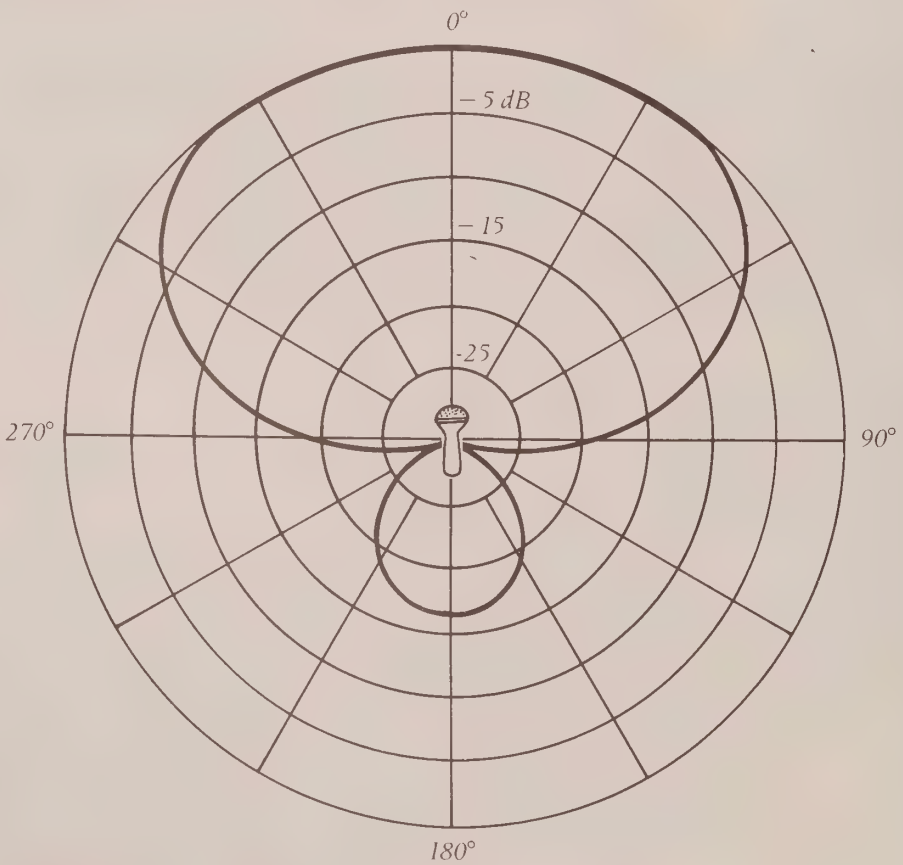


Figure 5.16. *A hypercardioid polar pattern.*

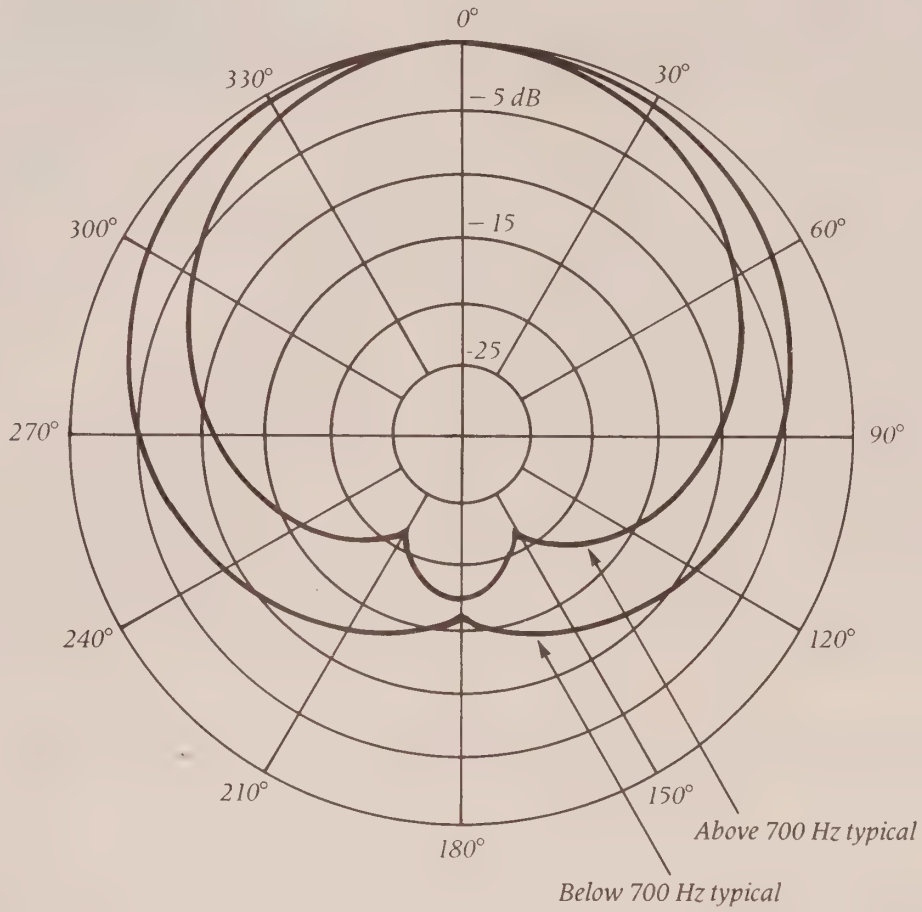


Figure 5.17. *The graph of a polar pattern supplied by a microphone manufacturer. Scale: 5 dB per division. (Reproduced with permission of Electro-Voice, Inc., Buchanan, Mich.)*

Shape. See how the mic response pattern in Figure 5.18 has a "bump" in the upper frequencies? This is because the mic, by its nature, gives a boost to those frequencies; a mic like this would be useful for speech, since it gives powerful reproduction of the frequencies that lend intelligibility to speech. Such modifications of frequencies also add to the coloration of sound, just as a mic lends a sound a certain quality or timbre.

Often, recording engineers miking music setups will want a mic with a "flat" response—a mic that is capable of responding equally well to all frequencies in the whole audio spectrum. The term *high fidelity* applies well to this characteristic, since it means "high accuracy." A mic that responds equally well to all frequencies is high in fidelity, and the term also applies to speakers, amplifiers, and so forth.

Cardioid mics tend to boost bass (lower) frequencies as the sound source moves closer to the mic; this is known as a *proximity effect.* That's why some announcers who want a deeper sound move in very close to mics with a cardioid pickup pattern.

What does all this mean to you? By understanding the polar patterns of

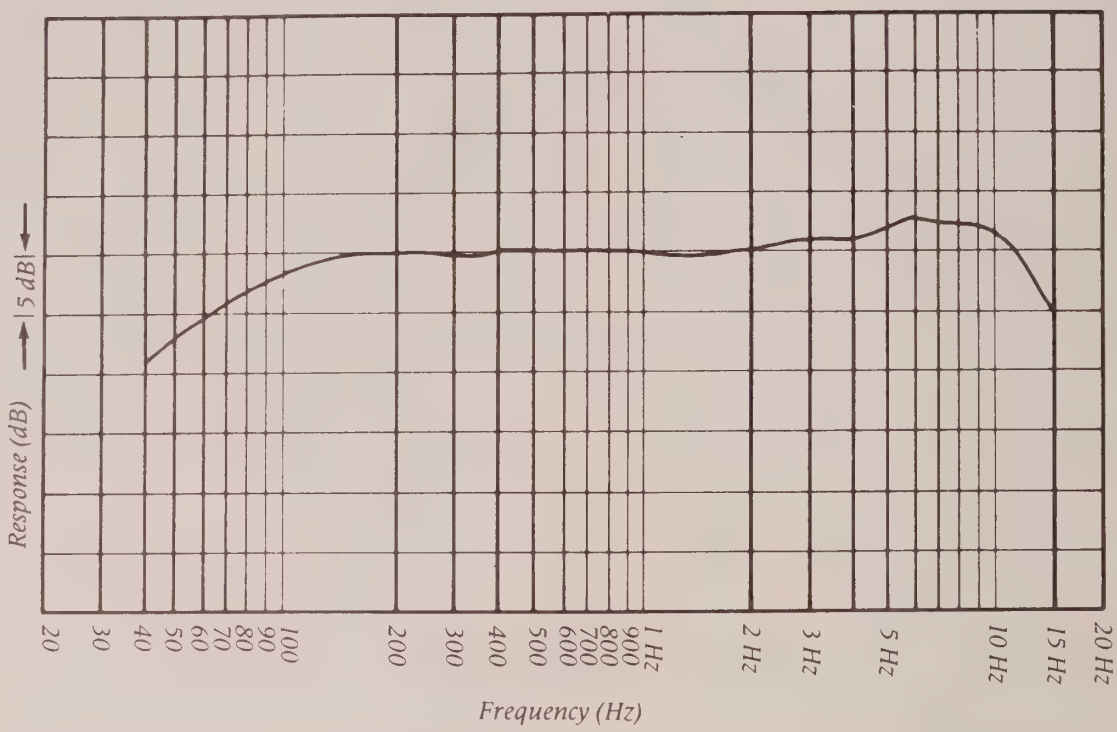


Figure 5.18. *A graph of a mic response. (Reproduced with permission of Electro-Voice, Inc., Buchanan, Mich.)*

mics, you'll be able to avoid various problems. For example, a cardioid mic will reject sounds from the rear and will be useful for console operations, where you do not want to broadcast the clicking of switches and rustling of papers. An omnidirectional mic might be the proper choice for on-the-street news interviews, where you want to pick up surrounding noise to lend authenticity.

In some cases, a producer might opt for a mic that boosts specific frequencies because, for instance, the high frequencies in speech need a boost for intelligibility. Also, some mics, such as the RCA 77DX and some Neumanns, have variable frequency responses and polar patterns; the varying responses are achieved by adjusting switches on the body of the mic.

Review of microphone workings

Microphones are transducers, and they change the motional energy of sound in the air to electrical energy by an electronic element. There are three elements common in radio use: moving coil, ribbon, and condenser.

Some microphones are more sensitive to sounds coming from certain directions. A visual indication of this property is called a polar pattern. The most common polar patterns in mics for radio use are omnidirectional, bidirectional, and cardioid.

Frequency response varies from mic to mic. Because some mics have a broader range than others, they can reproduce a wide range of frequencies. Also, some mics tend to boost certain frequency ranges.

PHYSICAL TYPES OF MICROPHONE

We're using a somewhat imprecise term when we speak of "microphone physical type"; it's not a standard term in the industry. It is, however, a good way to classify mics by their intended use. Some of these uses may not usually apply to radio, but we'll show some examples anyway.

Hand-held. Mics meant for hand-held use are, of course, small enough to be easily handled. Other characteristics of a mic that can be held in one hand include durability and the ability to reject handling noise. The Electro-Voice 635A (Fig. 5.19) is one of the most commonly used hand-held mics in broadcasting.

Studio, mounted. Mics intended for studio use are usually mounted on a stand or boom. They are generally larger than hand-held mics, and more sensitive. The Neumann U-87 (Fig. 5.20) would be very difficult to use in a hand-held situation not only because of its shape but because this fine mic is so sensitive that it would pick up every bit of handling noise. Some mics, which are small enough and provide high-quality sound reproduction, can be used in studio and hand-held situations.

Headset. These mics (Fig. 5.21) offer hands-free operation and are useful in radio for such tasks as sports play-by-play. They also work well for rejecting noise surrounding the announcer.

Lavalier. The lavalier mic hangs from a string or is clipped to a performer's clothing (Fig. 5.22). Lavaliers have very little application to radio, but are very common in television.

Shotgun. These mics are used for long-range pickup (Fig. 5.23) in television and film; **shotguns** have very little use in radio.

We can conclude this discussion of mic type by saying that in radio production you will be using studio and hand-held mics primarily. The way in which you'll choose mics depends not only on type, but on all the factors discussed so far in this chapter.

Some condenser mics allow you to change the pickup capsules. These are called system mics because you can change the capsule opening and change the use of the mic from a shotgun to a studio type, or even hand-held. This allows a small station to buy one very good microphone system and adapt it to various applications. Unfortunately, most of these condenser mic systems require external or phantom power supplies, and this could detract from their usefulness in certain situations.

Figure 5.19. *The Electro-Voice 635A, an excellent hand-held mic.*

Figure 5.20. *Neumann U-87 (left) shown here with similar model U-89 (right). (Photo courtesy of Gotham Audio Corporation, New York City.)*

Figure 5.21. *This headset mic is commonly used for sports broadcasts and other occasions when mic stands would clutter the workspace. (Photo courtesy of Telex Communications, Inc., Minneapolis, Minn.)*

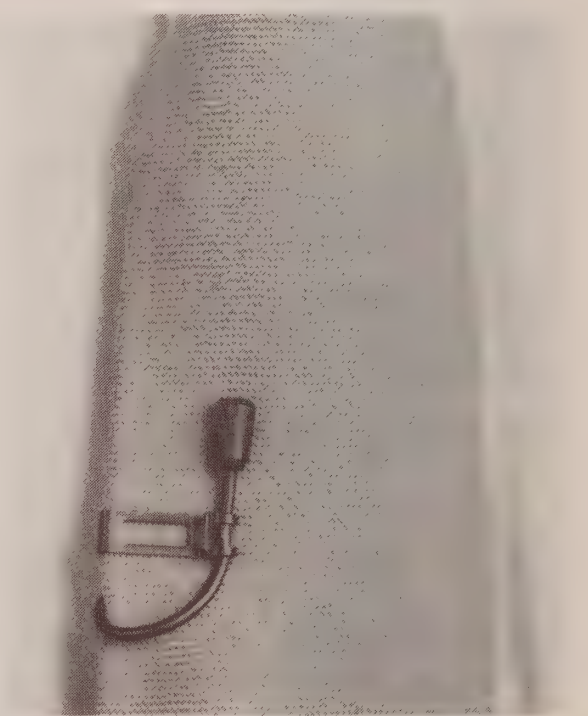


Figure 5.22. *Sennheiser MKE 2 mic has few applications for radio. (Photo courtesy of Sennheiser Electronic Corporation, New York City.)*

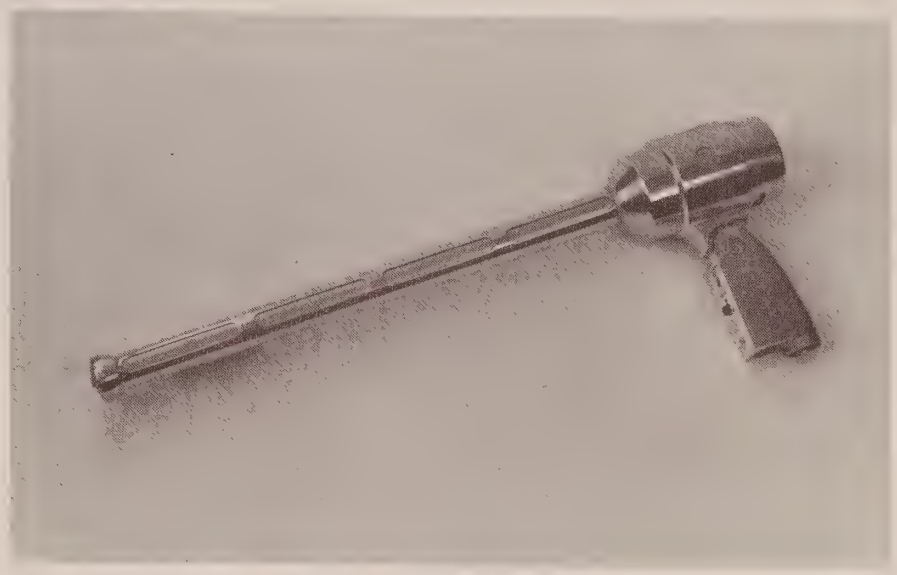


Figure 5.23. *A commonly used shotgun microphone.*

Review of physical types

The most common mics found in radio are hand-held and studio; sometimes headset mics are used for sports applications. There is some overlap: Some mics can be used for studio or hand-held use, and the condenser mics called system mics allow you to change the pickup capsule.

MICROPHONE SELECTION AND USE

As mentioned earlier, you may not always have much to say when it comes to selecting mics. You'll use what's available. Even then, however, you'll benefit from a knowledge of mics because you'll better understand how to use the one you're given. When you do have a voice in selection, you'll want to make your choice based on these five factors:

1. Type
2. Polar pattern
3. Element
4. Frequency response
5. Personality

Selection by mic type

This is a pretty self-limiting category, since you'll generally be using hand-held or studio mics, and the choices are obvious. As mentioned, some high-quality mics can be used in either application, but beware of using a cardioid mic with many ports in the stem and back in hand-held situations. You'll

be changing the pickup pattern of the mic by covering the ports with your hand.

Changing the pickup pattern in this manner sometimes happens when pop singers cup a mic too tightly and inadvertently cause feedback: Cutting off the ports changes the cardioid pattern to an omnidirectional pattern and thus picks up the sound from the loudspeakers. Feedback, in this case, happens when sound comes out of a speaker, is picked up by the mic and amplified by the console, is fed through the speaker, picked up and amplified again, and so on—until the sound is amplified into a loud squeal.

Selection by pickup pattern

A news reporter doing a great deal of hand-held interviewing will probably find an omnidirectional pattern much more convenient, since the mic won't have to be moved around so much to keep more than one speaker within the pickup pattern (referred to as being *on mic*). In studio applications, mics with a cardioid pattern are usually favored because they cancel out extraneous noise. A two-person studio interview, with guest and moderator facing each other, can be accomplished quite nicely by a bidirectional mic.

Selection by element

Certain elements do various tasks better than others (Table 5.1).

Selection by frequency response

There's usually neither the opportunity nor the need to consult a frequency response chart for the intimate details of a mic's sound reproduction. Should you wish to examine a frequency response chart, though, you'll generally find one packed in the box the mic came in. In fact, quality mics come with a chart individually prepared for the buyer. You don't have to read a chart every time you want to pick out a mic. What you do want is some general knowledge about range and curve shape.

Range. An extremely high-quality mic, with response as high as 20,000 Hz, will be useful in music recording because of its "wide" response.

Curve shape. A mic with a bump in the response curve up around the consonant frequencies will make speech more understandable. But you don't need that "speech bump" in a mic intended purely for music recording.

Also, some mics have what's called a bass roll-off to compensate for the proximity effect. In other words, they de-emphasize the bass. The producer who knows that the mic will be used for close-in speech work and wants to negate the proximity effect activates the base roll-off control on the mic.

More advanced production may call for a detailed examination of fre-

Table 5.1

Element	Advantages	Disadvantages
Moving coil	Relatively inexpensive. Performs well in difficult sound conditions, such as wind. Usually very durable.	Since the diaphragm has to move a lot of mass, it can't vibrate as quickly as diaphragms on many condenser models or some ribbons. This translates to less response in high frequencies.
Ribbon	Very good high frequency response in many cases. Coloration of sound perceived by many announcers as "warm" and "rich" tones. Excellent sensitivity.	Delicate and easily damaged, especially by wind and severe noise overload. Sensitive to **popping** of such speech sounds as *b* and *p*.
Condenser	The very high-quality condensers have extended high-frequency response, along with what are perceived as "bright" and "crisp" highs. Versatility, including, in some cases, the ability to make extensive changes in polar patterns and frequency responses; in some condenser mics, the entire element can be unscrewed and replaced with another. Reasonable durability to mechanical shock (certainly better than ribbon mics).	Susceptibility to moisture-related damage. Expensive. Somewhat inconvenient at times because of the need for a separate power supply.

quency response, but for most purposes it's enough to know whether a mic has a wide—or very wide—frequency response, whether it emphasizes certain frequencies or has a flat curve, and whether it has adjustable responses.

Selection by personality

The personality of a mic is a quality that can be difficult to define, but it's a factor nonetheless.

Every announcer develops a fondness for a particular mic, a mic that has certain characteristics that appeal to the individual. Some announcers like ribbon mics because they add warmth and richness. News reporters often favor a particular moving coil mic because of its ruggedness and dependability. Recording engineers frequently have high praise for a particular condenser mic that delivers crisp highs when used to record piano music. On the other hand, certain mics may seem temperamental and fall into an announcer's disfavor. Some announcers don't like ribbon mics because of problems with popping *p*'s and *b*'s. When it comes right down to it, choosing a mic because of its personality is just as valid as selecting one for any other reason.

Adding up selection factors

Once again, you might not be in a position to choose mics for particular tasks. But we emphasize that knowing the selection factors may be very valuable in proper use of the mic and may someday pay off when you need a mic to deal with a particularly difficult situation.

Although we've tried to avoid the catalog approach to presenting information on microphones, Table 5.2 assembles some of the mics most commonly used in radio production and includes some comments on microphone type, polar pattern, element, frequency response, and personality.

Notes on microphone use

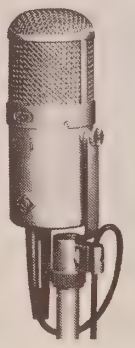
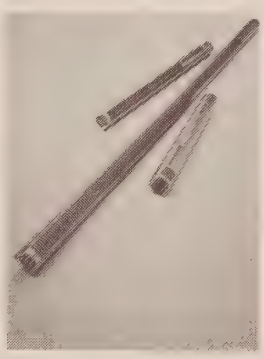
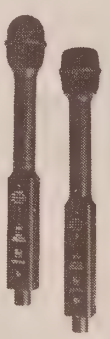
Mic use can be an extremely simple or an extraordinarily complex category, depending on the situation. Speaking into a studio mic is no more complicated than being sure that you're within the pickup pattern (which will be obvious from listening through the headphones) and not being too close or too far away.

The proper distance for speaking into a studio or hand-held mic will vary from about 6 to 12 inches, although there's no set rule. Actually, the only hard and fast guideline is: Work at a reasonable distance, which sounds correct for a particular speaker and a particular mic.

Setting up several mics in a studio is more complicated. The first thing a producer has to know in this case is how to plug the mics in. Figure 5.24 shows the connectors you will use to feed the mic cable into a studio wall outlet, which in turn will be fed (through existing wiring) into a console. The plugs shown, XLRs, are the most common, although other types may be found in older studios and in field production.

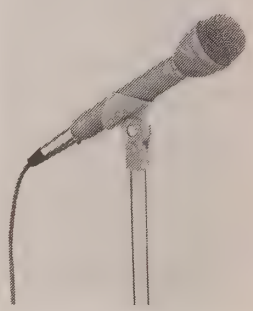
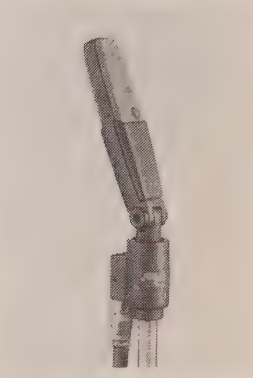
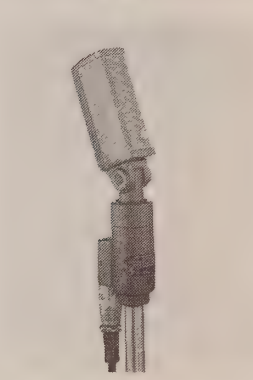
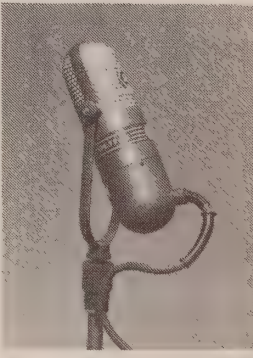
Usually mics are placed on floor stands or table stands. After the mics have been mounted, the next responsibility of the producer in the studio is

Table 5.2 Microphone Chart

Microphone	Pattern	Description	
Neumann U-47	Condenser	Cardioid pickup pattern; excellent voice mic; flat response; warm sound; **blast filter;** bass roll-off	 Gotham Audio Corp.
Sony C-37P	Condenser	Omnidirectional/cardioid; four adjustments for bass roll-off; good for voice pickup and musical instruments	Sony Corp. of Am.
Sennheiser 416 (middle), with 417 and 418	Condenser	Supercardioid; usually boom mounted; flat response; eliminates unwanted ambient sound; excellent for remotes, where directionality is desired	 Sennheiser Electronic Corp.
Electro-Voice RE-30, RE-34	Condenser	RE-30 is omnidirectional, RE-34 is cardioid; power supplied by 9-volt battery or phantom power supply; feeds line level or mic level signal; graphite in handle improves comfort in cold conditions	 Electro-Voice, Inc.
Electro-Voice RE-18	Moving coil	Supercardioid; excellent shock protection makes this a good choice for hand-held use; blast filter; bass boost with close use	Electro-Voice, Inc.

(*continued*)

Table 5.2 Microphone Chart

Microphone	Pattern	Description	
Electro-Voice RE-50	Moving coil	Omnidirectional; similar to popular 635A; shock resistant; excellent all-purpose mic; internal wind screen; blast filter; rugged	 Electro-Voice, Inc.
Shure SM-58	Moving coil	Cardioid; good studio mic; rugged; **pop filter**	Shure Brothers, Inc.
Shure 300	Ribbon	Bidirectional; warm sound; pop prone; very good voice mic	 Shure Brothers, Inc.
Shure SM 33	Ribbon	Cardioid; mellow sound, bass enhanced with proximity; excellent voice mic; favorite of many announcers	 Shure Brothers, Inc.
RCA 77DX	Ribbon	Omni-, bi-, or unidirectional (switch selector); classic mic of radio's golden age; switchable bass response; delicate; very fine mic for voice and many musical instruments	

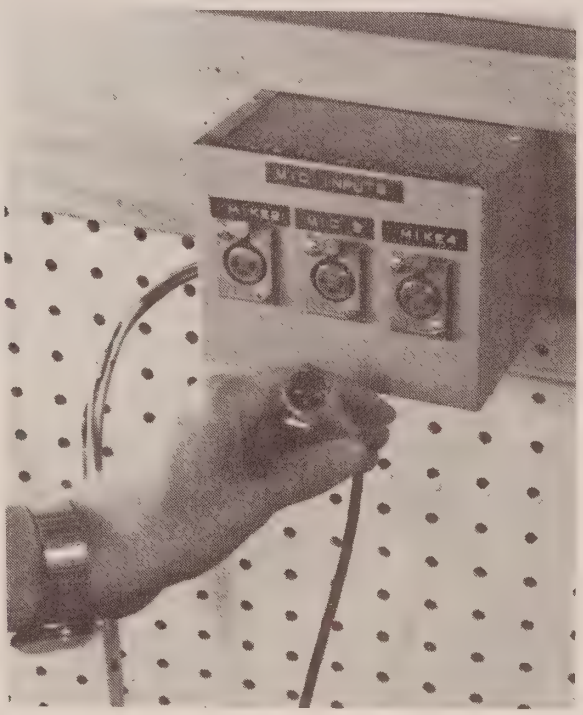


Figure 5.24. *These connectors are called XLR connectors. The type being held in the hand is a male. The receptacle is a female. They snap together easily.*

to place them properly. This task, of course, will vary with the situation. A news interview program may require placement of only one or two mics; a music recording session could require the placement of 20 mics—with three of them placed on the drum alone!

Because of the wide variety of situations, we're going to address mic placement separately in appropriate chapters. (Placement of mics for news interview shows is dealt with in the chapter on news and public affairs; the section on music recording in the advanced radio production chapter explains mic placement for music, etc.)

APPLICATIONS

Situation 1/The Problem. The producer of a 5 o'clock radio program has a touchy problem: The newscaster, Paul Prince, pops his *p*'s badly. What's worse, the station is in Pittsburgh, and the name of the show is Public Radio Profiles. Paul sounds terrible when he gives the station identification and introduces himself and the show.

One possible solution. Short of speech therapy for Paul, the best solution is to exchange the ribbon microphone for a good-quality moving coil mic, which is exactly what the producer did.

Situation 2/The Problem. The sports director of a small station started to do basketball play-by-play from the gym of the local high school. But listeners complained that at times they had trouble understanding him because of the crowd noise and the related fact that his voice sounded "muddy." The sports director surmised that the omnidirectional mic he had mounted on a table stand just wasn't the right unit for the job.

One possible solution. Although he didn't have a specialized headset mic, the sports director did have access to a microphone with a cardioid pickup pattern, a durable moving coil element, and a nice "speech bump" in the response curve.

Exercises

1. Put a microphone on a stand and set up the console to record its output. Have someone walk around the mic in a circle, while counting or talking. Do this with three different mics: one with an omnidirectional pattern, a bidirectional pattern, and a cardioid pattern. Play back the tape and notice the difference in sound pickup.

   Now, using the mic with the cardioid pickup pattern, record some copy read 16 inches from the mic (speaking directly into it) and then 6 inches from the mic. Notice the proximity effect. If the mic has a bass roll-off switch, experiment with using it and gauge the effect on the sound.

2. Set up as many different mics as you have available. Have someone read 30 seconds or so of copy into each mic and record it. (Make sure that person identifies each mic: "I'm reading into the RCA 77DX, 'Four score and seven years ago. . . '."

   Play back the tape and write down (or discuss) your impressions of each. Give details on why you like or don't like each mic, and what characteristics each has. Make a diligent effort to come up with details. Characteristics of mics aren't always blatantly obvious, and it takes close attention to recognize them.

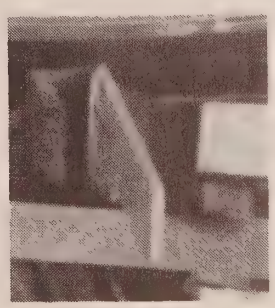
3. Choose mics for the following applications. You can choose mics from those illustrated in this chapter, or just list the selection factors you'd want for the particular application. For example, a mic that will be used by a speaker who tends to work very close to the mic and has a bassy, overpowering voice probably should not be a ribbon. A moving coil or a

condenser would be a better choice. The mic should have a bass roll-off control, and it should have a personality that emphasizes brightness and clarity.

Now, try the same reasoning with the following situations. There really aren't any right or wrong answers; most are judgment calls.

- A speaker with a weak, high, breathy voice
- Locker room interviews
- Amateur speakers (guests on an interview show)
- An announcer who's doing a commercial for a classy restaurant
- A screaming disc jockey

PART TWO
THE TECHNIQUES



6
Splicing And Dubbing

The next three chapters deal with the mechanics of operating radio production equipment and with the art known as editing—the process of rearranging, correcting, and assembling the product into a finished whole.

"Production," as we've noticed, is something of a nebulous term. Many of us tend to think of radio production as the process of putting together a commercial or assembling a news show.

But in truth any manipulation of sound constitutes production:

- Cutting a small piece out of a long interview for airplay during a newscast is production.
- Making a 60-second commercial is production.
- Running a board while doing a combo operation is production, too—and a very important type of production at that, since the combo operator reflects the overall sound of the station.

We're going to divide the basic production chapters along the lines of the three examples above. This chapter spells out the the basic mechanics of manipulating sound physically and electronically, and shows some of the patterns this manipulation takes. Chapter 7 focuses on some of the techniques specific to working in the studio and producing segments to be played back on air at a later date, such as commercials and public service announcements. Chapter 8 deals with the techniques used in on-air work.

There is, of course, quite a bit of overlap among the techniques, but we think you'll find this a logical way to go about exploring the nuts and bolts of radio production. Chapter 8 expands on the foregoing ideas and moves on into the subtleties of using radio production techniques to reinforce a message and create a particular effect, which is the real goal of sitting down at the console in the first place.

THE BASICS OF SPLICING AND DUBBING

The processes of splicing, dubbing, and editing are the most basic ways in which a radio producer manipulates sound. In **splicing** the tape is physically cut apart and taped back together again. **Dubbing** means transferring sound from source to source electronically, instead of snipping and cutting. **Editing** is a combination of the two, and more: It is the process of rearranging, correcting, and assembling a finished product. "Editing" is a general term, and the process is something you'll pick up in the course of doing different kinds of production.

Some people use the words "splicing" and "dubbing" in a slightly different way, considering splicing to be a simple, physical repair, whereas dubbing involves making a copy of a tape. To acknowledge this distinction, they use the terms "physical editing" and "electronic editing" to express the functions discussed above. We'll stick to "splicing" and "dubbing" as defined at the opening of this section, but be aware that the terminology can vary.

Splicing and dubbing require mastering some specific techniques before those physical skills are used in the editing process.

SPLICING

The most common reason for cutting a tape and sticking it back together again is to eliminate a portion of what was recorded. Also, a producer splices to rearrange portions of a tape into a more logical sequence, or simply to shorten what has been recorded. Proficiency at splicing is helpful because it allows you to fix broken tapes quickly. Tape breaks occur quite frequently, and if you're pulling an airshift you may have to put a tape back together in a hurry.

The steps in splicing are marking the first edit point, marking the second edit point, cutting the tape, and making the splice. Let's take them in order.

Marking the first edit point

Suppose you have just completed an interview with the mayor, who has told you about an important development. You want to use a brief segment of the interview for an upcoming newscast. The recorded interview goes like this:

MAYOR: We have decided to go ahead with construction of a new cross-town expressway from the junction of Interstate 440 to . . . uh, what's

the name of that street? . . . (papers shuffle) . . . oh yeah, Commercial Street, where there will be a major interchange.

For reasons of courtesy and simply to have a professional-sounding newscast, we don't want to include the mayor's momentary lapse. The task at hand, then, is to physically cut out the portion of the reel-to-reel tape where the mayor stumbles.

Since the statement would make much better sense if the blunder was eradicated, the logical place to make the first edit point would be:

MAYOR: We have decided to go ahead with construction of a new cross-town expressway from the junction of Interstate 440 to . . . uh, what's the name of that—

∧
First edit point

The first edit point is where we want to physically cut the tape. To do so, we have to find that point exactly on the tape, which means that we have to mark it as it passes over the play head.

Play the tape until you reach the approximate first edit point, then stop it quickly. Now, rocking the reels as shown in Figure 6.1, manipulate the tape until you've got the play head directly between "to" and "uh." With practice, you'll be able to recognize both words, forward and backward. Remember, if the tape runs at $7\frac{1}{2}$ IPS, a second's pause between the two words will be $7\frac{1}{2}$ inches long, quite enough tape to make an easy cut in the gap.

Next, with a grease pencil, mark the spot where you plan to make the cut, as shown in Figure 6.2. Be very careful not to smear the grease pencil on the head. Just put a precise dot on the back of the tape at the edit point. Grease pencils (also called china-markers) come in a variety of colors, and for editing purposes you'll want to use a light color, such as white or yellow.

Marking the second edit point

Since you want to cut out the part where the mayor gropes for the right street name, you will play the tape past the first edit point (which you've already marked) and find the second edit point.

MAYOR: —what's the name of that street? . . . (papers shuffle) . . . oh yeah, Commerical Street, where there will be a major interchange.

∧
Second edit point

Repeat the process of rocking the reels until you isolate the gap between the words "yeah" and "Commercial." Mark the second edit point. At this point, you have two marks on the tape: at the beginning of the mayor's

Figure 6.1. *Rocking the reels of a tape recorder.*

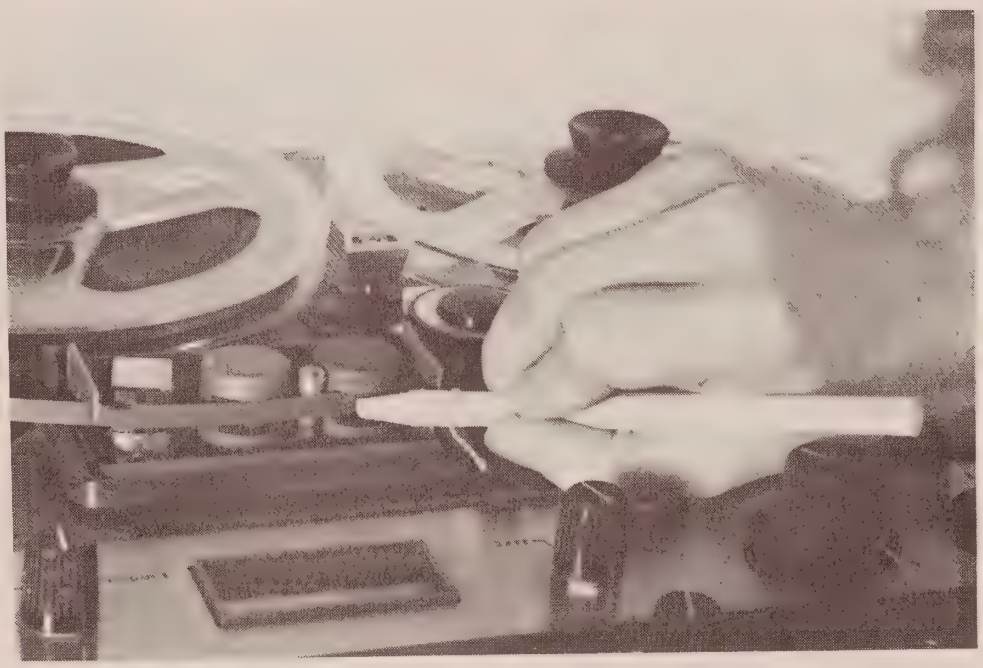


Figure 6.2. *Marking the edit point. Be careful not to get grease pencil on the head.*

blunder and at the end. Now that you've marked the tape, you can cut out and throw away the italicized segment of the interview below:

MAYOR: We have decided to go ahead with construction of a new cross-town expressway from the junction of Interstate 440 to . . . *uh, what's the name of that street? . . . (papers shuffle) . . . oh yeah,* Commercial Street, where there will be a major interchange.

Cutting the tape

You're ready to cut the offending section out. To do this, you will use an **editing block** (Fig. 6.3), which has a lip that holds the tape lightly but securely in the channel, and two grooves for guiding the razor blade. To prepare to make the cut, rewind the tape to the first edit point. Then, using your hands to turn the reels, spool out the tape until you have a good length to work with (Fig. 6.4). Bring the tape down and place it into the channel of the editing block (Fig. 6.5). Position the first edit point in line with the 45-degree groove (Fig. 6.6). You'll want to use the 45-degree groove in almost all editing applications, because the angled cut eliminates much of the magnetic popping noise that can result from a vertical cutting and joining. The vertical groove is useful primarily in extremely tight edits.

Sweep the razor blade through the groove (Fig. 6.7). Don't chop down—all you'll get is a mangled tape. Remove the unwanted tape from the channel of the edit block and thread the tape from the supply reel back through the tape guides and between the capstan and drive wheel. By putting the tape recorder in play, you can spill off the part of the tape you don't want (Fig. 6.8). Spill off the tape until it reaches the second edit point. You can also simply pull the tape by hand (Fig. 6.9) until you locate the second edit point.

Once you've located the second edit point, repeat the cutting procedure. You can discard the piece of tape that's been cut off, but it's wise to save it at least momentarily, in case you've made a mistake in the cutting process and have to try to patch things up. Fixing such a mistake, however, can be extremely difficult or even impossible.

Making the splice

The final step is to stick the two ends of the tape together. This can be done with splicing tape as shown in Figure 6.10 or with specially made editing tabs. Try to keep pieces of splicing tape about one-half to three-quarters of an inch long. Too long a piece may result in a noisy edit; too short a piece may not hold.

Now place the first end of the tape (the end you want to join to the piece you've just cut) in the channel (Fig. 6.11). It's wise to move the joint away from the groove where the cut was made, to avoid having a piece of tape sticking down in the groove and causing trouble with the splice. This isn't done by most editors, but it can't hurt and could possibly save a splice.

Butt the ends of the tape together, but don't overlap. Then cut off a half-inch or so of editing tape, place the tape or tab over the joint, as shown in Figure 6.12, and burnish the tape with your fingernail (Fig. 6.13) to secure the edit tab to the tape. Finally, grasp the tape at both sides of the editing

block, as shown in Figure 6.14. Gently snap the tape out of the channel, and give it a little tug to test the security of the splice (Fig. 6.15).

After the splice has been completed, the reels of the tape machine can be manipulated so that the tape is spooled back on the reels. Play the tape back to check the edit. It should sound like this:

MAYOR: We have decided to go ahead with construction of a new cross-town expressway from the junction of Interstate 440 to Commercial Street, where there will be a major interchange.

Playing back the tape will also show whether you've timed the splice correctly. In other words, you will find out whether you left the right amount of space—not too much and not too little—between the words, so that the edit sounds natural. With practice you will gain expertise in the proper pacing of words as you edit.

Two brief cautions: First, razor blades can become magnetized, so it is a good idea to demagnetize them with the bulk eraser before each editing session. Second, always remember that clean heads are essential. Use a swab dipped in alcohol to wipe the heads clean, and be especially careful to remove any marking pencil residue.

Leader tape

Another reason for splicing is to attach **leader tape** (Fig. 6.16). Leader tape doesn't record or play back any information. It's used because it's visible. Leader tape is often used to separate cuts. The tape allows the operator to see where the next cut starts, rather than searching for it and cueing by ear.

Leader tape is also very useful for the start of a tape. For one thing, the start of a tape suffers a lot of wear and tear because it typically spools off the takeup reel and flips around when the tape is rewound. Leader tape protects the recorded portion of the tape from damage. By the way, the technical term for the start of the tape is the *head;* the end of the tape is the *tail.*

A handy feature of leader tape is that most varieties are timed; that is, they have a pattern that visually shows $7\frac{1}{2}$ inches of tape, allowing the producer to tell by looking how much time the leader represents. One other point: You can write on leader tape, so the head of the tape can be labeled.

Review of splicing

Splicing is the process of cutting a tape and sticking it back together again. Splicing is useful for eliminating unwanted portions of a tape, shortening program material, or rearranging material.

The cut is made at a 45-degree angle in an editing block, with a razor

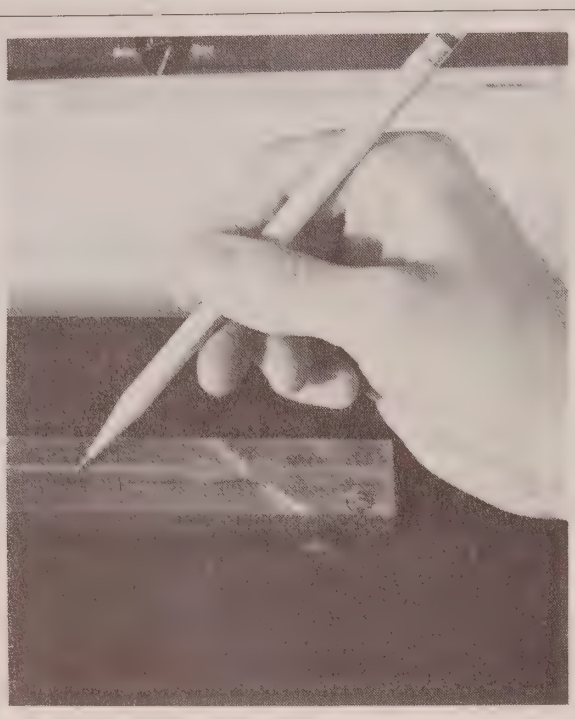


Figure 6.3. *The pencil indicates the groove in the editing block. The groove has a lip that holds the tape.*

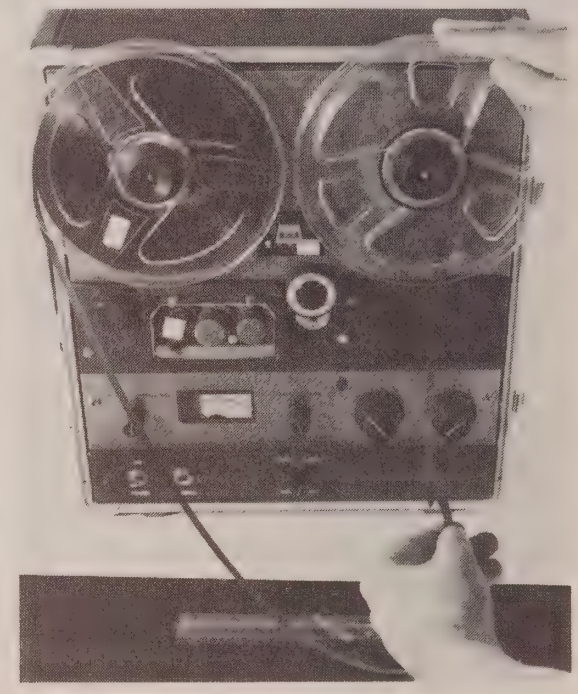


Figure 6.4. *Spooling the tape.*

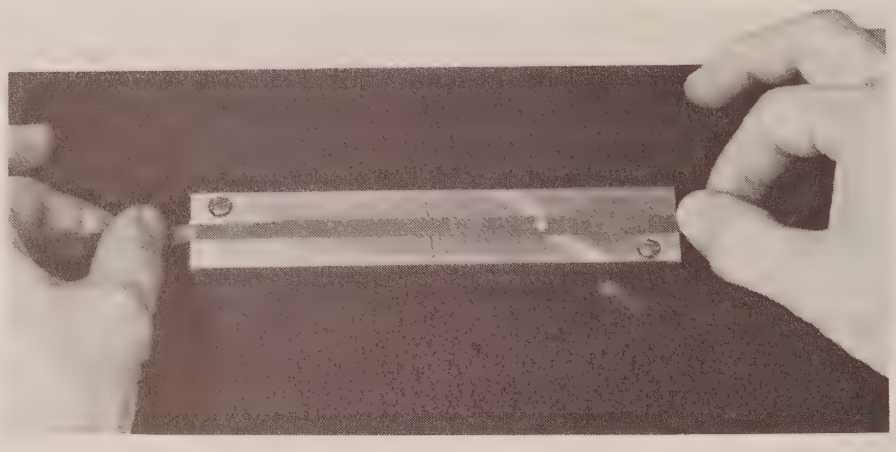


Figure 6.5. *Positioning the tape in the channel with the edit point over the groove.*

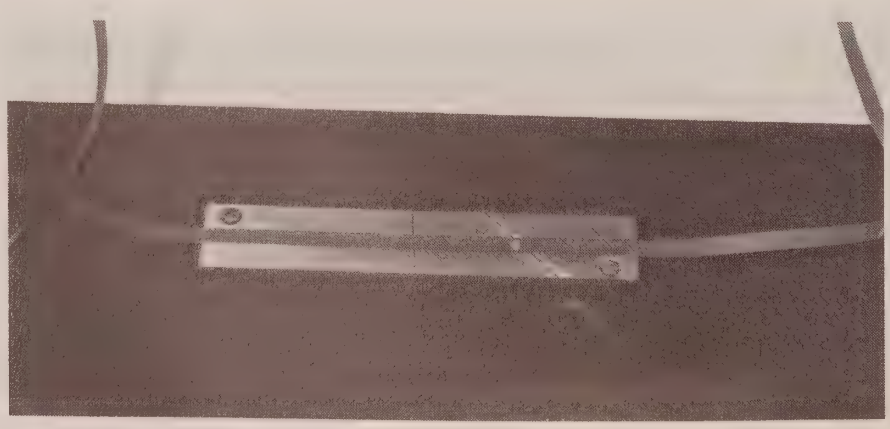


Figure 6.6. *The tape is now locked in the channel with the edit point over the groove.*

Figure 6.7. *Making the cut.*

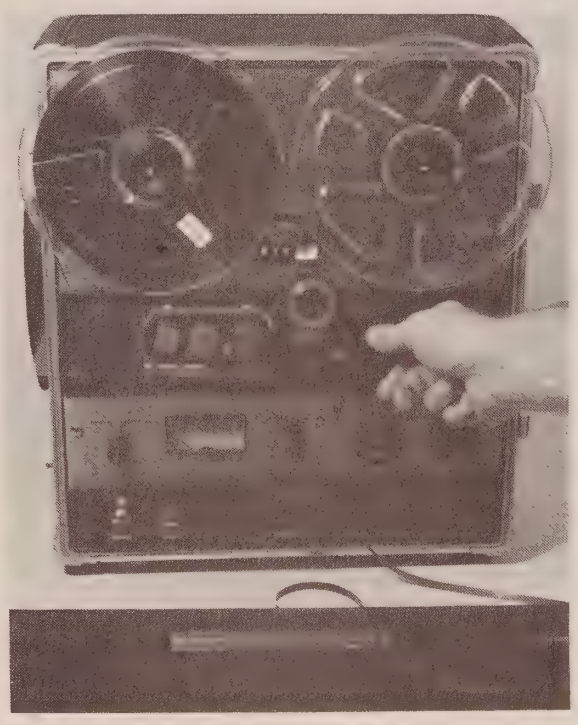


Figure 6.8. *Spilling off tape after making the cut. You can do it this way . . .*

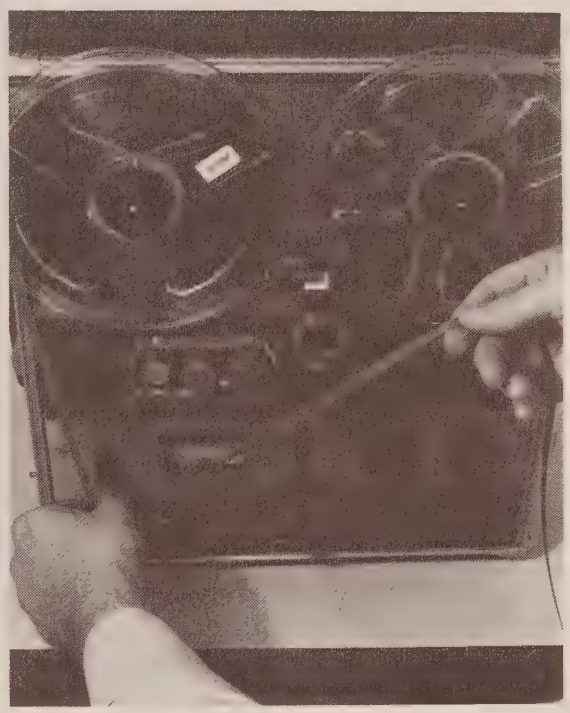


Figure 6.9. *. . . or by hand.*

blade. A very convenient way to make the splice is with edit tabs. Leader tape is often spliced to regular audio tape. Leader tape is used to separate segments and to protect the head and tail of the tape; it can be written on.

DUBBING

Dubbing is often used in what's called electronic splicing or electronic editing, and those are pretty good descriptions of what happens.

A producer could, for example, accomplish the same goal with the mayor's interview by dubbing portions of a tape onto another tape or to cart.

Figure 6.10. *Splicing tape.*

Figure 6.11. *Butting the two ends together in the channel of the editing block.*

Figure 6.12. *Placing the splicing tape over the butt.*

Figure 6.13. *The splice is burnished to ensure good contact between the splicing tape and the audio tape.*

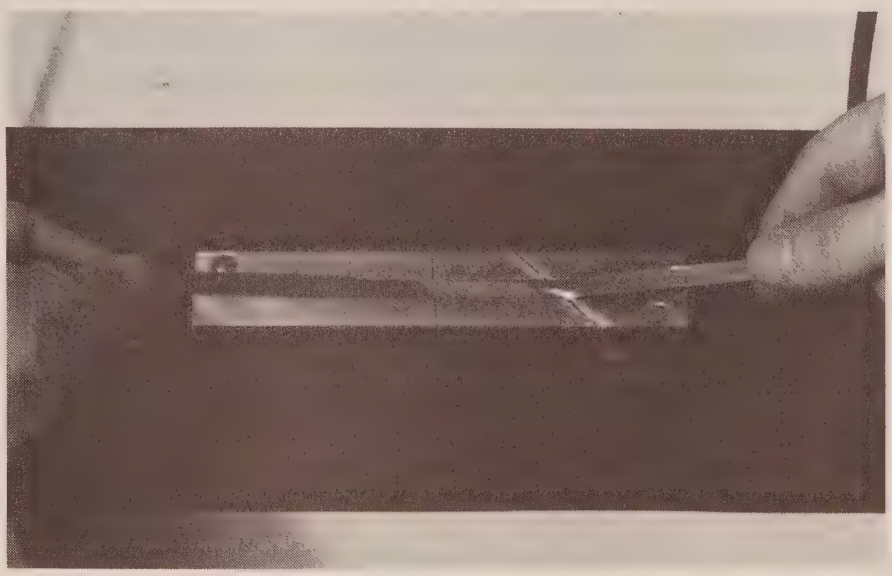


Figure 6.14. *Removing the tape from the channel.*

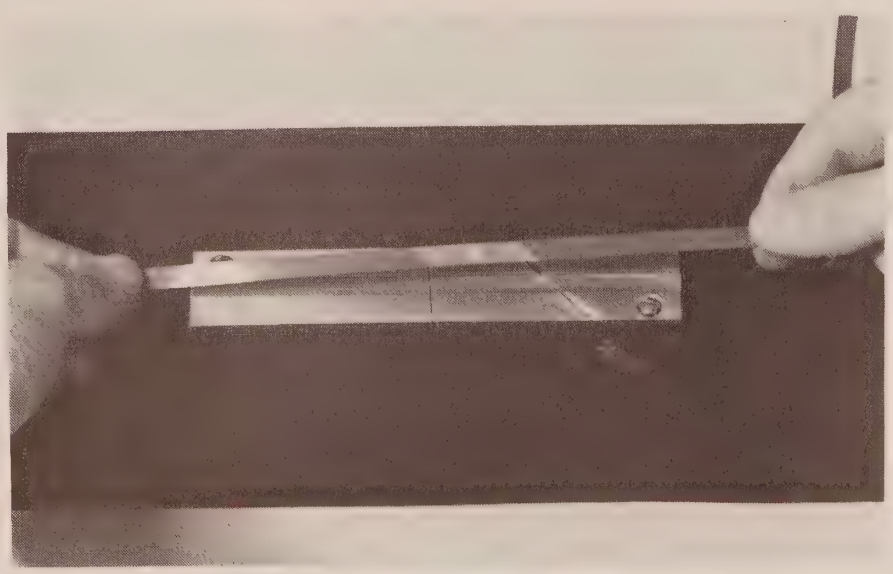


Figure 6.15. *The completed splice.*

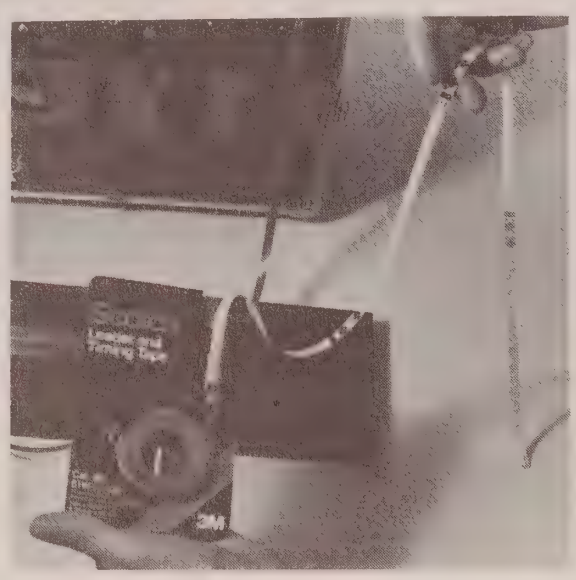


Figure 6.16. *Leader tape.*

For example, the producer would mount the mayor's interview tape on tape 1 and record the output of the board on tape 2. He would put tape 1 in play and tape 2 in record, and dub:

MAYOR: We have decided to go ahead with construction of a new cross-town expressway from the junction of Interstate 440 to——

After the word "to" tape 2 is quickly stopped and tape 1 is allowed to play until the fluff [". . . uh, what's the name of that street? . . . (papers shuffle) . . . oh yeah"] is over.

Rocking the reels, the producer cues tape 1 up exactly between the words "yeah" and "Commercial." Then, he puts tape 1 in play and tape 2 in record simultaneously, dubbing over the last portion of the quote ["—Commercial Street, where there will be a major interchange."].

Incidentally, if you can disable the cue tone on the cart machine model you're using, the same result can be accomplished by dubbing the cuts onto cart. Be sure to ask your instructor or studio supervisor if doing this is permissible, and be certain to arm the cue tone again when you're done, or the next user of the cart machine will encounter problems.

Many newer tape machines have a synchronization feature to locate the exact recording spot on the tape by using the record head as a temporary playback head. These machines also have the ability to "punch in and out of" the record mode without putting pops and clicks on the tape. If your machine has this feature, you can easily delete a word or a sentence and punch in a new one without physically cutting the tape.

Problems associated with dubbing

The same goal is accomplished using electronic editing in dubbing as in splicing. Playing back the tape, though, will probably point out that the edit

is not as clean as the splice; there may be some electronic noise at the edit point, and the rhythm of the pause may not be perfect. That's one of the main difficulties with dubbing: It's just not as precise as cutting and splicing the tape.

Also, dubbing from one source to another too many times can cause the quality of the recording to deteriorate. Every new dub or a recording is known as another "generation." Generating the tape too often can result in a loss of quality, including the introduction of additional noise into the recording.

Advantages of dubbing

Dubbing allows you to overlap elements. If, for example, you want to edit in a piece of music and talk over it, fading the music out, you will have to use dubbing. Another plus of dubbing is that it's much, much faster and simpler than cutting the tape. Production by dubbing will probably account for the vast majority of the editing work you'll do.

You will often use the dubbing technique when editing a cassette tape. To edit a cassette, either dub the whole tape onto a reel-to-reel and splice the reel-to-reel, or make electronic edits while playing the cassette and recording on reel-to-reel or cart.

Review of dubbing

Dubbing involves recording program material from one source to another. It is very useful in editing, because it's less work than splicing. But dubbing isn't quite as accurate when it comes to locating editing points. Dubbing is almost always used when elements are overlapped, especially in music.

EDITING

Both splicing and dubbing can be used in the editing process. But what, exactly, are you trying to accomplish during an editing session? There are, of course, a great number of tasks a radio producer undertakes—from running a live air show to producing a commercial to assembling a newscast. There are separate chapters on the content and production techniques for each of those categories.

Some of the basic editing structures are common to live shows, commercials, newscasts, public affairs programming, and so on. By "editing structure," we mean particular patterns of construction that appear frequently in radio production.

For example, notice how many commercials start with music; the music **fades** down as the announcer starts reading, and the music comes back up when the announcer has finished the spiel.

This technique—a structure used in editing and production—is pretty common in radio today. You'll be able to apply it in many situations.

Let's look at some of the basic **editing/production structures;** in later chapters, we will apply these structures to the production of specific pieces.

Establish music, music under, voice up

Establish music, music under, voice up is a sequence frequently used as an introduction to certain types of radio programs. In this procedure, *establish* the music—allow a second or two so that the listener gets a chance to recognize that a piece of music is being played—and then pot the music under, to a low but still audible level. As soon as the music is under (potting the music under should take just a second or so), the voice comes in.

The trick here is to strike a good balance between voice and music. Ideally, the establishing music should peak the VU at 0, and when the voice is brought in, the voice should also peak the VU at 0. The music under the voice should not be loud enough to make the voice difficult to understand, but the listener should be able to hear it.

As you've certainly guessed, there's no standard formula for how loud the music should be. It's a judgment call that must be made by ear. But one advantage of working in radio is that there's plenty of opportunity for hearing how your colleagues do the same job.

Cross-fade

The technique of cross-fading is used in all sorts of production, including airshifts. You simply pot one source down while potting the other up. The result should be a smooth transition between the two, usually with a moment of overlap. The sound from the second source is established before the first source is (quickly) dropped.

A cross-fade is the technique used to move gracefully from one source to another, to **segue.** "Segue" means transition, and a cross-fade is one type of transition. Not all segues, or transitions, are cross-fades, however.

Sometimes, cross-fades are used to camouflage the need to shorten a piece of music that is used as background, or a "bed," for a commercial. For example, a producer who wants to use a 3-minute music cut for a 1-minute commercial may record the final 30 seconds of the music on a cart. By playing the first 30 seconds of the cut off the disc and then cross-fading into the final 30 seconds on cart, the producer has created a bed that has a definite beginning and end. This spot will involve use of the next editing structure: voice out, music up.

Voice out, music up

Commonly used at the end of a spot, voice out, music up is particularly effective when used with music that ends with a definite climax. In this case,

dead-potting the cut is often used. (Dead-potting, as you remember, involves starting and playing a cut when it is not up on the board; the cut is backtimed to end at a specific predetermined point.)

Voice out, music up is also, of course, used by radio announcers who talk over the beginning of a cut, then bring up the music—usually at the start of the vocal.

Music wrap

The music wrap is a combination of the three editing structures discussed so far. It is what we described in the example of a 1-minute commercial with music at the beginning, voice in the middle, and music at the end.

Voice wrap

In a voice wrap, one voice starts, another voice is edited in, and the first voice returns to close out the segment. This structure is used extensively in news production. Here's an example:

ANNOUNCER: Mayor Louis Hazzard today ended weeks of speculation about the new highway that has been proposed for Centerville.

MAYOR: We have decided to go ahead with construction of a new crosstown expressway from the junction of Interstate 440 to Commerical Street, where there will be a major interchange.

ANNOUNCER: The crosstown expressway is expected to be the first leg of a major transportation network designed to link Centerville with the neighboring communities of Leftville and Rightville. This is Bob Robertson reporting from City Hall.

Using editing and production structures

There are, of course, countless variations of editing structures, but the ones presented here are among the most basic and frequently repeated. By recognizing the basic editing structures, and practicing the mechanics necessary to manufacture them using the console and equipment, you can develop habits that will greatly simplify production in the future. For example, *establish music, music under, voice up* is a very common component of radio production. After you have executed this structure a few times, it will become second nature. Every time it's called for, you'll be able to do it as a reflex.

Review of editing

Editing is the process of rearranging, correcting, and assembling the product into a finished whole. If splicing and dubbing are the mechanics, editing is the art.

One way to look at editing is to examine some of the basic editing structures: *establish music, music under, voice up; cross-fade; voice out, music up; music wrap;* and *voice wrap.* Other structures exist, and there are many variations of editing structures, but a good grasp of the basics will make production much easier because constructing the common patterns will become automatic.

APPLICATIONS

Situation 1/The Problem. A production manager at a local radio station was given the job of producing a commerical for a local political candidate. As part of the commercial, the candidate discussed his views for 40 seconds. However, the candidate had an unfortunate speech pattern: He interjected "uhhhh" many times during his presentation.

One possible solution. Since it was the producer's job—in this case—to make the candidate appear in a positive light, the producer took out the editing block and razor blade and sliced all the "uhhhhs" from the politician's remarks. The job took 20 minutes, but the resulting tape was smooth and clean sounding.

Situation 2/The Problem. The producer of an entertainment show did an interview (on location, using a cassette) with the head of a local theater group. The producer wanted to weave three cuts of the interview into her script.

The script went along the following lines: "And what does Pat Wilbur, head of the Starlight Theater Group, have planned for this season?" . . . (Cut of interview) . . . "But will attendance be better this year than last year's dismal totals?" . . . (Second cut of interview) . . . "So how does Pat Wilbur intend to get those attendance figures up?" . . . (Third cut of interview).

What would be the best way to weave those cuts into the script?

One possible solution. The producer listened to the entire interview several times and made precise notes on where she wanted to cut in and out of the interview. Because time was short, she decided to dub the three cuts directly onto cart, which would be used to play the cuts over the air (the show was done live). She put the cart machine on record, rolled the cassette tape, and started the cart as soon as the appropriate section of the interview began, stopping the cart as soon as the desired section of the interview ended. This was repeated for the other two cuts. The cue tones were left on, of course. Thus there were three cuts on the cart. Every time the producer wanted to play a cut of the interview, she simply hit the start button on the cart machine. The cart cued up to the next cut automatically.

Exercises

1. If you have two or more cart machines available, dub a piece of audio from cart to cart. For example, start with a 10-second music cut dubbed onto a cart; take that cart and dub from CART 1 to CART 2. Now dub from CART 2 back to CART 1 (put a clean cart in CART 1) or to CART 3, if you have a CART 3.

   This exercise will accomplish two goals: letting you hear what impact the generations of tape will have, and understanding the relationship of cart machines (in terms of record and playback) to the console.

2. Interview a classmate or colleague, take three cuts of the interview, and weave them into a script similar to the one described in Situation 2 of this chapter. (What you're doing is assembling a series of voice wraps.) Don't be too concerned about the content of the interview or the script; this is just a vehicle for practicing editing techniques. The whole program need not be longer than a minute or so.

   In this exercise you will assemble the show first using dubbing techniques; you can dub onto cart or onto reel-to-reel tape, whichever seems easier.

3. Now, edit the same show together using splicing.

4. Listen to a half-hour of radio and identify as many editing structures as you can. Write down, for example: "Introduction to the 4 o'clock news on WAAA: An *establish music, music under, voice up.* This was followed by a *voice wrap* during the first news report, and so on."

7
Recorded Program Production

Recorded program production is a term we use to refer loosely to any radio production work that is not done live over the air. In most cases, the recording is done in preparation for use over the air at a later date.

The basic difference between recorded production and live, on-air production (covered in the next chapter) is that on-air production is a one-shot affair—there's only one opportunity to get it right. In recorded studio work, the producer has the freedom to do several retakes of the same production element, to try different blends and mixes, and to scrap the whole project and start over again if it's not working out.

Because of these luxuries, much more complex productions are attempted in recorded work. Whereas mixing a narration, multiple sound effects, and a musical bed would be next to impossible all in one take, it becomes a simple matter in the recording studio, since the tasks can be attempted one at a time, with the various elements divided into logical steps.

RECORDED VERSUS LIVE, ON-AIR PRODUCTION

How does a radio producer decide whether a production will be done live or put together in advance? There are three elements to consider.

Complexity

As mentioned above, a production containing many elements must be done in advance. Many commercials are read live, but these are almost always one-voice affairs, with the announcer simply reading copy or ad-libbing from a fact sheet.

Scheduled airtime

A talk show that airs at 5:30 A.M. Sunday will be prerecorded in the studio, usually during normal weekday working hours. Obviously, it is not practical to try to get guests to appear live on a predawn show.

On the other hand, newscasts generally are not recorded (and when they are, it's done as close to airtime as possible) because they become outdated quickly, as the news changes.

Convenience

If a production calls for the voice of a specific announcer, is it more convenient to record the announcer or to have her come in every time that production is aired? The same rationale applies to the need for repetition of a production. While the use of music and narration for the introduction of a show might be done live if the program is a one-time affair, prerecording the introduction will be far more convenient if it is to be repeated weekly or daily.

Along the same lines, preproducing a piece reduces the chance that an error will be made over the air.

LAYOUT OF A PRODUCTION STUDIO

In a small radio station, the production studio is usually located wherever it fits; often, it is in the record library or in an engineering area, or even in a corner of the manager's office. In a somewhat larger station, the basic production studio often looks like Figure 7.1.

On the other end of the spectrum is the fully equipped, high-tech production studio (see Fig. 1.2, p. 8). Another variation of the top-of-the-line studio is a setup with multitrack mixing capabilities for recording and remixing original music. Recording and mixing of music are discussed later in this chapter.

Most large studio setups feature a glassed-in area between the main control room and the studio; in large music production studios, the glass divides the performance area of the studio from the control area. The glass is typically double layered, and the panes are not set parallel to each other or to the studio wall (Fig. 7.2), to prevent the internal or external reflection of sound.

The more typical radio station production studio is a one-room setup, with the equipment usually intended for combo use. Although the studio is intended for off-air production, there generally will be a hard-wired link to the main control room so that the output of the production studio can be

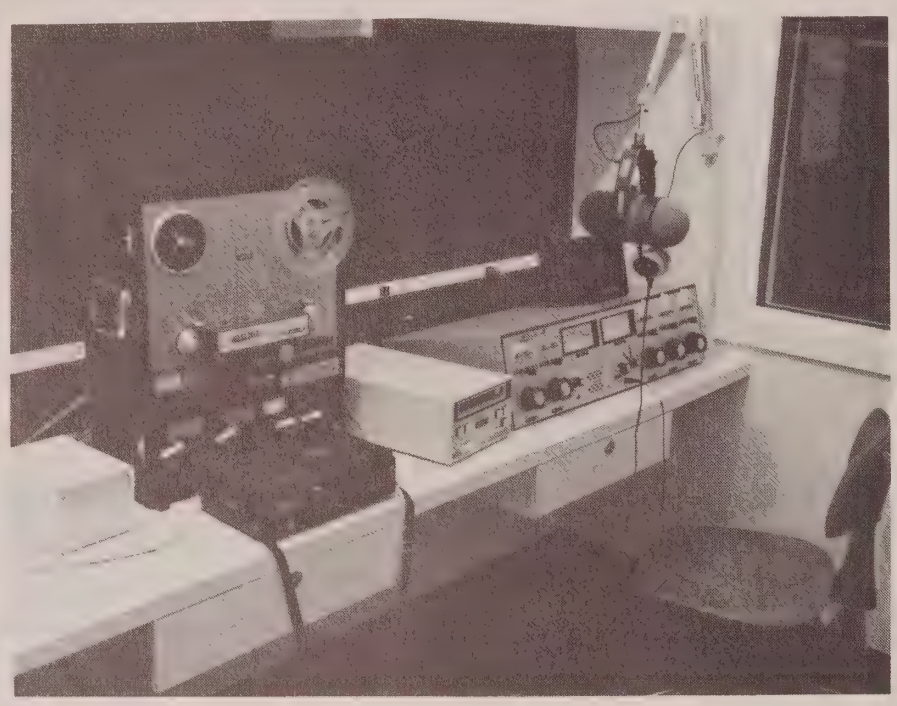


Figure 7.1. A basic production studio.

put live over the air. This arrangement comes in handy when the main control room is out of commission for repairs or other emergencies. Also, the studio may double as an announce booth, used especially by the news department. The news department may also have its own production area (Fig. 7.3).

Equipment in the production studio

In most cases, the production studio equipment will virtually duplicate what's in an on-air studio, although there may not be as much of it, and in some stations the production equipment may be hand-me-downs from the on-air control room. The minimum equipment usually consists of some sort of console, a mic, two cart machines, two tape recorders, and two turntables. The console may be a portable mixer or the portable console the station uses for **remotes.**

A patchbay is almost always a fixture of the production studio. In many cases, the patchbay allows interconnection of the production studio with other studios, the network, or even directly with the transmitter. There is often some sort of talkback system between studios.

Sound treatment in the production studio

A commercially available sound-deadening material (Fig. 7.4) is commonly used to dampen sound reflection in the production studio. Sometimes, egg cartons are cut up and attached to the walls, serving the same effect.

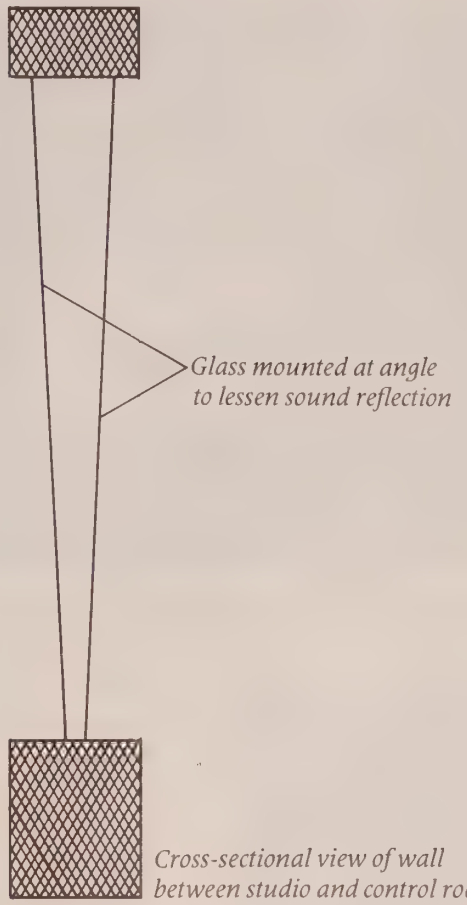


Figure 7.2. *A double layer of glass often separates control room from production studio.*

A carpet is helpful to deaden sound reflection. Sometimes, the carpet is applied on walls (Fig. 7.5) to help create a dead environment. Studios designed for music recording often have curtains, which can be spread to deaden sound or pulled back to expose the bare walls when a livelier sound is desired.

As mentioned earlier, the production studio in a small station may serve double duty, and a combined record library–production studio is common; in fact, stacks of records do a good job of sound baffling.

WORKING IN A PRODUCTION STUDIO

Who works in the production studio environment? In some stations, there is a production manager, who is in charge of the studio and has the responsibility of overseeing all the station's off-air production. Staff announcers also use production facilities for such duties as commercial production. In smaller stations, sales people often produce their own commercials. Basically, the studio is used by anyone who has to construct a production for

Figure 7.3. *News production area.*

Figure 7.4. *Sound-deadening material.*

Figure 7.5. *Carpeted studio walls help to deaden sound in this setup.*

later airplay. In this sense, all staff members assigned such duties are producers.

Anyone who undertakes the duties of a producer is responsible for knowing much more about the process of radio than someone who acts simply as an announcer or as a technician. A producer must understand the methods of constructing a **spot** or program. For example, it may be more efficient to break the production down into a number of discrete tasks, such as doing

all the music work first and all the narration next, even though that is not the sequence in which the components will appear in the final product.

An analogy from the movie production business is illustrative. Perhaps a certain restaurant is the setting of the last sequence of a movie, and the film begins in the same restaurant. From the standpoint of the producer, who has to move around crew, actors, extras, and sets, it makes sense to shoot the beginning and ending scenes on the same day. (It's not unheard of for the ending of a movie to be shot on the first day of production.) In other words, the "pieces" or sequences of a movie can be filmed in any order and then edited together in accordance with the script.

You'll find that the same strategy will prove useful in the radio production studio. And, since time demands on a studio are usually high, you'll be able to get in and out much faster if you learn to plan work in **task-oriented sequence.** If, for instance, you have three similar commercials to produce, it may prove useful to do the announcing for all three first—on the same tape—and add the music beds to all three next.

Working in task-oriented sequence will become second nature as long as you make an effort to break old thought patterns that require you to work in real-time sequence (doing the beginning first, the middle next, and the ending last). Instead, structure your tasks according to the most convenient and efficient method for the best use of the production studio available. Understanding this principle is what separates a producer from someone who just puts sound on tape.

Another factor that will help you develop skill and recognition as a radio producer is an understanding of the basic building blocks of radio and how they relate to studio production. We're talking about music, voice, and sound effects.

MUSIC

Music is a very important element in radio production, and it can be argued that music is what radio is all about. In any event, it's important for a producer to have an understanding of music. Good producers have the ability to use music to their advantage, to manipulate music to create an effect. Also, good producers understand the kinds and varieties of music, thus can fit productions into the station's overall format. In a production studio setting, you will generally be using segments of music, rather than entire cuts.

Sources of music

The music you will use almost always comes from discs. The use of music is licensed to a radio station by means of a fee paid to music licensing or-

ganizations, the largest of which are the American Society of Composers, Authors and Publishers (ASCAP) and Broadcast Music Incorporated (BMI). Licensing fees also cover the use of music in production work. Popular music (the kind played over the air as entertainment) is commonly used in all sorts of studio production.

Sometimes, though, there are specific requirements that are not filled very well by the popular music available, and specialized musical selections have been developed to meet these needs. Various companies sell what are usually called *production libraries:* recorded original music that fits the most common production and time requirements in typical stations. For example, **music beds** run exactly 60 or 30 seconds.

There also are generic vocal selections that can be adapted to fit the needs of commercial production for local merchants. Thus a 30-second cut might start with a group of vocalists singing: "Downtown is the greatest place to shop." The instrumental background would continue, serving as a bed for the local announcer to fill with copy advertising a local downtown merchant. The vocal would return, 25 seconds into the cut, to close out the piece with: "Do your shopping downtown, where you'll find everything you need!"

Advertising agencies, which commission the composition of original music for clients, are another source of music. Such music usually takes the form of a jingle, which is incorporated into the client's radio (and sometimes TV) advertising. The beds supplied by ad agencies are very similar to the works furnished by the production library companies, except that the ad agency's musical jingle is specific to one client. Some large companies provide their franchises with standardized commercial beds, which are "localized" at the different radio stations.

Specialized productions generally are easier to work with (you don't have to do as much adaptation of the music, such as telescoping the beginning and end together for one 30-second spot). However, the station has to pay for prepackaged production music, and, frankly, some of it is pretty hokey.

It's safe to assume that most of your production work will be done with popular music whose main purpose is airplay. But you can adapt it for production purposes.

Choosing music for production work

Music can make or break a production. A commercial, for example, can gain significant impact by selection of background music that reinforces the message. A poor selection, though, can detract from the message or even be at odds with it. For instance, copy that touts the benefits of a relaxing vacation through the Acme Travel Agency won't be reinforced by blaring rock music. No copy will be helped by an overly familiar vocal selection that draws attention away from the message. The selection of music, incidentally, can

be a formidable task. Even the smallest radio station may have thousands of records in the station library.

In many cases, radio stations categorize music held in their libraries by type (rock, country, jazz, etc.). Still others utilize a color code, or a numerical or alphabetical listing for their music libraries. It is important to understand the broad classifications that stations use so that you can locate music by type quickly and easily. We'll be discussing some broad classifications later in this chapter.

Many stations segregate music libraries into vocal and instrumental selections, and since most production music is of the instrumental variety, your choice will be narrowed somewhat. Some stations designate a shelf for good production music, which is handy but may entail the risk of a few pieces of music becoming overused. And there is a danger of overusing popular music. As indicated above, a catchy, popular tune might attract more attention than the message of the commercial; the listener will be hearing the music, not the message.

Many of the production pieces are chosen by someone who—after years of studio production experience—notices that a certain **cut** on the air would be a particularly good piece for production work. Perhaps there's an instrumental section that conveys a feeling of excitement, or enjoyment, or other mood. A great many air people develop their particular favorites for commercial production, although this, too, entails a risk of the music being used too often.

In any case, the music must reinforce the message, not distract or detract from it. The style has to fit both the message and the station's format.

Styles of music

A broad knowledge of music is critical to the radio professional. First of all, even if your intention is to pursue a career in rock radio, circumstances may dictate a two-year stint at a station with a country format, or a beautiful music format. Stations with a broad-ranging format may use a variety of music styles in production, and it's incumbent on you to understand the styles and be able to utilize them effectively. In addition, modern music produces many "crossovers" from one style into another. Some country music, for example, almost sounds like jazz. Being able to recognize elements of various styles will help you categorize music and better utilize it to achieve effects.

Here are the characteristics of some of the major styles of music:

Rock. In most cases, rock features drums and electric guitars. There's generally a distinctive rhythm, which is maintained by bass drum and bass guitar. More avant-garde types of rock music include elaborate electronic effects. The milder rock music selections are probably the most commonly used pieces in radio station production.

Country. The twang of country music is its most recognizable attribute, although much of the country music repertoire is orchestrated and virtually indistinguishable from general popular music. The steel guitar was once the benchmark of country music, although nowadays almost any combination of instruments can be used.

Country music is used in production to achieve special effects (as a musical bed for a rodeo commercial, perhaps) and of course is used extensively in production on country format stations.

Jazz. This style of music can run the gamut from the traditional dance band music to the bizarre and highly experimental. Jazz generally uses a syncopated rhythm.

Jazz has many uses in production and is particularly helpful because so much of it is instrumental. The more experimental types of jazz are less useful, although they can sometimes be selected for effect.

Classical. The term "classical music" is something of a misnomer, because "classical" really refers to one type of music in the spectrum popularly understood as "classical." The classical period is typified by the music of Mozart. The baroque period, which preceded the classical, is usually symbolized by Bach, who created multiple melodies that interact contrapuntally. (This type of music is referred to as *polyphonic;* its sound can be approximated by the familiar round "Row, Row, Row Your Boat.") The romantic period of music followed the classical period, and is characterized by the works of Tchaikovsky and later works of Beethoven.

For lack of a better term, "classical" will suffice, although some people refer to this style as "concert music" or "good music." Classical music occasionally is useful in production, generally to achieve a special effect.

General popular music. This broad category can transcend many others. Essentially, though, general popular music tends to be more melodic and orchestral than rock. Violins and other bowed strings are used, as well as woodwinds. Piano is a typical feature of general popular music. Many of the lower key rock music selections certainly fit into this category. On the other end of the spectrum are the "beautiful music" selections of Henry Mancini or the Hollywood Strings. This style of music is especially useful in general production duties, since much of it is instrumental.

Specialty music. This category includes polkas, waltzes, and marches, which are used in production work when a specific effect is called for.

RECORDED VOICE

Voice, the second major element of production, can be accomplished by an announcer running a combo operation, or by a producer running the console while others speak into a mic or mics.

One common studio production task is the miking of several speakers, sometimes in a roundtable type of discussion. Here, the microphone techniques discussed in Chapter 5 come into play, along with some other considerations we'll discuss shortly. In essence, though, the most important goal of recording voice in a studio production setting is to get a clean recording that accentuates the announcer's voice and delivery. Achieving this goal may involve such considerations as:

- Selecting a mic that de-emphasizes peculiarities of a performer's speech, such as *p*-popping or excessive **sibilance.**
- Replacing a highly sensitive mic with a less sensitive model to cut down on noise from air conditioning, or the clicking of the speaker's dentures.
- Eliminating table noises (nonprofessional speakers are notorious for table-tapping) by hanging the microphone from a boom rather than having it attached to a table stand.
- Instructing speakers, both professional and nonprofessional, on positioning and use of the mic. Nonprofessional speakers frequently need to be cautioned about speaking too close to the mic.

Duties of these types are common in all production setups. While some recording of voice in the production studio is a very simple affair, other situations are complex. Two of the most common difficulties encountered in production work are the problem of miking multiple speakers and the problem of communicating with speakers when the mics are open.

Miking multiple speakers

One of the more typical functions of the radio station's production specialist is setting up and recording the panel discussion show. With a number of interviewees in the studio, it is tempting to string up mics for everyone who is likely to open his or her mouth. Most experts agree, however, that the fewer mics you can get away with, the better. An overabundance of mics can cause difficulties in engineering the show (trying to find the right pot to adjust when you're dealing with six or seven) and phasing difficulties, which are described below.

It is, however, practical to use two mics when there are two speakers. Perhaps the most common type of interview program involves a single host and a single guest, and recording of the show can be pulled off quite nicely with two cardioid mics with little overlap of the pickup pattern (Fig. 7.6).

The advantage of this setup is that the operator is free to control the individual volumes and maintain a comfortable balance. A bidirectional or omnidirectional mic can be used, but the loss of flexibility usually isn't worth the convenience gained from a simpler setup. But when there are several speakers, simplicity of mic setup is, indeed, a virtue. One mic suspended from the ceiling may give better results than an individual mic for each speaker. As we mentioned, phasing problems dog the multiple-mic setup.

Figure 7.6. *Simple two-person interview using cardioid mics.*

To understand phasing problems, let's refer back to the discussion of directional mics in Chapter 5. Remember that a directional mic cancels sound by means of an acoustic network inside the mic; that is, sounds reach the diaphragm at different times and therefore cancel themselves out. The same effect occurs in the studio: Sound arrives at different mics at different times, with just enough difference to throw the phasing off.

This will seem less like an abstract concept when you consider that sound does not travel very quickly; while 1,100 feet per second may seem like a pretty fast clip, note how sound lags vision. From the top row of the bleachers, you can easily discern the gap between the basketball hitting the floor during a dribble and you hearing it hit the floor. Track runners start when they see the smoke from the starter's pistol rather than waiting for the noise, which they hear a split second later. Now, with sound waves making, let's say, 5,000 cycles a second (5,000 Hz), it's easy to see how a small delay can cause the cycles to be out of phase.

The solution to phasing problems is to avoid, as much as possible, any overlap among the mic pickup patterns. Sometimes this entails putting more than one speaker on a mic to avoid overlapping pickup patterns. For example, miking six speakers could be accomplished with three mics, each trained on two speakers in such a way that there's little or no overlap of their pickup patterns (Fig. 7.7).

The concept of phase problems will become crystal clear when you *hear* an out-of-phase broadcast. In many cases, all that's needed is some additional separation of the pickup patterns. Moving the mic around and playing the situation by ear will usually solve the problem.

One other difficulty of miking multiple talkers is, of course, the matter of

Figure 7.7. *In this production six individuals were positioned around three mics. Separation and proper orientation of the mics could, if cardioids were used, prevent overlap of their pickup patterns.*

levels. If one speaker has an overpowering voice, that speaker generally does not belong on the same mic as someone who habitually whispers. This situation, too, will call for some trials and errors.

Working with nonprofessional speakers creates a secondary problem when setting the level. While a professional announcer will (usually) know enough to give you several sentences of speech to let you set the pot at the proper level, amateurs will not. The typical scenario before a panel discussion goes something like this:

PRODUCER *(Whoever happens to be running the board):* Mr. Smith, could I have a level, please?

SMITH: What?

PRODUCER: A voice level. . . . Could you just talk for me, so I can set your mic?

SMITH: What do you want me to say?

PRODUCER: Anything.

SMITH: Hello, hello. Is that enough?

PRODUCER *(Who hasn't even found the pot yet):* No, no, just talk until I tell you to stop.

SMITH: But what am I supposed to say now?

To make matters worse, the level Mr. Smith finally gives the producer has absolutely no relation to the booming voice he will use when the tape starts rolling. While there's no perfect solution to this problem, one of the

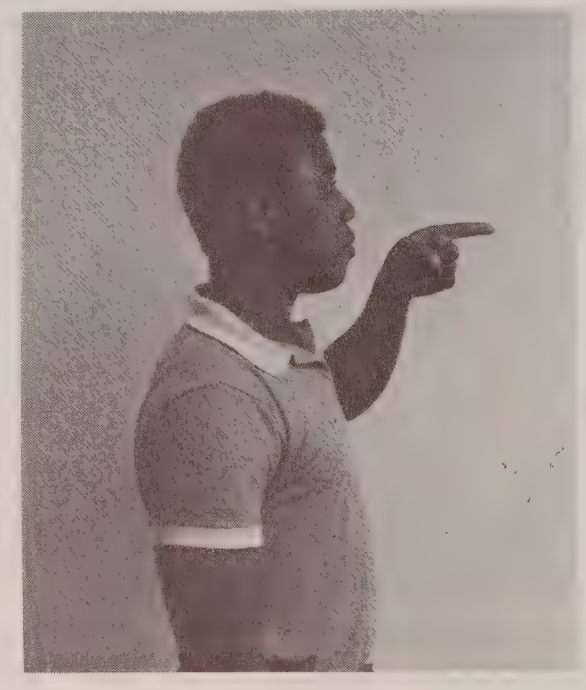


Figure 7.8. "You're on."

least objectionable ways of getting a level from amateur talent is to ask each person to count to 20. Granted, the voice someone uses to count aloud is different from that used in conversation, but the voice level used by a self-conscious speaker to give a snippet of conversation for the level talker isn't necessarily what's going to come out during the program, either. Asking the talent to count does, at least, eliminate the "What am I going to say?" routine and guarantees several seconds of speech. If there's a rehearsal of the program before airtime, use the rehearsal to set levels.

Communication in the studio

One of the considerations of working in the production studio, especially when recording interview shows, is communicating with announcers and guests when mics are open. This isn't nearly as big a problem as it was in the days of live radio, when whole programs such as variety shows and dramas were put live over the air, but knowing some simple cues and signals can prevent the inconvenience of having to stop tape to give an instruction. Signals sometimes prove useful when a speaker is going live over the air.

The hand signals we're going to demonstrate have been around for quite some time, and while you may not have much occasion to use them, they do represent a standard way of communicating in the studio.

You're on. This signal (Fig. 7.8) consists of a finger pointed directly at the speaker.

Figure 7.9. *"Give me a level."*

Figure 7.10. *"Kill my mic."*

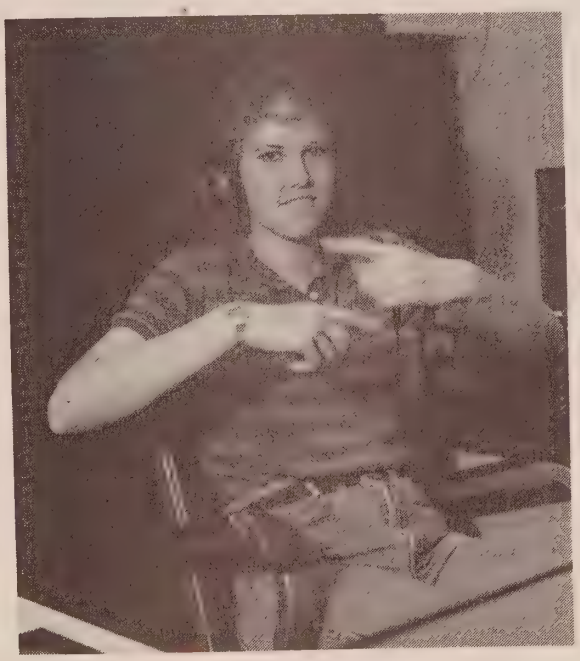


Figure 7.11. *"Wrap up."*

Figure 7.12. *"Stretch."*

Give me a level. A chattering motion with the fingers (Fig. 7.9) indicates that you would like the announcer to give you a voice level.
Kill my mic. Draw a finger across your throat (Fig. 7.10). If you're not using a headset mic, point to the mic, too.
Wrap up. This signal is accomplished by a circular ("winding up") motion of the hands (Fig. 7.11).
Stretch. Make a motion with your hands as though stretching a rubber band (Fig. 7.12). This tells the person on-mic to keep talking and stretch out the program.

Remember, these signals aren't foolproof and not everyone knows them. If they are standard in your station, fine, and if you work out signals in advance with talent and guests, they may prove useful.

SOUND EFFECTS IN STUDIO PRODUCTION

Sound effects have been discussed in various contexts in other chapters, and here we examine how they are used in studio production. In terms of sound effects available to the producer, the most useful sources are disc libraries sold by various firms. These discs carry quite specific entries, also listing the number of seconds each cut lasts. For example, the several entries in the car horns honking category might be listed this way:

- Number 17: Horn honking, Model T Ford, :05
- Number 18: Horn honking, modern car, :06
- Number 19: Horns honking in city traffic, :10

The cuts usually have generous amounts of space between them, so you'll be able to drop the stylus in the widely separated grooves, which indicate silence. Since many of these records contain dozens of cuts per side, counting them is often difficult. Count aloud as you move the tonearm over each cut.

Sometimes, you won't be able to find what you need, and a sound effect will have to be custom-created. Most of us are familiar with the standard tricks of the trade for producing sound effects, such as crinkling cellophane to produce the effect of flames crackling. Most of us also know that the results—unless one is a real expert—are often less than satisfactory. Many experienced production people who are willing to take the time and effort can custom-make sound effects, but in most radio production that amount of effort isn't expended.

Most of the sound effects you will have to create yourself will be comprised of standard background noise, such as the hubbub of a restaurant. Common sense and some experimentation will guide you on this; just be aware that you and the microphone "hear" differently. While your brain can filter out noise in a restaurant, the mic is likely to pick up every clink of dishes and scrape of sliverware. So when producing a sound effect, be prepared to try some different mic techniques, and don't hesitate to try various sound levels to create the sound you want.

COMBINING ELEMENTS IN PRODUCTION

The process of mixing music, voice, and sound effects is, essentially, a matter of feeding signals through the console or manipulating them with an editing process to construct the ultimate product.

A major consideration of combining these elements in a production studio setting is to ensure that the final product contains as few generations as possible (i.e., the smallest possible number of rerecordings of the same segment).

While the specifics of various production processes are discussed in appropriate chapters, this is a good place to point out the ways in which you can efficiently construct production pieces; using the minimum number of generations is one consideration. In practice, you will find a number of ways to save generations on the tape. The basic principle is to do as many operations in one step as possible; for example, make the whole music bed in one step, if you can, rather than adding elements gradually and dubbing the tape several times.

Another aspect of combining elements in production is to keep an open mind and use as many of the options available to you as possible. Is there an easier way to do things? Think about it, and don't always use the same routine out of force of habit. Utilize splicing and dubbing techniques to their fullest in studio production. Remember, you can use a splice to:

- Remove flubs from an existing tape.
- Attach leader.
- Insert questions or breaks.
- Insert **actuality** sound.
- Repair broken tape.
- Tighten up and remove lapses in any program.

You can use a dub to:

- Play back a sound source in a more convenient format (e.g., putting a short selection of music on cart, to make it easier to locate).
- Take the place of a splice when you don't want to cut the tape, and you're not concerned about adding another generation to the tape.
- Free up a piece of equipment.
- Mix two or more sources together.

Remember, working in the studio environment will almost always entail striving for excellent quality and efficiency of operation. While some deviation in quality might be acceptable in live coverage of a news event, some-

thing produced in-studio must sound good, with no lapses in mic technique or production values.

At the same time, remember that nowhere is the "time is money" equation more obvious than in the modern broadcast studio. There may be several people clamoring for the use of the studio, and doing your work in task-oriented sequence will be more efficient.

APPLICATIONS

Situation 1/The Problem. The producer was setting up for a show in which he would be running the board for an interview with three guests. He had set up one omnidirectional mic. Everything worked fine, but one of the guests happened to have a very, very soft voice.

One possible solution. Although it is a good choice under other circumstances, the one omnidirectional mic wasn't right for this situation. Instead, the producer set up two cardioids, making sure that the patterns didn't overlap. The two strong-voiced guests were in one pickup pattern; the weak-voiced guest was in the other. Now, the levels could be matched.

Situation 2/The Problem. The news director of a small station wanted to use a portion of a large office as an adjunct studio during election coverage. Unfortunately, the room was so lively that it sounded as though candidate interviews were being done in the shower.

One possible solution. The news director went down to the local home-supply store and purchased some heavy-grade cardboard. She made a frame of two-by-fours and used the cardboard as a partition, making the room, for all intents and purposes, smaller. She also taped some old egg cartons to the wall to help deflect ambient sound and deaden the room noise.

Exercises

1. Prepare a commercial for a hypothetical upcoming concert. This very difficult production task is representative of the kind of activity you might be asked to undertake.

   This particular promo calls for the use of four cuts of a popular singer; although you generally don't use vocals for production work, you'll have no choice when the assignment is to publicize a performance by a singer.

   To produce this spot, pick out a vocalist's album from your personal collection or from your college's or stations's production library. Here's the copy you will use to produce the spot:

APPEARING LIVE AT THE CIVIC CENTER ON JUNE 12,
_____ IN PERSON!

(first cut up, fade down)

JOIN _____ ON HIS/HER FIRST TOUR OF THIS AREA. HERE'S THE MUSICAL EVENT YOU'VE BEEN WAITING FOR.

(second cut up, fade down)

TICKETS ARE $15 AND $12, AND CAN BE PURCHASED FROM SMITH TICKET AGENCY OR AT THE CIVIC CENTER BOX OFFICE.

(third cut up, fade down)

DON'T MISS THIS CHANCE TO SEE _____ IN CONCERT.
AT THE CIVIC CENTER, JUNE 12 AT 7 P.M.

(close with vocal)

Your assignment is to produce the foregoing commerical by dubbing the music onto cart and doing the commercial in one take, starting the carts and cross-fading as the copy is read (by you or by an announcer).

2. This time, prepare the music bed first by dubbing the cuts onto a reel-to-reel tape. You won't be able to cross-fade, so butt the songs together. Now, do the commercial by reading copy over the music bed.

3. Produce the same commerical, this time cueing up one disc at a time, and stopping the tape after you've played the cut and read the appropriate piece of copy. Do the same with the other discs.

Note: There's no right or wrong way to produce this commercial, but trying it with all three techniques will give you an idea of the advantages and limitations of each.

8
Live, On-Air Production

One of the surest tests of production ability is to "pull an airshift." An airshift usually involves announcing and running the console. This is the point at which all other production techniques come into play; thus during the airshift you are using all your skills to produce the flow of sound that marks the unique aspect of your station.

You will, indeed, use all the skills discussed so far. The primary activity in an on-air situation is mixing sound sources through the console. Those sources, of course, go to the transmitter and over the air instead of onto tape. It goes without saying that mistakes are to be avoided at all costs. There are no retakes, and a mistake such as a commercial that doesn't play because of an unrecued cart, which would be a mere nuisance in studio production, is a big problem on the air. For one thing, dead air is sloppy. To make matters worse, the commercial will have to be rescheduled (called a "make good") and, in some cases, an apology given to the angry sponsor.

An overall consideration of on-air production is the rapid transition from source to source. This, really, is the essence of on-air performance. Most fast-moving formats are centered around what's called the tight board, meaning that there is hardly any space (in some cases there is overlap) between sound sources. Experienced on-air producers develop a rhythm, a sixth sense of timing. Developing that sense is largely a matter of practice, although a thorough understanding of the job at hand will help.

TYPICAL AIRSHIFT

On-air production is done by two types of radio station employees: the announcer who runs the board combo, and an engineer who runs a

Figure 8.1. *Working combo.*

board for an announcer. The setup that is used at your station will be largely determined by a combination of station practices and union rules. In general, only the largest markets have a separate engineer running board for the announcer. Combo operations (Fig. 8.1) greatly outnumber engineer/announcer setups, and it is likely that you will be running the board combo in your initial radio jobs.

Duties of the on-air producer

The combo operation is, of course, handled by an on-the-air producer. This type of production is complex and stressful, and usually involves most or all of the following duties:

- Running the console
- Cueing records and tapes
- Riding levels on sound sources going over the air
- Selecting music
- Announcing music, reading commercial copy and, in some cases, news
- Taping programs coming in from networks for delayed broadcast
- Answering the telephone
- Monitoring the Emergency Broadcast System
- Ripping copy off the teletype (known as stripping the wire), checking for important news items, and saving appropriate material for others in the station

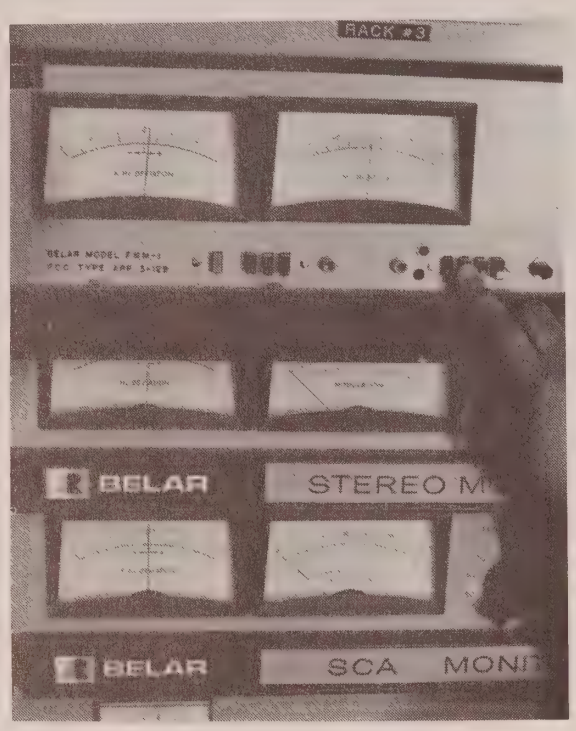


Figure 8.2. *Taking meter readings.*

- Doing general maintenance, such as changing paper on teletypes, cleaning heads, sometimes (in very small stations) doing the vacuuming
- Taking meter readings (Fig. 8.2)
- Keeping the program log. (A sample page from a typical radio station log is shown in Fig. 8.3.)
- Refiling records and tapes
- Playing back news actualities during newscasts
- Off-air production work (sometimes done on the audition channel) when a long program, such as a baseball game or taped show, is airing
- In some cases, assembling and reading the local newscast

If you think these duties would be murderous, you're right. Doing an airshift can be exhausting. While listeners might think that playing records and doing a little talking for 4 hours is an easy job, anyone who's tried it knows that exactly the opposite is true.

Typical schedule

How are these duties integrated into the working day? We've pieced together what is, from our experience, a pretty standard schedule for the morning and evening announcers at a medium-sized station. We've broken down the duties into on-air and off-air tasks.

Both these schedules reflect a typical shift, although it's important to remember that there can be infinite variations on the themes presented.

EST FM90 NEWSRADIO WRVO(FM) OSWEGO, NY, PROGRAM LOG for Thursday December 1, 1983 Page #1 FM90 NEWSRADIO Recording Schedule

TIME	ON	OFF	PROGRAM	TAPE#	TY	SO	ID	SRCE PEV START END MACH# TAPE# SPEED ITEM
5:30A	5:30	5:59	Sign On--NPR + Jazz Service	#1114 m-117	LE	NPR		Use cart--start between 5 & 5:30
5:59A	5:59	6:00	Program Promo		O	L		
			ID Cart		O	L	6:00	
6:00A	6:00	11:58:30	Morning Edition		NS	L		
	6:00	6:09:30	6:00 World and National News		NS	NPR		
	6:09:30	6:10	6:09:30 Local Headlines & Weather		NS	L		
	6:10	6:12	6:10 Sports in Brief		NS	UPI		
	6:12	6:13	6:12 Farm Focus		NS	UPI		
	6:13	6:14	6:13 Commodity Focus		NS	UPI		
	6:14	6:14:30	National Underwriter Ann #48		O	L		
	6:14:30	6:17	6:14 Consumer Time		O	O		
	6:18	6:19	6:18 Weather		NS	L		
	6:19	6:20	6:19 National Weather		NS	UPI		
	6:20	6:29	6:20 National Segment		NS	NPR		
	6:29	6:30	6:29 News Headlines		NS	L		

Figure 8.3. *A typical program log. (Courtesy of WRVO FM, Oswego, N.Y.)*

Morning Schedule

Time (A.M.)	On-Air	Off-Air
5:30–5:59		Arrives at station, warms up transmitter. Checks with news reporter for update on top local stories. Pulls records and makes other preparations for show. Turns on power for console and other equipment.
5:59	Runs sign-on tape with station ID.	
6:00–6:05	Puts network news over air.	Cues up first two records, pulls commercials for first half-hour of show; puts local news intro into cart machine.
6:05–6:07	Hits local news intro cart, cues news reporter, opens reporter's mic, rides level.	Plays reporter's audio cuts.
6:07–6:09	Says hello, introduces show, does some patter about weather, intros first record.	
6:09–6:12	Plays first record.	Puts together sports report from **wire service** and local newspaper.
6:12–6:13	Reads commercial.	
6:14–6:15	Reads weather forecast.	
6:15–6:18	Plays record.	Catches up on log entries, answers phone calls, takes some notifications of weather-related school closings.
6:18–6:19	Plays spot on cart.	Cues up next record, gets next cart, times instrumental opening of next musical selection so that he can "talk up" to the vocal.

(*continued*)

Morning Schedule

Time (A.M.)	On-Air	Off-Air
6:19–6:22	Reads sports report, plays spot for sponsor of sports report.	
6:22–6:25	Plays record.	Records ski report phoned in from correspondent, puts previously played carts away, cues up reel-to-reel tape of "Today in Business" program.
6:25–6:29	Plays "Today in Business" tape.	Gets carts from news reporter for expanded local news report, records local road report phoned in from AAA.
6:29–6:30	Plays commercial, leads into local news report.	

Remember, the announcer is also responsible for introducing the records, and must be entertaining in the bargain.

Evening Schedule

Time (P.M.)	On-Air	Off-Air
6:45–7:00	Runs console for local talk call-in show (screens calls, puts calls over the air, runs second tape delay system).	
7:00–7:05	Network news.	Pulls music for record show.
7:05–7:07	Reads local news headlines and weather, intros her record show.	
7:07–7:10	Plays record.	Starts tape recorder to record network program for delayed broadcast.
7:10–7:12	Gives time and temperature, ad-libs spot from fact sheet.	

(*continued*)

Evening Schedule

Time (P.M.)	On-Air	Off-Air
7:12–7:15	Plays record.	Clears wire (news reporter has gone home) and monitors network for beginning of sports pregame show.
7:15–end of shift	Sports pregame show and game.	Monitors game for insertion of local commercials and station ID, files records, produces several spots.

SOUND OF THE STATION

The primary responsibility of the on-air producer is to provide programming that reinforces the format and goals of the station. The identifying characteristics of the radio station are completely contained in what's known, loosely, as the station's sound. The elements of the sound are not only the styles of music played. Also dictating the sound are the pace, content, and blending of the program sources.

Pace

The schedules shown above really reflect a rather slowly paced station. In many of the more frenetic stations, the program elements come fast and furious—a jingle here, a joke there, and then a spot.

Maintaining a pace means checking yourself to ensure that your on-air segments are not too long (or too short, depending on the station). The rapidity of delivery also will vary according to the pace of the programming at your particular station.

Content

The content of a station is what you say and play. It sounds obvious, but maintaining continuity of content isn't as easy as it might seem. From the standpoint of an on-air producer, continuity of content is maintained by not playing a blaring rock record on an easy-listening station, or by not using a rapid-fire, teenager-type delivery when you are host of the Saturday Night Big Band Program.

Blending of sound sources

Some fast-moving rock stations have almost no on-air silence; in fact, some of these stations frequently combine as many sound sources as possible. The weather, for example, is read over the instrumental lead-in to a record, commercials always have background music, and so forth. There is always another sound source being brought up as a record fades. You would not, however, want to blend sound sources this way on an easy-listening station. A country station may or may not utilize this style of blending sound sources, depending on the station's programming strategy.

Making sure your production values and techniques integrate with the sound of the station is one of the keys to successful on-air production. Following are some other suggestions that may prove helpful also.

SUGGESTIONS FOR LIVE, ON-AIR PRODUCTION

We can't address every specific situation, because content, formats, and equipment vary widely. But here are some general suggestions for on-air work, along with some cautionary recommendations derived from experience (sometimes unpleasant experience).

Console operation

You're usually better off closing keys and zeroing pots. However, with cart machines you may want to leave the pot set at the appropriate level. With turntables, it's a good idea to zero the pot, to avoid cueing over the air. Be extremely careful of pots and keys that control the network lines and telephones. They have a habit of being left open when there's nothing on line. When a signal is fed, it can come to something of a shock to the air person who left the pot open.

Establishing a routine

However you choose to run the console, do it consistently. Get into the habit, for example, of always checking to be sure the mic is not up on the console before you say anything. Incidentally, make it a habit *never to swear while you're in the radio station.* If you make this a personal rule, you'll never let an obscenity slip over the air. The problems engendered by swearing over the air can be pretty serious, and it does happen, so make it part of your routine to banish cuss words from your vocabulary the moment you get near a mic. Mics can be relied on to be open at exactly the wrong time.

One other helpful routine is always to make sure that the turntable is set

at the correct speed. If you mix $33\frac{1}{3}$ and 45 rpm recordings, checking the control, as a matter of routine, can save you considerable embarrassment.

One other caution: Check the patchbay for patch cords that might have been inserted, and make sure that everything that is supposed to normal does normal.

Planning in advance

A good console operator has to be like a good pool player, who thinks several shots in advance to avoid getting into the position of not having a good shot. Think the same way in pulling an airshift. Pull as much music in advance as you can; get as many carts ready as possible. One phone call, or any other interruption, can set you back significantly; and once you're "in the hole," it's hard to climb back out.

Being aware of false endings

A **false ending** on a record is music that sounds as though it's going to wrap up—but doesn't. The announcer, by this time, has probably started talking and will step all over the real end of the song. Sometimes commercials suffer from the same problem. You can avoid embarrassment and confusion by clearly labeling program material that has false endings. You might write FALSE ENDING, for example, right on the record label, or on the cart label.

Many stations label carts with other endings. For example, if a cart ends with music fading out, the words FADES OUT are added to the cart label. Often the last three or four words of commercial script are written on the label. This can be helpful to the operator in determining when a cart is coming to a close. It makes running a tight board easier and also avoids those embarrassing moments of silence known in the trade as "dead air."

Recueing carts

We would estimate (this is pure guesswork) that a good 50 percent of on-air foulups are caused by carts that have not, for one reason or another, been recued. If you must remove a cart from a cart machine before it has been recued, make sure to put it in a special place where you'll remember to recue it before putting it back in the rack.

Listening to the air monitor

It's a good idea to keep the air monitor playing loudly. A low volume from the air monitor won't always allow you to hear, for example, the network

line leaking over the air, or a scratch in the disc that is playing over the air. It is also important to monitor the station's broadcast through the "off-air" or "air" monitor source. Usually, audio consoles allow you to choose between program, audition, and off-air sources. Though most experienced producers know this, many inexperienced operators have been surprised to find that the program they thought was being aired without a hitch was not broadcast at all because a patch was thrown or some other technical problem occurred without their realizing it. Why? Because the neophyte operators were listening to the program output of the board instead of the off-air source.

Clearing equipment

Don't let tapes and carts stay on the equipment; clear them out as soon as possible. If you don't, there will come a time when you need a tape machine in a hurry and there won't be one available. Also, you'll be more likely to put a previously played cart on the air accidentally. Clearing the equipment as you go along is one of the best habits you can develop for efficient on-air production.

Planning for the worst

Nowhere is a mistake more evident than in radio, where an embarrassing silence underscores the fact that the on-air producer has lost control. One way to mitigate this problem when it occurs is to keep emergency material on standby (a 1-minute public service announcement, a long record, etc.).

You will also want to prepare for engineering difficulties. Learn how to find and run a mic cord in case the control room combo mic fails and you have to run another one (assuming, of course, that there are no union restrictions barring you from doing this).

APPLICATIONS

Situation 1/The Problem. An announcer's music show ends at 7 o'clock, when she has to hit the network. One problem she's been encountering is that the end of the show has been sloppy: always having to pot down the last record in midsong to hit the net.

One possible solution. The announcer adopted an upbeat instrumental for her theme song and started the cut, which ran 3 minutes, 20 seconds, at 7:46:40. She didn't put the cut over the air immediately, though: The selec-

tion was "dead-potted" until the previous record ended. The announcer then began her outro patter and faded up the dead-potted cut, talking over it.

Because the instrumental—which had a climactic ending—was back-timed to end perfectly, the announcer was able to hit the net cleanly and give a definite ending to her show.

(Many announcers who have a standard theme keep it on cart.)

Situation 2/The Problem. The station had only two cart machines in the control room, but a great deal of the programming was on cart. On-air people had to pull carts out of the machines before they were recued, to free up the cart machine. Unfortunately, these carts had a habit of being played over the air in an unrecued state.

One possible solution. The program director (who couldn't talk the station owner into buying new cart machines) installed a rack clearly labeled UNRECUED CARTS. Air people were instructed to develop a routine of always placing the unrecued carts in the rack, and to recue those carts as soon as they had a chance.

Exercises

1. Do a mock airshift that includes these elements: three record cuts, two weather reports, a commerical or public service announcement on cart, and at least 15 seconds of patter.

   Your airshift should use three styles:

- ☐ Dance band music and a middle-of-the-road approach
- ☐ Fast-paced rock
- ☐ Laid-back, album-oriented rock

   Don't worry so much about the quality of announcing, because that's not the real purpose of this exercise. You should focus on production values. For example, would you talk over the instrumental introduction of a rock cut? How about the dance band?

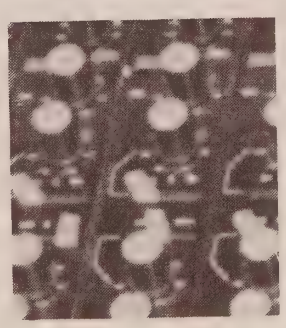
2. Pick three local stations and describe their sound in terms of production values. Listen for things like music and talk overlapping. Does the announcer talk only for a couple of seconds at a time? Or, conversely, does the announcer spend extended periods in patter?

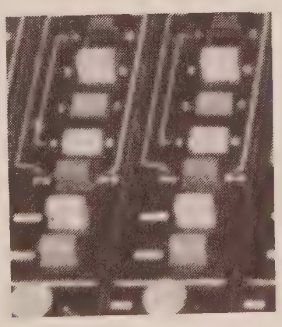
   Write down your observations and discuss how the production values reinforce the sound of the stations.

3. This exercise is done strictly to time. You must fit all the elements into a 10-minute segment:

- ☐ Exactly 1 minute of reading news copy.
- ☐ Exactly 1 minute of commercial copy.
- ☐ A record cut from 2 to 4 minutes long.
- ☐ Exactly 1 minute of community calendar listings read from the local paper.
- ☐ Enough weather to get you through the remaining time.
- ☐ Dead-pot an instrumental record while you are reading copy; the record must end exactly when your 10 minutes is up.

PART THREE
THE APPLICATIONS





9
Achieving An Effect

If you'll permit us to stretch a point a bit, think of Chapters 6, 7, and 8 as something of an art lesson in which you learned the basic brush strokes. It's now time to explore ways to create light, shadow, substance, and mood.

As a radio producer, you will be called on to create a variety of effects, utilizing the basic skills explained previously. But producing an effect calls for more than a learned-by-rote recall of mechanics: It involves imagination, experimentation, and a certain amount of trial and error.

This is not to say that producing an effect is entirely a "seat of the pants" affair. There are specific techniques that must be mastered, and technical expertise must be matched with creativity. This chapter serves as a bridge between the first eight chapters, which dealt with techniques and mechanics, and the chapters that follow on radio drama and dramatic elements in radio production, commercial production, and news and public affairs production. This chapter also reviews many of the elements discussed earlier and touches on some of the aspects to be dealt with later. The mix of elements is important, because the marriage of technology and art—the ability to create an effect—is the heart of radio production.

WHAT IS AN EFFECT?

When we refer to the overall mood, impact, and appeal of a radio production, we use the term "effect." We don't mean a specific sound effect (such as the screeching of a car's brakes).

Modern communication theory points out that getting a message across depends on more than the validity of the message. Reaching people with a message also involves pulling their emotional strings—creating a mood

of excitement, perhaps, or a feeling of identification. These emotional activators often can be turned on and off by radio production techniques.

A commercial to spur ticket sales for a football team, for instance, would certainly seek to create a mood of excitement: the sound of a kickoff, followed by the roar of the crowd, supported with upbeat, vibrant music. To create this example, the producer would have to know how to dub in sound effects, either taking them from a sound effects record played back on a turntable or recording the desired sound at a game, using basic microphone techniques. All the production techniques, of course, hinge on proper routing of the signals through a console. Essentially, the producer would use production skills to assemble and form the structure of the commercial, but an understanding of creating an effect would be necessary to produce the subtle message, the *nuances,* which give impact and drama to the message.

KINDS OF EFFECT

The focus of the message—and the effect you want to create—won't always be the same, even in quite similar situations. Assume, for example, that the radio station's sales manager, who needs a commercial for a restaurant, wants your help in creating an effective 60-second spot.

Soft music, you say? The sound of tinkling glasses, coupled with a mellow-voiced announcer? Perhaps. If the restaurant is an elegant one (or tries to be), then your choice of soft music would be correct. But restaurants are as different as people. Digging a little deeper, you may discover that this particular client's restaurant has an ethnic flair; if so, might a polka, waltz, or other specialty selection be more effective? Perhaps this is a fast-food establishment. You, the producer, would most likely seek to convey a sense of fast action; thus upbeat, quick-tempo music would be the logical choice.

Music, like any other production element, must *support the theme.* You will be wise to etch this principle deeply within your thinking, because straying from the overall theme is the most common mistake of the novice radio producer. Every production element must support the theme, or it will detract from the message.

HOW PRODUCTION ELEMENTS SUPPORT A THEME

The upbeat music in our fast-food restaurant commercial conveys a specific impression: that of speed, excitement, and vibrancy. This production element *supports* the theme of a message for a fast-food establishment; it would certainly *detract* from a commercial for an elegant eatery.

Such themes aren't always so readily apparent. There's no obvious

guideline on how to produce a commercial for a personal computer, for example. In fact, the approach that is eventually settled on might evolve after months of sophisticated market research aimed at discovering what approaches trigger the emotions of "typical" computer buyers. Obviously, such intricate planning won't be left up to you, the producer. On many occasions, however, the sales manager and his client know exactly what mood and effect they want. It will be up to you to achieve that effect, and to choose production elements that support the theme. There are many production elements other than music and sound effects, but let's focus on those two for the time being. Later in this chapter, we'll discuss sound quality, voice quality, and so on, and explore their proper use. There are many ways in which the production elements of music and sound effects support a theme and bolster the message. Here are some brief examples illustrating how these elements fit into the overall scheme of things.

Creating excitement

Soft drink commercials depend on the capacity of radio production to create excitement to make their product appeal to a market that seeks thrills, activity, and youthful enjoyment of life. The music chosen—apart from the lyrics, which tout the benefits of the beverage in question—must support this mood of excitement.

Think, too, of the music you've heard at the introduction of sports play-by-play programs. Was the music a leisurely, sentimental ballad? Of course not. It was up-tempo, hard-driving music that implied: *The program that follows is going to be a fast-moving, exciting event.*

Creating immediate identification

What does the sound of a stopwatch ticking conjure up in your mind? If you're like millions of other Americans, you will think immediately of the CBS News program "Sixty Minutes." And, we're certain, that's exactly what the producers would like you to think of.

Why? Because the familiar stopwatch theme is one element that immediately distinguishes "Sixty Minutes" from its competition and creates a certain amount of loyalty among viewers and listeners. In any medium, that is the name of the game. The sponsor of a commercial wants that commercial to stand out; the producer of a talk show wants listeners to distinguish that show from the competition and to have some sort of "tag" they can identify with.

An important point: Whatever production element is chosen for the task of creating immediate identification, it must support the overall message. The sound of cannons firing, for example, would certainly attract attention, but wouldn't do much to demonstrate that the upcoming news program will be important and dignified. In fact, such confusion within the message would

detract from the identification factor; listeners to a news show that opened with the cannon shots probably wouldn't mentally link the show and the signature.

Evoking an emotion

What does the sound of automobile horns blaring mean to you? Chances are, it evokes the feelings you experienced the last time you sat, hot and frustrated, in a traffic jam. The producer of a commercial for an airline trip to a Caribbean island could utilize this factor effectively. Sound effects are one of the most effective tools for evoking an emotion.

Summary of effects

The goal of radio production is to achieve an effect. The goal of achieving an effect is to be able to reach a certain group with a message. In many cases, the group and the message may be spelled out for you by an advertising manager and/or the client who wants you to produce a commercial. A more complete discussion is offered in Chapter 11.

When reporting to the producer of a news or sports program, you will be asked to utilize production elements that support the show's theme and create listener identification. As we discussed in Chapter 1, the producer in modern radio is responsible for reinforcing the station's particular "sound," the quality that distinguishes it from its competitors up and down the dial.

Remember, you may be responsible for production in a variety of different jobs at various radio stations. You may be a staff announcer who produces commercials and public service announcements after your airshift (the airshift is also, of course, a product of radio production). You may be a news reporter responsible for piecing together a half-hour's worth of news items and integrating them into an overall theme. Your job in the sales department at a small station might involve hands-on production. You may be the program director, in charge of ensuring that everything that goes out over the air strengthens the format, the "sound."

But regardless of the job title, you will be using the basic production equipment and techniques described in the preceding chapters and using them to achieve the effects discussed so far in this chapter. And, as we've seen, you will be utilizing various production elements.

HOW A PRODUCER UTILIZES PRODUCTION ELEMENTS

We have briefly touched on how the production elements of music and sound effects are used to create an effect. Other elements can serve the same purpose. We now examine each element and show how and why it creates an effect.

Music

The observation that music reaches deep into the human psyche won't surprise you. Music has moved men to march to war and waltzed couples to matrimony. Music of all types is instantly available to the radio producer. The sources from which you will draw music include:

- Your station's general airplay record library. The station has paid a fee to various licensing agencies for use of the music, and you are able to use these records in your production.
- Certain types of records for which you must pay per "needle drop," that is, whenever a cut from such a record is dubbed onto the tape used in a production. This situation is more common at recording studios that are not affiliated with a radio station and do not pay a licensing fee for general airplay music.
- **Music beds** supplied by a national advertiser for use by local affiliated merchants or businesses. For example, a lawn mower manufacturer might supply to its distributors a commercial in which the company's jingle is included at the beginning and end of a 60-second spot, with a 15-second "hole" of background music—a bed—over which an announcer would read copy for the local merchant's store. (More on this in Chapter 11.) These cooperative or "co-op" advertising materials come in a wide range of structures.
- Original music composed specifically for a certain purpose, such as the type of jingle music used in "beds" but also including jingles produced locally for businesses and music composed for use in themes of shows or productions. You may, from time to time, become involved in the recording of such music; that aspect of radio production is examined in Chapter 14.

Music is such an evocative tool that it is used in a great number of radio production tasks; unfortunately, it is also frequently misused and overused. Here are some brief rules of thumb to help you, the producer, use music properly in the aesthetic context.

DO use music:

- When you can find a logical reason to do so; when it creates a mood and reinforces a theme.
- When the music has a logical purpose AND fits into the format of your station. A hard-rock music background for a public service announcement will not complement the sound of an easy-listening station. As discussed in Chapter 1, the producer must respect the integrity of the station's format.

DO NOT use music:

- Strictly as a reflex. Many times you'll be better off without it. Suppose, for instance, every other station in town uses a brief musical opening

(sometimes called a "stinger") for newscasts. Do you, as a producer, feel compelled to do the same? No, of course not; a "cold" opening can certainly be effective and, in this case, will set you apart from the competition.

- Indiscriminately. This warning applies specifically to the novice radio producer who is tempted to utilize currently popular music within announcements or other productions regardless of whether it serves to reinforce the message.

A final note: Be very cautious of using vocals as background for a produced announcement. While lyrics that proclaim something to the effect of "I'll be your friend forever, just give me a call . . ." might tempt the producer of a public service announcement for a community health agency, mixing vocals with a voice-over can make both lyrics and announcer unintelligible. Cross-fading and other technical operations, however, can mitigate the problem in some circumstances.

Sound effects

The example of blaring horns used in an advertisement for a Caribbean vacation shows the value of appropriate sound effects. (Note the word *appropriate.*) A sound effect is generally considered to be any sound element other than music or speech. Sound effects (SFX) can come from:

- Special sound effects libraries; records the radio station purchases and buys the rights to use. Sound effects libraries are almost always on disc (rather than tape) because of the need to access material throughout the recording.
- Sound effects recorded by the producer. This practice sounds simpler than it really is. The old-time radio trick of crackling cellophane to simulate the sound of flames often sounds exactly like crackling cellophane. A door slamming, as another example, won't always sound like a door slamming. With certain microphone placements, and certain doors, it can sound like a gunshot, instead. Thus recording your own sound effects will take some experimenting, both in terms of producing the sound and in placing the microphone to record it.

Regardless of how a sound effect is produced, its appropriate use can add to the message. Inappropriate use can make the message seem hackneyed, amateurish, and off the mark. There are two good reasons for using sound effects.

DO use sound effects:

- To save time and words. Another vacation-oriented commercial might start with a blast of wintery wind to reinforce the message. Use of the sound effect has saved the producer some unneeded verbiage; there's no need for an announcer to say: "Don't you hate winter and the latest

stretch of miserable weather?" The sound effect lasting only a second or two has created the desired image.

- To inject drama. Audiences have come to expect a bit of drama in all media. A bit of drama that reinforces your message can grab the attention of your target listeners. Can you picture, for example, the kind of audience and the kind of message that would be matched up in a commercial that features the sound effect of a baby crying? Of a sports car engine roaring? Of a rocket taking off?

DO NOT use sound effects:

- Just because they are there. The producer should not even consider the use of a sound effect in the absence of definite need and purpose for that effect.

Keep in mind that overuse of sound effects is one of the more common mistakes made by newcomers to radio production. You will surely mark yourself as an amateur by falling into this trap.

Sound effects are an excellent production tool, but if they're used just for the sake of using them, they are inappropriate and can detract from the message. Use a sound effect when it's logical and serves a purpose; the chapters on radio drama and commercial production expand on the ways sound effects communicate a message effectively.

Coloration of sound

Coloration of sound is a nebulous quality that cannot always be singled out. This production element is difficult to define.

There's only one sure way to clarify the concept: You will understand it when you hear it. Eventually, too, you'll utilize sound coloration techniques to produce an effect in your own production work.

Perhaps some examples will be helpful. Compare the overall sound quality of a screaming DJ type of radio program to a radio broadcast of a news and public affairs interview program on a station with a more leisurely format. You'll know there's a difference, even though you can't quite articulate it.

Well, one reason the screaming DJ maintains such an intense sound is the electronic *compression* of the signal; this is done quite scientifically, we might add, and involves boosting the volume of softer sounds, so that the whole presentation is intense. (And so, the program director hopes, the signal will stand out more than the signals of competing stations when the listener twists the dial.) Heavy compression would not be appropriate in a slow-moving talk show because the machinery would insist on boosting the periods of silence between questions and answers.

Compression is just one example of a process by which sound is altered, thereby achieving coloration of sound. A mild **echo** is often electronically

applied; this effect is covered more thoroughly in Chapter 14. FM stations, which transmit a high-resolution signal, often favor high-quality microphones that reproduce a wide spectrum of sounds, including breath and mouth noises of the announcer, making the voice seem very close up and intimate.

Microphones can have a powerful effect on the coloration of sound. As you remember from the discussion of sound quality (or timbre) in Chapter 5, the way sound patterns are reproduced affects the way we perceive those patterns. Often, the coloration is in fact a desirable type of **distortion.** Examples of sound coloration are presented in the chapters dealing with drama, commercials, and remote and sports production. Some technical methods of achieving coloration are discussed in the chapter on advanced radio production.

A radio producer should be prepared to confront the coloration concept. Don't be surprised when the program director asks you to produce a "brighter" sound or requests a promotional spot with a more "personal" feel.

Timing and pace

Whether you are producing a music program, a news show, or a commercial, timing and pace will directly affect the mood and the message. This production element is one of the most critical in the entire spectrum of radio production. Yet timing and pace have some effects you might not, at first thought, be aware of. Try this comparison:

- Listen to a commercial for securities or other investments. (Such commercials are quite common on radio talk shows, especially talk shows dealing with business issues.) Note the very slow, deliberate pacing. Why? Because we've developed a negative image of "fast talkers." The announcer who sells us major investments must be trusted.
- Contrast the foregoing approach with soft drink commercials. Trust, here, is really not a factor. An image of a lifestyle is being sold, and that image is generally one of a youthful and fast-moving crowd.

We cite these examples in the hope that you will develop a critical ear when it comes to determining the timing and pace of your own work. Keep in mind, always, that the pace creates an effect and must reinforce the message.

Walter Winchell, the legendary broadcaster whose radio career peaked in the Great Depression era, entered radio after experience as a newspaper gossip columnist. Initially he was given little chance of success because radio announcers at the time were expected to have a slow, mellifluous delivery. Winchell, however, broke the rules with a rapid-fire, stacatto delivery: "Good evening, Mr. and Mrs. North and South America, and all the ships at sea, let's go to press . . . FLASH! . . ." His delivery was breathless, punctuated

with the dit-dit-dit of a telegraph key, *and it accomplished exactly what he wanted.* It implied that Winchell had a fast-moving program, figuratively grabbing the listener by the lapels and shouting "Wait 'til you hear this!" That is, timing and pace reinforced Winchell's message, in much the same way that the pregnant pauses and dramatic delivery of Howard Cosell have become part of his style and persuasive talent.

Veteran broadcaster Paul Harvey is an acknowledged master of timing, and his technique will help us to make an important distinction. While Harvey keeps up a varied, energetic pace, he also captivates his audience by use of the well-*timed* punch line, usually preceded by a dramatic pause. "And the man woke up the next morning to find," Harvey might say, "that he'd been spraying the annoying mosquito not with insecticide . . . (pause) . . . but, with . . . (agonizing pause) . . . a can . . . of *blue spray paint!*"

Timing and pace are also major elements in production of a music program. In many of the "laid-back" species of FM stations the whole format is built around low-key timing and pace. Compare that with the frenetic, nonstop approach of the screaming DJ AM station. Both are trying to project an image.

Voice quality

This production element doesn't necessarily imply a qualitative difference between good and bad voices. "Voice quality" is the overall image that an announcer's voice projects.

Often, a producer chooses the announcer to be used for a particular production. Sometimes the producer is assigned a particular task and must use a designated voice (or his or her own voice) to maximum effect, perhaps making some subtle changes in delivery.

In any event, matching a proper voice and delivery to the message at hand is the important element here. Many of the aspects of selection and delivery are reasonably obvious. A news moderator's voice calls for a measure of dignity. A spot designed to convince young people to shop at a particular store might well benefit from a young voice, an intimate "chummy" delivery. Think of other examples. Do advertisements for medicines generally carry a strong, authoritative voice? Why?

Another aspect of voice quality is the lack of distraction. Voices used on the air, it's generally agreed, should not have defects (not necessarily pathological speech defects) that will detract from the message. One of the most common distractions is improper breathing on the part of the announcer. Overly "breathy" voices, except when they are a well-known novelty, sound amateurish. Often, inexperienced announcers can be heard gasping for air between phrases. Such gasping sounds might not be apparent in everyday speech, but a mic can be merciless. The cure for this is to maintain generous breath support—a good "tankful" of air, instead of trying to talk until all

breath is expended. Plan where to take breaths; breathe at natural pauses in the copy. Don't just read until you can't read any more.

Sound of words

A radio producer often is responsible for writing the copy that is read on the air. We'll address specific copy techniques in appropriate chapters (notably news and commercials), but one point must be considered here: writing for the ear.

Words can evoke moods. Note how the words "dine" and "eat" create different moods. Likewise with "invest" and "buy." The physical sound of the words also has an effect. "Businesses" is not a great word for the ear because the three *s* sounds make the word hissy and unattractive. Doesn't "firms" sound better?

In summary, production elements are features that are useful in creating an effect and reinforcing a message. Many are obvious; some require a bit of thought. All have an impact on how a radio production will affect an audience.

Production elements also blend into one total package; that's obvious because most radio productions contain a variety of elements. In judging various elements, you, the producer, must always determine whether they make sense within the context of the message. Does this sound effect get the point across? Will the music make the message stronger, or will it be a distraction? Does the announcer's voice convey the right message? Do the words convey the full message? Are the words written for the ear? The key to successful production is not leaving these decisions up to chance.

USING ELEMENTS OF SOUND TO ACHIEVE AN EFFECT

Up until now, our discussion has been pretty much on the theoretical level. At this point, we'll consider exactly how the production techniques you've learned from preceding chapters come into play. The job of a producer usually involves being half artist and half technician. You will use highly sophisticated electronic equipment to translate what you want to do into the technical form of a finished product, something that can easily be played back over the air.

Problems in production often arise when the producer thinks he or she is too much an artist to have to bother with the technical side of things. By the same token, production values suffer when the producer enamored with the complex equipment forgets that he or she is *in the business of communicating*. But just as a musician must know how to blow a horn and finger

valves properly, he also must have the artistic capability of playing notes to convey meaning; while machines can be programmed to play trumpets, they generally don't do a very good job.

With that in mind, let's see how some simple operations are performed by someone who is a radio *producer,* not just a person who knows how to run the equipment.

Putting voice on tape

You have learned the chain of events that allows you to record a voice on a tape recorder. Now, start thinking like a producer. You want to record a two-person news interview program (one moderator and a guest). Will you use the same type of mic utilized for recording classical music? Do you need the same type of quality and pickup pattern? What about the effect of the equipment on the participants? While the conveniently located studio mic suspended from a boom would do the job, will this large instrument hanging in midair—between the moderator and the guest—have an intimidating effect? You bet it will.

People unfamiliar with radio generally regard the microphone with about the same attitude they have for a dentist's drill. As a producer, you must take this into account. You are likely to find that the best results are achieved with two mics mounted inconspicuously on table stands, or even with two good-quality lavaliers. There's more to selection of a microphone than the technical considerations discussed in Chapter 5. See if you can come up with some other examples.

Recording music on tape

You've progressed to the point of being able to cue a record, start the turntable, and route the signal through the console and into a tape recorder. Now, let's imagine an actual production.

You have been assigned the task of cutting a 30-second public service announcement for a local community health hotline. The music you want to use contains some lyrics and some entirely instrumental portions.

The lyric you want to use is "I'll be your friend forever, just give me a call. . . ." But you can't just run the song under the announcement, for two reasons:

1. There are more lyrics that follow the ones you want to use at the beginning of the spot, and they will make your reading of the script unintelligible.
2. You want the spot to end with a musical climax: to be precise, the instrumental climax that just happens to be at the end of this 3-minute piece of music.

How would a producer working combo approach this dilemma? One possible strategy is to record the final 25 seconds of the song onto cartridge. Since you know (by the time on the record label or by timing the piece yourself) that the cut is exactly 3 minutes long, you would simply start the record and the timer simultaneously, and start the cartridge recording when the timer reaches 2:35. You have determined that the opening lyric takes about 9 seconds (and you have also timed the copy you will be reading). At this point, you could recue the cart, and follow this sequence:

- Start the turntable and fade up the turntable on the console. Remember, if you open the turntable pot before the turntable has been switched on, you will get electronic noise from the switch. Of course you've already taken levels and know how high to put the volume.
- Start the timer as the record makes its portion of a turn to bring the first sound-bearing groove into contact with the stylus.
- Record the first 5 seconds of the lyric.
- Start the cart 5 seconds into the record, before you open the mic. Remember, you have 4 more seconds before the lyric will finish. The cart is now set to finish exactly when you want it to—30 seconds from the beginning of the spot.
- Open the mic.

When the important line of lyrics ends, begin to fade down the turntable and to read your copy.

While reading the copy execute a *cross-fade.* That is, fade up the cart as you fade down the turntable. Done gradually, and underneath the cover of your voice, the cross-fade may not be detectable. Remember, at this point the music should not overpower your voice.

When you have finished reading your copy, bring up the music to the correct level on the VU meter to finish the spot.

You've created a perfectly timed spot that includes the beginning and end you want. And all the production elements reinforce the message and create an effect. In particular, the music reinforced the message. The result was a package that put the point across, with all the production elements enhancing the message.

(Incidentally, another way of doing things that might prove easier is to record 40 seconds of the song on cart; that way you won't have to start the cart during the spot; however, you will have to keep accurate time before the spot begins.)

APPLICATIONS

Situation 1/The Problem. The producer was given a tough and very important assignment: Produce a commercial for men's cologne. The talent—a

woman—seemed to read the copy correctly, but the client didn't like the spot, even though he couldn't spell out what didn't ring true about it. His only comment was: "It doesn't sound like she's talking to *me.*"

One possible solution. After giving it some thought, the producer changed microphones. Using a higher quality mic with a cardioid pickup pattern, he instructed the talent to move in closer. The result: greater "presence," and a more intimate feel for the commercial.

Situation 2/The Problem. The producer at an FM station was in charge of preparing a public service announcement calling for air pollution abatement. According to the script, the announcer was to read copy outdoors with birds chirping in the background. But when this was tried, the portable equipment didn't produce very good quality—the birds, which really were chirping in the park where the spot was taped, were barely audible on the final product.

One possible solution. Realizing that the way things sound to the ear is not necessarily how they sound to the microphone, the producer recorded only the birds on one tape. This gave her the option of varying the volume when she mixed the announcer and the background sound effects through the console.

The announcer's voice track presented another problem. It sounded terrible when recorded on the portable equipment, whose quality just couldn't match the studio mics. This lack of quality would be sorely apparent when the spot was played on air. But recording the announcer's copy in the studio made the whole spot sound phony. It sounded not like an announcer standing outdoors, but like a studio recording mixed with sound effects.

The producer remembered what she had learned about the physics of sound and realized that the problems stemmed from the microphone being in a very "lively" part of the studio, near several bare walls. Some experimentation resulted in the relocation of the microphone in a "dead" area. Without the sound bouncing off the walls, the sound was flatter, and the listener could much more readily imagine that the entire spot had been recorded outdoors.

Now the producer was finding that she could achieve the effect she wanted, within the technical restrictions of radio equipment. One problem remained, however. While the bird noises she'd recorded in the park worked well for the background, they weren't of sufficient quality to be brought up full, as she had wanted to do in the beginning of the spot. She felt the production needed to open with a couple seconds of solid sound effects, which would then fade down under the announcer.

She solved this problem by finding the appropriate sound effect in the station's sound effects library. The only entry she could find ("Bird Calls") would not have been appropriate for the background of the entire spot, but

was perfect for an attention-getting opening. To create the whole package, she used the bird call from the disk and cross-faded it to the ambient sound she had recorded.

The ultimate result? A high-quality public service announcement that achieved the desired effect.

Exercises

1. Construct a script for a 60-second public service announcement. For the purposes of this exercise, be sure to include:

- One sound effect
- A music bed
- Narration

Be sure that everything in your PSA has a purpose. Nothing must seem to be thrown in for its own sake.

2. Under the supervision of your instructor, produce the PSA.

3. If a music library is available to you, have class members select music they feel is appropriate for:

- The opening of a news program
- Background for a beer commercial
- Background for a fashion show

Discuss these selections, and also discuss class members' impressions about the three scenarios. (Conceptions of a good beer commercial, for instance, will vary from person to person.) Note the difference in class members' conceptions of both the scenarios and the proper selection of music.

4. Cast celebrities for voice-over parts in the following hypothetical radio productions. (Remember, the celebrities will be heard and not seen.) Write down your choices and your reasons for making them.

- A commercial for aspirin
- A commercial for an elegant restaurant
- A public service announcement for saving wildlife
- The part of an insane murderer in a radio drama
- A commercial for high-priced, somewhat frivolous women's accessories

Discuss your reasoning with class members and your instructor. During your discussions, try to state as directly as possible exactly what it is about each celebrity's voice that would create the proper effects and get the various messages across.

10
Drama And Dramatic Elements In Radio Production

The purpose of this chapter is not to demonstrate what is almost an obsolete art form, but rather to serve as an introduction to the principles of radio drama that are present in other forms of radio production.

This very short chapter contains only one exercise. Instead of the usual complement of exercises, we have provided a full-length radio drama in Appendix C. Production of the drama can serve as a class project; merely reading it will give you an insight into the structure of drama and dramatic elements. If time doesn't permit (production of a radio drama is a big project), the exercise at the end of this chapter will suffice.

Radio drama per se is not very common any more, and that's unfortunate. Old-time radio drama, as its devotees can attest, involved the listener in a way that television cannot involve a viewer. A radio drama creates images in the mind, which can furnish a much more vivid picture than even the most sophisticated television production company.

Radio drama, too, is an excellent way to learn the mechanics of editing, miking, and mixing. You'll find the production of the drama provided in Appendix C to be exceptionally taxing and also quite instructional. An understanding of radio drama also provides an insight into techniques of inserting dramatic elements into commercials and—in limited applications—into news and public affairs programs. That's the essential focus of this chapter.

THE STRUCTURE OF DRAMA

Drama is a composition that tells a story through action and dialogue. It generally involves a conflict: person versus person, or person versus society. A drama, in its broadest form, has a plot; usually the plot has a

beginning, middle, and end. A drama includes dramatic techniques, such as suspense and exposition.

Let's review the description above and see how each term relates to radio drama and dramatic elements in radio production.

Action

Because radio is not a visual medium, action must be portrayed through sound. Action in a prizefight, for example, would be dramatized on radio with the ringing of the bell, the roar of the crowd, and the smacking of gloves. A description of the fight could be provided by the dialogue.

Dialogue

Spoken words are very important in radio drama, for obvious reasons. Words provide most of the information in a scene and describe most of the action. The prizefight scene, for example, could be fleshed out with dialogue from a ring announcer, and/or conversation in a fighter's corner.

Plot

The plot is the story line. All action and dialogue must advance the plot; that is, each scene of action and/or dialogue must serve to move the plot along and to reinforce the message.

Beginning, middle, and end

Drama usually has a sequence of events and a conclusion. Although dramatic elements within radio production don't always have a complete "beginning, middle, and end" sequence, there almost always is some sort of resolution, or solving of the problem. In dramatic terms, this is known as the *denouement,* which is the resolution of a conflict.

Conflict

Conflict in drama doesn't always have to be a struggle between two people, which is what we usually call *melodrama.* Conflict can consist of a person's struggle to overcome headache pain, a type of conflict that surfaces frequently in radio commercials. (Resolution, of course, would come from the sponsor's headache remedy.)

Suspense

Suspense is what entices us to keep listening. To achieve suspense, plot writers refrain from providing conflict and resolution at the same time. Will Mrs.

Smith's headache pain be cured? We'll usually have to wait through about 20 seconds of product pitch to find the answer.

Exposition

Details must be revealed in a logical and realistic fashion. The process of imparting information is known as exposition, and it's an important part of all types of drama.

Think about it: It's a very difficult task to gracefully give the audience all the information it needs to understand an unfolding scene. In plays written centuries ago, a popular form of exposition consisted of two maids, who through supposedly casual conversation set the scene while dusting the master's house. This type of exposition, a clumsy recitation of facts, came to be known as "feather duster" exposition, and is usually avoided.

More graceful exposition techniques usually involve a short dramatic scene. Let's say the producer of a radio commercial wants to set a scene that supports a family's need to buy a home computer to help a child in math homework. Would it serve the client's purposes to have mother and father—in the role of "maids"—discuss Junior's poor report card? Perhaps, but the scene could be set more effectively and quickly with, for example, a short classroom scene, where Junior demonstrates his lack of mathematical acumen by botching a problem at the chalkboard.

ROLE OF DRAMATIC ELEMENTS IN RADIO PRODUCTION

While you may find little occasion to produce the kind of full-scale drama included in Appendix C, you will certainly have the opportunity to incorporate dramatic elements in such areas as commercials and news.

Radio drama in commercials

"Oh, my head is killing me!"

How often have you heard that line, or one similar to it, in an advertisement for a headache remedy? It's the start of a common drama, a slice of life, so to speak, which can be played out effectively. Note how much more effective it is to use the dramatic scene than to have the announcer prattle on about the fact that Mrs. Smith has a headache. Drama, in effect, serves two purposes in a radio commercial, to capture attention and to compress time.

Capturing attention. All of us are interested in how life unfolds. Why else do soap operas and other similar dramatic forms draw such rapt interest?

In the radio commercial, a dramatic scene serves to engage the listener

Client: Oswego County Savings Bank
Job Description: 60-second spot
Media: WSGO
Date: December 1979

Creative Communications
Advertising and Public Relations
Box 1024 □ Oswego, New York 13126

(PHIL WHISTLING "DECK THE HALL." SOUND EFFECTS OF PAPER RUSTLING AND BOX BEING SMASHED ABOUT ON TABLE . . . SOUND EFFECT CARRIES THROUGHOUT.)

LEW: HEY . . . WHAT ARE YOU DOING?

PHIL: I AM BUSILY WRAPPING A WONDERFUL CHRISTMAS GIFT IN A DECORATIVE FASHION. HOW DO YOU LIKE THE LITTLE . . . OOPS, I CUT A LITTLE HOLE IN THE TABLE-CLOTH THERE. OH WELL . . . I'LL PUT A VASE THERE AND NO ONE WILL NOTICE.

LEW: LOOK, YOU'RE WASTING YOUR TIME WITH THAT MESS. IF YOU WOULD JUST. . . .

PHIL (INTERRUPTS): WAIT. PUT YOUR FINGER RIGHT THERE AND HOLD IT. THEN WHEN I SAY "LET GO," TAKE IT AWAY REAL FAST. OK . . . LET GO.

(SOUND OF VIOLENT RUMPLING OF PAPER AND SMASHING OF BOX. GIFT ENDS UP ON FLOOR.)

LEW: LOOK . . . INSTEAD OF GOING THROUGH ALL THAT, WHY DON'T YOU TAKE YOUR GIFTS TO OSWEGO COUNTY SAVINGS BANK?

PHIL: OSWEGO COUNTY SAVINGS WANTS MY GIFTS?

LEW: THEY'LL WRAP THEM FOR YOU. FREE. THEN YOU CAN PICK THEM UP IN TIME FOR CHRISTMAS . . . ALL NEATLY WRAPPED.

PHIL: THEY'LL DO THAT FOR ME?

LEW: YOU AND ANYONE ELSE WHO BRINGS IN THEIR GIFTS BEFORE DECEMBER 16TH.

PHIL: YOU DON'T SAY? HEY, YOU DON'T SUPPOSE THEY KNOW HOW TO MAKE A NICE SCOTCH TAPE BOW DO YOU? I WAS JUST ABOUT TO. . . . (FADE OUT)

Figure 10.1. *This script for a commercial uses dramatic elements to attract attention. (Script courtesy Creative Communications.)*

and to drive home a point. For example, a comedic scene featuring some incompetent mechanics attracts the listener and sets the stage for the upcoming spiel that tells why Joe's Garage does a better job than the bunglers depicted in the commercial. Note how the commercial reproduced in Figure 10.1 uses a similar dramatic scene to attract attention.

Compressing time. Which approach seems most effective from a radio producer's point of view?

1. John works at a newspaper; he is a reporter and the pressure is very intense. Right now he's working under a tight deadline. The pressure gets to him sometimes, and results in heartburn and an upset stomach.
2. **SFX** (sound effects): TELETYPES, OFFICE COMMOTION.

   VOICE 1: John, deadline for the fire story is in 5 minutes!

   JOHN: Boy, this pressure really gets to me sometimes . . . heartburn, acid indigestion. . . .

Notice that scene 2 would take about half the time needed for scene 1.

To expand on this use of drama, remember too that a sound effect of clapping thunder and pouring rain takes much less time than announcer's copy telling how bad the storm is.

Figure 10.2 shows a commercial that compresses its premise by use of dramatic elements.

Chapter 11 deals with the concepts of attracting attention and compressing time, as well as other facets of radio commercial production.

ROLE OF DRAMATIC ELEMENTS IN NEWS PRODUCTION

The goal of drama is to tell an interesting story in a compelling way. The goal of news is really not so different.

Although a news producer must be extremely careful not to mislead listeners or falsify information for the sake of dramatic impact, judicious use of dramatic elements is certainly acceptable. Documentaries usually contain some dramatic elements; a story on beachfront pollution, for example, can be bolstered with the sound effects of the plaintive call of seagulls.

Contrast, an important facet of drama, is also used as a dramatic element in documentary production. Thus a politician's claim that tax revenues are insufficient could be directly juxtaposed with a city official's contention that most of the city budget is squandered on salaries for no-show employees and otherwise wasted. Playing the two cuts back to back, without comment, increases the dramatic value and makes the point that no amount of narration could.

Music is also an important element of documentary production, although it is rarely if ever used in hard news production.

Remember that narration of news, public affairs, and documentaries can utilize dramatic elements, too.

Don't be afraid to try new ideas in news production. Dramatic elements,

Client: John Holmes Realty
Job Description: 30-second spot
Media: WSGO
Date: April 1979

Creative Communications
Advertising and Public Relations
Box 1024 □ Oswego, New York 13126

(Open with sound effect of car being driven down road)

WIFE: IT'S SO HARD TO SHOP FOR A HOME IN SUCH A SHORT AMOUNT OF TIME.

HUSBAND: YOU'RE RIGHT. AND WE REALLY HAVE TO FINISH BY TOMORROW. . . . OR WE HAVE TO COME BACK ANOTHER TIME.

WIFE: (SIGHS)

ANNOUNCER: YOU DON'T HAVE TO GO THROUGH ALL THAT AT JOHN HOLMES REALTY AT 143 WEST SECOND STREET, OSWEGO. AT JOHN HOLMES REALTY, WE DON'T RUN YOU ALL OVER TO LOOK AT EVERYTHING THERE IS FOR SALE. . . . WHAT WE DO IS SIT YOU DOWN IN OUR COMFORTABLE LOUNGE AND LET YOU LOOK OVER OUR ILLUSTRATED GUIDE TO HOMES ON THE MARKET. YOU PICK THE HOMES THAT FIT YOUR NEEDS AND PRICE RANGE, AND THEN WE'LL GIVE YOU A TOUR USING OUR MODERN VIDEOTAPE EQUIPMENT. SO IF YOU FIND THAT YOU DON'T LIKE THE WALLPAPER, YOU'LL KNOW IT BEFORE DRIVING THERE. WHEN YOU SEE THE HOME YOU'D LIKE TO GO AND LOOK AT, WE'LL TAKE YOU THERE FOR A CLOSE LOOK.

IT'S A SIMPLE PROCESS TO BUY A HOME AT JOHN HOLMES REALTY. COME AND SEE US AND WE'LL SHOW YOU.

Figure 10.2. *The use of dramatic techniques here compresses time. (Script courtesy Creative Communications.)*

as long as they are tasteful and not deceptive, can significantly freshen up what can be a stale area of radio production. The sound of police and fire trucks racing to a scene, for example, can be cut into a news report to give it extra impact.

TECHNICAL CONSIDERATIONS OF RADIO DRAMA

The most immediate consideration in producing radio drama or inserting a dramatic element is to create the illusion of place and movement. By "place" we mean the location of the actors; by "movement" we mean their physical movement through space.

Giving the illusion of place

Acoustic characteristics are important in determining place. For example, would you believe that a lively, reverberating sound was coming from someone on a beach, even with seashore sound effects in the background? No, it wouldn't be convincing (just as the lively studio made the outdoor scene in the Applications section of Chapter 9 sound unnatural).

Would you believe that someone was shouting from across the lawn if the actor was miked 3 inches from his mouth?

Would an intimate conversation sound natural if it was picked up by a mic several feet across the room?

The proper illusion of place is determined by mic technique. The producer will have to move actors closer and farther from the mic to achieve the proper effect.

Giving the illusion of movement

Since radio drama often entails movement of the actors, it's important that the mic setup give the illusion of movement. A script element that requires an actor to leave the room and slam the door, for example, will have to sound believable. As suggested earlier, actually having an actor slam the studio door may *not* give the effect desired, because the mic doesn't hear the way ears do. A better approach might be to have the actor take small steps, moving just a few feet away from the mic; the door slam can be dubbed in or done live by a studio assistant.

In any event, there must be an illusion of movement within the scene, and the movement must be "played to the mic" to achieve a realistic sound.

Making the background a fabric of believability

The sounds we hear (or ignore) as everyday background noise would be far too intrusive for a radio drama. That's because in real life we focus our attention on certain sound and exclude other sound from our attention. In radio drama it is very important to plan the background sound effects to

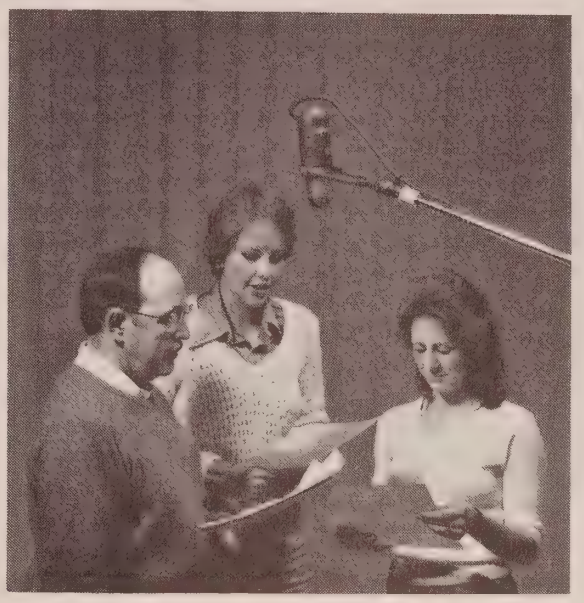


Figure 10.3. *Actors grouped around a boom-mounted mic.*

create a fabric of believability. If we need to move through busy streets, the sound effects must take us from one location to another. Often, the inexperienced producer mistakenly sequences sounds one after another, instead of weaving and blending sound together. Have the sounds move in and out of perspective. This weaving of sound is accomplished with preplanning and careful execution of audio levels. It is a vital element of dramatic believability.

The proper perspective also is more than just a function of loudness (or, in the case of stereo drama, of spatial position). Perspective also includes the way a character would hear sound. A movie sound effect best exemplifies this. In a boxing film, for example, the sound of the blows is far different when the view of the camera (perspective) represents the person being hit. The blows are often portrayed, visually and aurally, in slow motion, as crashing, catastrophic explosions. When the camera serves as the observer, the blows are not portrayed in such a dramatic fashion.

Mic techniques to achieve illusions of place and movement

Creating illusion of place is largely a function of the physical shape and construction of the studio, but as mentioned above the distance from the mic plays a major role. The ideal setup for radio drama in which actors must deal with place and movement is to suspend the mic from a boom (Fig. 10.3) and group the actors around it. This eliminates hazards of tripping over wires and bumping into floor stands.

Figure 10.4. *This device can come in handy in creating an illusion.*

An omnidirectional mic is best, although bidirectional patterns can be used. A high amount of "presence" is usually felt to be an attribute in radio drama, so a sensitive condenser mic might be a wise choice. The technical device pictured in Figure 10.4 can also prove quite handy in creating an illusion.

Always keep in mind that radio in general, and radio drama in particular, is an illusion. It doesn't just happen: It has to be created. A certain amount of technical skill and planning is an absolute necessity for the producer who wants the listener to believe in that illusion.

APPLICATIONS

Situation 1/The Problem. A producer was given the assignment of producing a 15-minute documentary on the effects of government loan programs on local farmers. It soon became apparent that the collection of interviews he intended to gather would prove to be extremely dull. One interview in particular, a question-and-answer session with a farmer and his accountant, promised to be deadly.

One possible solution. To liven things up, the producer took two steps. First, the narration was done not in the studio but on site at a local farm; background audio lent a dramatic texture. Second, instead of questioning the farmer and accountant, the producer convinced them to talk with each other, to dramatize a frank discussion of how the government's loan policies had

affected the farmer's operation. The goal was to "listen in" on a conversation between the farmer and his accountant, not to question them.

Situation 2/The Problem. A producer at a New England radio station was given the task of developing commercials for a glove manufacturer and retailer. Previous ads had featured nothing but announcer's copy extolling the toughness and warmth of the gloves; those commercials did not appear to be effective. The sponsor's instructions were: "Give me something with a little more zip."

One possible solution. In search of that elusive zip, the producer came across the information that the gloves really were tough. The fishermen who operated in the Atlantic coastal waters favored them almost exclusively.

The producer took a portable tape recorder out onto the fishing boats and interviewed some of the fishermen wearing the gloves. The fishermen (who were compensated for their endorsement) spoke of how tough their job was on gloves and how a good pair of gloves made life on a fishing boat a lot easier. One fisherman also described an incident in which his gloves had helped him weather a brutal storm.

With the ambient noise and some dubbed-in sound effects, the producer was able to use the dramatic scenes to produce a compelling commercial that met the client's needs.

Exercise

Create a 30- or 60-second spot that tells the story of your first day in college. Consider telling the listener about such first-day discoveries as registration, dining hall eating, finding your adviser, meeting a roommate, getting lost on campus, and discovering upperclassmen. Do this using only sound effects and music. (*Hint:* Voice can be used as a sound effect when we don't hear any particular person speaking.)

11 Commercial Production

Commercial production, as far as managers and owners are concerned, is at the core of the main purpose of radio: to make a profit. Like it or not, that's how commercial stations survive.

It is extremely important that commercials, which are the tangible result of the sales effort, be done well. As a producer of radio commercials, you will have three responsibilities:

1. To produce commercials that stimulate sales
2. To produce commercials that please the client
3. To produce commercials that fit your station's sound

The producer of a commercial (who can be anyone at the station—a sales manager, a staff announcer, a production manager) must translate those goals into a radio production that will capture the attention of an audience and be a successful sales tool for the client.

This chapter addresses all the elements that make up a commercial, including general sales appeal, content, and production values. It's important to have a rounded view of the commercial, because most radio professionals will deal with commercial production at a variety of levels at various points in their careers. In terms of how this chapter applies to you, keep in mind that your function in putting together a radio commercial will include any or all of the following:

- Writing the script, and/or putting the concept together
- Narrating the commercial
- Doing the hands-on production work
- Convincing the client that your approach is the proper one

The last duty is a common bugaboo of the commercial production field; the producer often winds up as middleman between the salesper-

son and the client, as the final arbiter on what is effective and what constitutes good production.

You may have a great deal of responsibility in determining what elements and production values will make the commercial effective. This will be especially true if you function in both sales and production capacities, which is common in first broadcasting jobs (and sometimes the only way to make a decent income).

WHAT MAKES A COMMERCIAL EFFECTIVE?

The authors, whose combined experience constitutes a half-century of involvement with broadcast advertising, are convinced that there are no hard-and-fast rules to determine a commercial's effectiveness. In fact, rules that occasionally get handed down from on high are often proved wrong. Several years ago top advertising agencies determined that humor was not an effective way to help sell a product; as proof, they pointed to large firms whose very entertaining commercials didn't move the products. But then a funny thing happened. Humorous commercials began to be the crux of very successful ad campaigns. Comedic teams such as Bob and Ray and Dick and Bert began creating extremely successful commercials, and the old "humor is no good" theory went down the drain.

But while there are no firm rules, we feel that the most important general principle of radio advertising is that commercials, like programming, must engage the attention of the audience. Some effective commercials have done this by being mildly irritating, such as the "ring around the collar" television ad.

The important thing about "ring around the collar"—or any other commercial, for that matter—is that it engages attention and appeals to a fundamental human drive. Consider that the dreaded ring always was discovered in a public and often posh environment, such as a cruise ship (never while playing touch football, though). There was always a scene of the poor housewife squirming in humiliation as her husband's ring around the collar was loudly pointed out. But, of course, she discovered the right detergent and all her problems were solved—within the space of 30 seconds.

Why was such an obvious piece of tripe so effective in selling the product (which it must have been, since the commercials ran for years)? Essentially, it appealed to a basic human emotion: the desire not to be humiliated in front of one's family.

While you might protest that such tactics don't work on you, it might be worthwhile to examine your buying habits and determine what role advertising has had in your purchases. On a related note, be aware that while people often adamantly deny that they are persuaded by advertising, re-

search frequently shows otherwise. The story of motivational research in advertising is beyond the scope of this book, but *The Hidden Persuaders* by Vance Packard and *Confessions of an Advertising Man* by David Ogilvy will provide some additional insight.

There are no magic formulas for producing effective commercials; in fact, even the major advertising agencies, backed with millions of dollars for research, bomb every once in a while. Also, commercials that fly in the face of research and established practice have done spectacularly well.

Although you generally won't have the ability to research the effectiveness of the commercials you produce (except for feedback from local merchants), you can take advantage of the basic appeals that appear again and again in broadcast advertising, and include the elements of an effective commercial.

ELEMENTS OF EFFECTIVE RADIO ADVERTISING

Essentially, a radio commercial has to be effective in terms of sound. Since there's no picture, the sound must compensate.

That's not, of course, a disadvantage. A picture in the mind can be infinitely more persuasive than a picture on the screen or in a print ad. Writer/producer Stan Freberg demonstrated this attribute quite effectively in a well-known promotional spot produced for the Radio Advertising Bureau. He created an imaginary scene, complete with sound effects, in which he drained Lake Michigan, filled it with hot chocolate, added a mountain of whipped cream, and had the Royal Canadian Air Force drop a 10-ton maraschino cherry on top. Freberg then challenged potential advertisers to "try that on television."

The point is that all the imagination of the listener is brought to bear on the message by the use of simple dramatic techniques, many of the same techniques outlined in the chapter on radio drama, or by use of music, which has been discussed in several of the preceding chapters.

Remember, too, that radio advertising can and should be geared toward a target audience. One of the great advantages of radio is that its audiences are usually clearly definable. Want to advertise acne medicine? Buy some time in the evening hours of the local hard-rock station. An advertiser with a Mercedes-Benz dealership would be wise to check out the beautiful music station. The beer company advertising directly certainly will buy some time on the local station that carries the baseball games.

You, the radio producer, can take advantage of both elements of radio advertising (the ability to create mind pictures and the targeting of advertising) to create effective commercials. But it means that you *must think in terms of radio.* This sounds obvious, but it's not.

For one thing, the producer of radio commercials may often be at odds with the client. This is because *many merchants have the idea that the only effective commercial consists of an announcer reading as many store items and prices as can be crammed into a 30-second spot.* We're not overstating the case. If you are in charge of at least some of the creative concept of a commerical (as is often the case, especially if you are involved in the sale), this is a situation you will probably experience time and time again.

The producer dealing with such a client faces a ticklish situation. The easy way out is to give the client what he or she wants, which may not be particularly effective, meaning that the account could soon be lost. Alternatively, the producer can lobby for a more enlightened approach, which could conceivably produce much better results and bring about an increase in advertising. However, keep in mind that even the most cleverly constructed commercial can fall flat.

In the long run, you and the client will be better off by shying away from the approach of listing the entire contents of the client's store. Here are two examples of how Lew O'Donnell and Phil Benoit, who once owned an advertising agency, handled the problem. We're not saying that these are the best approaches, or the only approaches; they're simply alternatives that were effective.

A shoe store advertisement

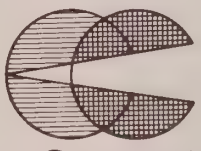
A local merchant had, for years, run back-to-school ads listing 10 or 11 brands of children's shoes and their respective prices; results were middling. Although the shoe store owner initially opposed the idea, a radio campaign was developed in which the nostalgic excitement of back-to-school time was recreated in the minds of the parents (Fig. 11.1).

A car dealership advertisement

Another merchant, the owner of a car dealership, was convinced to alter his advertising from a recitation of cars and prices to an approach that encouraged potential customers to browse on Sunday. The script (Fig. 11.2) also conveyed a low-key attitude.

Notice how the listing approach is avoided by major advertisers. Grocery store chains, for example, may note one or two specials, but the thrust of the commercial is: Our stores are friendly and convenient, offering the largest selection at the best prices, and so on and so forth. Much of this message can be communicated through dramatic technique, or through music. But almost any approach will be better than the crammed-in list; for one thing, a list of products and prices, while effective in a newspaper ad, might not even be comprehended by a radio listener. Second, a list of products and prices doesn't exploit the strengths of radio advertising.

Client: Vona Shoes
Job Description: 60-second spot
Media: WSGO
Date: August 1978



Creative Communications
Advertising and Public Relations
Box 1024 □ Oswego, New York 13126

ANNOUNCER: REMEMBER THE EXCITEMENT OF GOING BACK TO SCHOOL WHEN YOU WERE A KID? THERE WAS THE SLIGHT SADNESS THAT SUMMER WAS OVER, BUT THERE WAS ALSO THE SENSE OF ANTICIPATION. . . . NEW BEGINNINGS AND A FEELING OF GOOD TIMES AHEAD FOR THE NEW SCHOOL YEAR.

ALONG WITH THAT SENSE OF EXCITEMENT CAME THE TIME WHEN YOU WENT SHOPPING FOR NEW CLOTHES. THEY ALWAYS HAD A SPECIAL KIND OF "NEW" SMELL TO THEM. AND WHEN YOU SMELL IT TODAY, YOU PROBABLY THINK OF GOING BACK TO SCHOOL.

BEST OF ALL, THOUGH, WAS GETTING NEW SHOES. YOUR OLD RELIABLES HAD JUST ABOUT MADE IT THROUGH THE PAST YEAR. AND NOW IT WAS TIME TO GET THOSE BRAND NEW ONES THAT WOULD GET YOU OFF TO A GOOD START.

WELL VONA SHOES, 122 WEST SECOND STREET, OSWEGO, IS THE PLACE THAT CAN BUILD SIMILAR MEMORIES FOR YOUR CHILD. AND WHILE THEY'RE AT IT THEY'LL SEE TO IT THAT YOUR CHILD GETS QUALITY AND A GOOD FIT. THE TOP BRAND NAMES IN CHILDREN'S FOOTWEAR IN VONA'S EXTENSIVE INVENTORY MEANS THAT YOU'LL FIND THE SIZE YOU NEED AND YOU'LL GET VALUE.

THAT'S IMPORTANT FOR YOU. BUT FOR YOUR CHILD, THERE WILL BE EXCITEMENT AND THE FUN OF GOING TO BUY SHOES FOR BACK TO SCHOOL. A TIME FILLED WITH SIGNIFICANCE IN A YOUNG LIFE.

VONA SHOES . . . WHERE THEY UNDERSTAND YOU.

Figure 11.1. *This commercial uses an appeal to nostalgia to persuade its audience. (Script courtesy Creative Communications.)*

Client: Burritt Chevrolet
Job Description: 60-second radio spot
Media: WSGO
Date: January 1978

Creative Communications
Advertising and Public Relations
Box 1024 □ Oswego, New York 13126

ANNOUNCER: SHOPPING FOR A CAR IS AN IMPORTANT PROCESS. ONE THAT TAKES TIME AND THOUGHT. YOU LOOK AND YOU TALK. . . . YOU DEAL AND YOU DECIDE. BUT THERE ARE TIMES WHEN YOU WOULD LIKE TO BE ALL ALONE AT A CAR DEALER'S LOT AND JUST TAKE YOUR TIME TO LOOK OVER THE SELECTION OF CARS WITHOUT TALKING TO A SALESPERSON.

WELL AT BURRITT CHEVROLET ON BRIDGE STREET IN OSWEGO, WE UNDERSTAND THAT NEED. SO HERE'S A SUGGESTION. COME ON SUNDAY. ALL OUR CARS ARE ON THE LOT . . . AND THERE'S NO ONE THERE. YOU CAN BROWSE TO YOUR HEART'S CONTENT.

OF COURSE, ONCE YOU'VE HAD A CHANCE TO LOOK OVER OUR FINE SELECTION OF BRAND NEW CHEVROLETS AND OUR GREAT A-1 USED CARS, YOU'LL PROBABLY WANT TO COME BACK FOR A TEST DRIVE.

THAT'S WHERE OUR SALESPEOPLE CAN COME IN HANDY. THEY'RE AROUND THE OTHER SIX DAYS OF THE WEEK, AND THEY'LL BE HAPPY TO SET YOU UP WITH A TEST DRIVE. AND THEN THEY'LL WORK WITH YOU TO COME UP WITH THE BEST DEAL AROUND ON THAT CHEVY OR USED CAR.

SO PLEASE . . . BE OUR GUEST. VISIT BURRITT CHEVROLET ON WEST BRIDGE STREET, OSWEGO. DO IT ON SUNDAY AT YOUR OWN PACE. THEN COME BACK ON MONDAY, OR TUESDAY OR ANY OTHER DAY, AND FIND OUT WHY WE'RE THE DEALIN'EST GUYS IN TOWN.

Figure 11.2. *This script tries to lessen the pressure of the car-buying process. (Script courtesy Creative Communications.)*

What does exploit radio advertising's strong points? Essentially, any ad that creates mental images and proves a benefit to the consumer. That benefit may be tangible (saving money) or perceived (avoiding the humiliation of ring around the collar).

PRACTICAL APPROACHES TO RADIO COMMERCIALS

This section discusses the execution of a radio commercial in terms of the specific appeals radio advertising can make, as well as nuts-and-bolts construction.

Advertising Appeals

We're going to provide a rather cold-blooded listing of some of the emotional triggers that are frequently used in advertising. These appeals aren't usually discussed in this manner, but if they are to be used, it's only right to recognize them for what they are. Although there's no universal agreement on the validity of all these appeals, since advertising is an area of few cut-and-dried truisms, we believe that the following appeals represent motives used in modern advertising.

We refer to a number of well-known television commercials to illustrate the appeals because spots aired on network television will be familiar to almost all readers; radio commercials are usually done on a local or regional basis, and would therefore be less useful for this discussion.

Each of these commercial appeals is aimed at an *individual.* Too often we tend to think of our audience as a group of listeners, but actually our audience is made up of individuals. Think about when YOU listen to radio. You listen, perhaps, in your car on the way to work, or with a personal headset-type radio at the beach. Commercials should always address an individual and get him or her involved in the message. This is far more effective and appealing than the stereotypical "Hey all you out there in radioland" approach.

Appeal to personal fulfillment. The army's promise to "be all that you can be" typefies this appeal, which offers a subtle promise that the sponsor's product can help you be the person you always knew you could be. A credit card firm, for example, devotes a commercial to a woman in a college classroom, fulfilling her personal ambitions because, apparently, she was able to charge her tuition bills. Although some of us might quarrel with the approach of the credit card commercial, isn't it more effective than reciting a list of all the places a credit card can be used?

Appeal to authority. Don't we all want a person who should know how to take us by the hand, figuratively, and tell us about a product? Notice how actor Robert Young, famous for his portrayal of a doctor, used the authority appeal in touting a caffeine-free coffee or an arthritis remedy.

Appeal to the bandwagon effect. A desire to get in on a trend is a powerful human emotion. Be in with the desirable people! Use the same products as the "in" crowd! Do you recognize several major advertising appeals that stem from this approach? *(Hint:* Pepsi generation.)

Appeal to fear of rejection. This is subtly different from the bandwagon effect because it illustrates the negative aspects of not being on the bandwagon. Commercials dealing with personal hygiene products are, without a doubt, the ultimate exploiters of the fear of rejection appeal. Note how the people turn away from the poor unfortunates with bad breath, dandruff, and so on. You don't want to wind up like them, do you?

Appeal to sexual success. This appeal can be as blatant as a well-known commercial that implied that a certain brand of toothpaste would improve one's love life. This category overlaps a number of other appeals, including personal fulfillment and fear of rejection. In many cases, the message is so obvious as to be offensive to some: Consider the stocking commercial featuring what is ostensibly a career woman—but people just can't stop looking at her legs.

Appeal to reinforcement of listener's ego. "You know that this product is better because you're an intelligent . . ." is a common approach. In effect, the commercial gives the listener a chance to use the product or service and prove that he or she is, indeed, as smart as the commercial maintains. Remember the series of car commercials aired several years ago that pointed out what a large percentage of college graduates owned autos of a particular make?

Appeal to prestige. "Don't you deserve a (fill in name of car)?" Were it not for an innate need for prestige, such items as luxury cars or designer clothes probably wouldn't sell at all. The appeal to prestige hits that sensitive nerve that prods us to prove, through our cars, clothes, or club memberships, that we're a little better than other people.

Appeal to value and quality. This appeal cuts across several categories, including prestige and persuasion, by reinforcing ego, but the sum total of this approach is to convince the listener that the product or service is worth the price. Car commercials often state that the consumer can save money in the long run by buying a quality car that will hold up. Other commercials touting brand-name products use the same appeal. Sometimes direct comparisons are utilized.

Appeals to other emotional triggers. Nostalgia, family ties, guilt, loyalty, all play roles in reaching listeners.

Execution of radio commercials

The various techniques for reinforcing the appeal of a commercial make the message effective. Most of the techniques have been covered in other parts of the book, but here we deal with some of the specific applications to radio commercial production.

Music in radio commercials. Music is very effective in establishing a commercial's mood or an overall set of conditions, perhaps even the attitude of a person acting out a dramatic element. For example, music that features other singers joining in is a strong motivator for the bandwagon effect. (Think of soft drink commercials, which utilize bandwagon tactics heavily.) A commercial that appeals to nostalgia can quickly set the scene by use of old songs. In this case, music becomes sort of a shorthand way of communicating a message. For example, it's far more efficient to set the stage with some dance band music instead of loading up the precious time with spoken copy to indicate the time frame.

Music, then, is very helpful to the commercial producer in terms of creation of a mood and for reinforcement of a message. However, music is not always a favorable attribute in a commercial. As we've already noted, popular songs tend to be overused. And to make matters worse, a currently popular song may detract from the message, because listeners tune into the song and not the thrust of the commercial.

Music for commercials can come from sources other than the station's airplay library. To review, music can be obtained from:

1. *Generic commercial music libraries.* These collections feature music and lyrics for a wide variety of applications, such as "Do your shopping downtown," or "Your business is important to us." This type of production music is often quite useful, but can become repetitive and the lyrics tend to be on the corny side.
2. *Jingles from a national advertiser's ad agency.* When large manufacturers provide a contribution to local merchants' advertising budgets, the result is known as cooperative or "co-op" advertising. The same types of jingle are used by large organizations that have local franchises. Most of this prepared music comes in the form of what's known as a **donut,** whose "hole" is filled in by the local merchant's copy. An example of a script for a donut co-op ad is shown in Figure 11.3.
3. *Original music produced locally.* Local advertisers or advertising agencies often engage recording studios to compose original music for radio advertising. This usually isn't as difficult or as expensive as you might think, and some locally produced music can considerably brighten a spot. Some radio stations use musically talented staffers and freelancers to produce musical spots in house.

Radio Script
JOAN MAYER
30 seconds
Co-op

USE WITH TAPE CUT #2

MUSIC OPEN: (10 seconds)

FADE MUSIC UNDER

ANNOUNCER: THAT'S RIGHT, THERE IS NO BETTER WAY TO GET INTO SPRING THIS YEAR THAN TO BUY YOURSELF A COMPLETE COORDINATED SUIT AND SHOES OUTFIT BY JOAN MAYER. YOU'LL FIND A WIDE SELECTION RIGHT NOW AT _____. A JOAN MAYER OUTFIT
(STORE NAME AND ADDRESS)
MAKES IT EASY TO SAY "I'M READY," READY FOR SPRING. THE WIDE SELECTION OF TWO-PIECE SUITS IN LIGHTWEIGHT DACRON WITH COLORS TO MATCH AND COORDINATE WITH OUR QUALITY BRAND OF SPRING FOOTWEAR MEANS THAT YOU'LL HAVE NO TROUBLE FINDING THE OUTFIT OR OUTFITS THAT MAKE YOU LOOK YOUR SMARTEST FOR SPRING. SO STOP IN SOON AT _____ AND MAKE YOUR SELECTIONS FROM OUR SELECTIONS.

MUSIC UP: (5 seconds)

Figure 11.3. *A commercial using a "donut." (Script courtesy Philip Benoit.)*

In the use of any music, the producer will generally follow the guidelines expressed in Chapter 6; the editing structures (blending music and voice) are used extensively in the production of commercials.

Voice in radio commercials. The producer's role in dealing with vocal execution in commercials often extends to doing the actual announcing or choosing an announcer. The producer is also responsible for ensuring that

the correct phrasing is used. Although guidance in announcing skills is beyond the scope of this book, it is important for the producer to know that anyone who reads copy must stress key words. The meaning must be clear; if the goal of the commercial is to express value, the word *value* must receive its proper stress.

Likewise, the announcer must be *believable.* In the most basic terms, someone portraying a senior diplomat should not sound like a 21-year-old. Another aspect of believability is consistency of the message: Does the announcer extolling the virtues of the friendly neighborhood bank *sound* friendly? Remember that booming bass tones don't make an announcer's delivery believable. In today's radio, the "announcer" is being supplanted by the *communicator,* who communicates *with* an audience, rather than orating *at* them.

Another aspect of choosing an announcer is compatibility of the announcer's voice and delivery with the approach of the message. For example:

- The *hard-sell* approach needs an announcer with an authoritative, strong voice (not necessarily a deep voice, though).
- The *sincere* approach calls for an announcer who is casual, and does not have the "disc jockey" type of artificiality in the delivery. The announcer with the sing-song artificiality commonly found in top 40 radio (especially small market top 40 radio) would be an extremely poor choice for a commercial requiring sincerity, such as a spot for a bank.
- The *whimsical* approach often borders on the comedic. This approach (remember Lake Michigan being filled with hot chocolate?) requires an announcer with a good deal of flexibility and acting ability. An offbeat voice often fills the bill quite well. An affected, booming "announcerish" voice does not work well in this type of commercial, unless it's a parody of affected, booming announcers.
- Any *dramatized* element in a commercial requires an announcer with acting ability. Proficient announcers are not necessarily good actors, so careful screening is required when casting a commercial that contains dramatic scenes.

The major point here is that to take advantage of the different approaches available in radio advertising, the producer must be able to match to the message the proper style of delivery.

SUGGESTIONS FOR PRODUCING EFFECTIVE COMMERCIALS

The basics of producing good commercials are closely tied to the basics of any good radio production: a clear message and clean production. The ele-

ments spelled out in this chapter will help in defining the message and structuring it properly. Finally, we would like to add some specific suggestions concerning the specialized case of radio commercial production.

Avoid gimmicks

For some reason, producers—and local merchants—seem to fall in love with echos, sound effects, and so forth. A commercial that depends on gimmicks may often have its essential message weakened. Also, producing all your commercials with gimmicks becomes repetitive.

While electronic effects and sound effects certainly have a place in commercial production, be sure, before you use them, that they reinforce the message and have a direct bearing on the commercial itself.

Summarize the thrust

You should be able to summarize the thrust of a commercial in a few words: "The clerks in this store are very knowledgeable about their wares," or "This bank is friendly and wants to give you personal attention." The shotgun approach—mentioning every possible benefit of a product or service—usually doesn't work very well in a radio commercial, primarily because of the listener's short attention span and because time itself is limited. If the message seems scattered or fuzzy, rewrite the commercial.

Don't blast the listener

Some producers have become enamored of the idea that louder is better and take considerable pains to make sure that every sound element peaks the VU. While there's no question that you should strive for bright technical quality, excessive loudness and abrasiveness can often detract from the message.

Read the spot to the client

If you're in the position of writing the spot and getting approval from the client, you can wind up with a better product by reading the script to the client, rather than handing over a piece of paper. Why? Because people tend to "pick" at words, instead of grasping the whole concept. Also, they tend to drastically overestimate the amount of copy that can be squeezed into a given time frame, and reading your spot aloud leaves no doubt in the client's mind that it is, indeed, 30 seconds' worth of copy.

By reading the spot aloud to the client, you project the thrust of the commercial as it should be presented, and you don't get involved in a 10-minute argument over the choice of a particular word. Some salespeople

choose to bring along a roughed-out tape of the produced spot; this approach has pros and cons, and its effectiveness will probably depend on your individual situation.

Don't force humor

If there's any doubt about whether a spot is funny, it's probably not. Nothing falls as flat as a failed attempt at humor.

Achieve high technical quality

Strive for the best possible technical quality in your commercials. Commercials tend to stay unchanged for quite a while, and they get frequent use, so use as few tape generations as possible, and put the spot on a new cart. (Checking the rack in many radio stations often turns up commercials produced years ago.) If the commercial is on a bad tape to begin with, the quality will only deteriorate.

It's a good idea to save reel-to-reel copies of all commercials in the event of cart failure. Otherwise, you'll have to reproduce the whole spot. Incidentally, always save hard-to-reproduce production elements, such as jingles or elaborately created sound effects, in case you want to recut the commercial with a new slant while retaining some of the original production elements.

Don't overuse a particular piece of music

There's a tendency to seize on a piece of music that works well for production purposes and use it constantly. It is a tendency to be resisted.

If you use music from your station's airplay library, keep alert for new selections that would lend themselves to production work.

An index of the musical beds used for various productions is sometimes a good way to ensure that a particular piece does not get overused. Tape an index card to the back of an album cover and list the spots and dates you used certain cuts. (Imagine how embarrassing it would be to find that you and another producer have used the same cut for two different banking commercials.)

Keep the message simple

Too many ideas in one commercial, as we've discussed, can muddy the whole concept of the spot.

Avoid the "Big Five"

In general, steer clear of what we call the Big Five mistakes of commercial production, some of which have already been touched on. To summarize, avoid:

1. *Lack of focus.* The listener must be given a simple message that doesn't wander from idea to idea.
2. *Poor technical quality.* This includes commercials that are too loud, too soft, or on bad tape. Take pains to recut or redub a commercial when the tape starts to wear.
3. *Lack of completeness.* As pointed out in Chapter 10, a message is more effective if it has a beginning, a middle, and an end. A commercial that just sort of peters out, ending without a satisfying conclusion, loses some of its impact.
4. *The assembly-line approach.* All of us develop certain working habits, but when a producer makes several commercials that sound the same there's a serious problem. The commercials will lose impact and clients—who, after all, have ears, too—will complain. Make an effort to vary your approach from time to time. Use different announcers and production music.
5. *Fear of experimentation.* Don't shy away from trying a new approach just because it hasn't been done before in your station or your city. You may make mistakes, but never allowing yourself the freedom to experiment limits both your creative potential and the potential benefits to your advertising clients.

Keep in mind that radio advertising offers a really viable outlet for your creativity—an outlet that will permit your creativity to be strongly appreciated. And while advertising can sometimes be a pretty cold, dollars-and-cents affair, radio advertising producers have shown that creative advertising, done honestly and in good taste, can be effective.

APPLICATIONS

Situation 1/The Problem. The production director of a radio station was putting together a commercial for an ice cream parlor. The client insisted on copy that touted the old-fashioned atmosphere of the store; the copy included a physical description of the ice cream parlor and a dissertation on old-fashioned value. As it stood, the commercial was flat, talky, and unfocused.

One possible solution. About 15 seconds of the copy was deleted and a bed of Gay Nineties music substituted. The banjo and piano music, which was

bright and cheerful as well as conveying a sense of period, augmented the message, which now could be clarified and refined.

Situation 2/The Problem. A local bank, one of the station's largest customers, had become extremely unhappy with the lack of results from its radio advertising. The commercials, which were elaborately produced, with music and narration by the station's young morning man, stressed the honesty and dependability of the bank and its people. But the message didn't seem to get across.

One possible solution. The music and fast-paced delivery were scrapped, and new commercials cut. The new spots featured the voice of the station manager, a man in his late fifties, who stressed, in a conversational, low-key tone, that the bank and its people were honest, dependable, and an asset to the community.

Now, the production values supported the message.

Exercises

1. Replace the following announcer's copy with a shorter dramatic scene or sound effects sequence. Your goal is to shorten the message, focus it clearly, and give it greater impact. This assignment can be done either as a hands-on production exercise or as a mental exercise with the solution scripted out.

   "Rolling Hills Apartment Complex is more than a place to live. It's a place to enjoy—there are tennis courts, a swimming pool, and a golf course. You can enjoy all these facilities, and families with children are welcome. Everyone can have a lot of fun at Rolling Hills. . . ."

   (*Hint:* Would sound effects work here?)
   (*Hint:* How about a dramatized scene of happy residents?)

2. A bank has come to you with a desire for commercials to entice more young professional customers. Write a 60-second commercial that meets this need. One hook might be a young doctor saying that she doesn't have time to manage her money thoughtfully, and the people at the bank are a great help. Could sound effects or dramatic elements help clarify this message?

   If time and lab facilities are available, produce the spot.

3. Write a treatment (a description of the approach and production elements) for each of the following situations. Tell why you think each will be effective.

a. A shoe store that wants to reach blue-collar workers with a message about its tough work boots.

b. A drugstore that has a new line of cosmetics for men. The store's manager wants to reach young adult males and convince them that it's all right to use cosmetics. (Would a well-known local athlete—whose manhood certainly isn't in doubt—be a good choice to pitch cosmetics?)

c. A hardware store wants to attract apartment dwellers, rather than just homeowners. (What products at a hardware store would be of interest to apartment dwellers, and why should they go to a hardware store to buy them instead of a department store?)

12
Radio Production For News And Public Affairs

News production is a critical portion of the work done in a typical radio station. For one thing, news is a very visible part of the station's product, so the production values stand out clearly. Also, since news is aired frequently on most radio stations, particularly on the AM band, the news producer is called on to do new production and to change production values at a quick pace.

It isn't always possible to change the content of a news story every hour or half-hour, but it is possible to change the production/editing structure. For example, the news producer may decide to eliminate an actuality quote used at 8 A.M. and read the quote as part of the news story at 9 A.M. The producer might also elect to use two actualities within a story instead of one, and "recut" the news story for the next hour.

The hectic pace of news requires that you be able to do the work quickly. In addition, you must do the work well: The radio network news may play immediately before or after the local report, and it is incumbent on the producer to offer production that doesn't suffer by comparison.

Don't assume that there's no reason to become proficient in news because you want to specialize in another area of radio. Virtually everyone involved in radio has, at some time, been required to do and understand news production. Air personalities in smaller stations often are expected to be able to come up with an acceptable newscast; even sales people will be called on to discuss the newscast in detail. The news director in a station may be the only newsperson; in larger stations, of course, the news director is an executive in charge of a staff and a budget.

Regardless of your particular role in preparing news programming, the important thing to remember is that radio is a medium of sound. More and better sound doesn't necessarily guarantee a good newscast, but it does add to its impact and appeal.

What do we mean by "more and better sound"? Essentially, the goal of radio news programming is to offer something more than an announcer reading the copy. Additional sound elements—such as an interview conducted with the subject of the story, a live, on-the-scene report from a radio station staffer, or noise of a riot taking place—add to the variety and maximize the impact.

These attributes relate to the strengths of radio and the qualities news radio can stress. Radio is unsurpassed for timeliness—getting the story on the air quickly. Radio is also a personal medium, a one-on-one method of communication, and as such can effectively relate the human interest values in a story. Also, the personal medium of radio can bring a listener into close proximity to a story, directly on the picket line, or at the scene of the fire. Sound sources can help a great deal in this regard.

It's important to emphasize again that sound sources do not make the newscast. Good journalistic principles must be followed, and the voice and delivery of the on-air person must be appropriate. The news producer—whether he or she is the actual gatherer and reader of news or the executive in charge of the station's overall news effort—is responsible for a wide variety of duties. The total gamut of these duties (which may be split among several people) involves newsgathering, news writing, assembling the elements of a newscast, including stories and sound elements, and news reading and reporting.

Let's take a look at these aspects, and examine how production plays a role in their execution.

NEWSGATHERING

One of the limitations of radio news is that the newsperson is often tied to the studio. In smaller stations especially, the news director may be the only newsperson. Although a good reporter will make every effort to get out into the field, at least to make rounds at the police station, city hall, and so forth, much newsgathering must be done from the studio. In larger stations, street reporters do on-the-spot newsgathering.

In either event, newsgathering consists of the process of obtaining facts from which stories are written. It consists of collecting actualities, the recorded segments of news events or news makers. An actuality can be an interview segment or a recording of the *wild sound* resulting from an event, such as a funeral march or wailing of fire sirens. Although the terminology varies across the country, wild sound actuality is often referred to as a *sound bite*. Also, newsgathering for radio involves a great deal of recording off the telephone.

In smaller stations, much of the newsgathering is done by perusing the local paper. Although it's not generally admitted, many local newscasts in-

volve the announcer reading directly out of the paper. Sometimes the listener can even hear the pages being turned! More often, though, stories are rewritten. In small and even medium-sized markets the radio newsperson won't have many sources at all other than the newspaper, although *overreliance* on the paper should be avoided. For one thing, papers are wrong on occasion, and when the paper is wrong, you are wrong. Also, most newspapers are quite sensitive about the reuse of their material by another profit-making organization.

Another drawback to relying too heavily on the newspaper is that radio news is expected to be "up to the minute," while newspapers are generally about 12 hours out of date by the time they reach the reader. It's important for a radio news staff to develop its own system of newsgathering (sources, routines of calls to police, etc.) because listeners generally aren't tolerant of "old news," which has about as much appeal as yesterday's newspaper.

NEWS WRITING

Words, their order, meaning, and rhythm, can be considered to be a production value. The style of writing influences the sounds, and writing does, of course, put the whole package together. Writing also involves the way sound elements are assembled.

While a treatise on news writing is beyond the scope of this book, it is important for a news producer to keep in mind that what is written must *sound* right when it is read aloud, and must be conversational. Stilted, ponderous writing has no place in radio. Be aware that the listeners have only one opportunity to understand what is being said; they cannot look back, as they can with a newspaper article. Clarity is critical.

Another difference between newspaper and radio writing (and another reason for not reading out of the newspaper) is that newspapers use the inverse pyramid writing style, in which the important who, what, where, when, and why are listed in the first few sentences. Its advantages in the print media notwithstanding, this format is generally both confusing and boring to the listener. Radio news demands shorter sentences and active verb tenses, and this style of writing is really quite different from newspaper journalism. To repeat a popular and worthwhile phrase, radio writing is written for the ear, not the eye.

For example, a newspaper lead might read: "Twenty-four-year-old John Smith, of 91-B Mechanic St. in Centerville, was killed in an accident today near the Jefferson Street on-ramp to I-100, when his car collided with a truck that was traveling the wrong way on the ramp, police said." That sentence (which is not extremely long as newspaper leads go) would be confusing to listeners, who would be better served by: "A local man was killed today by a truck police say was heading the wrong way on an expressway off-

ramp." Now, the details can be presented in ear-pleasing, bite-size fashion.

Sentences in broadcast news writing should be kept short (i.e., 20 to 25 words or fewer). Attribution is usually put first. In other words, "State Police Captain David Smith said today that there is no word on the fate of the missing hunter," rather than, "There is no word on the fate of the missing hunter, said Captain David Smith of the state police."

Proficiency in news writing will come from journalism courses and on-the-job training, so we won't expand on it here except to remind you that if you don't know how to type at this point in your career, it is imperative that you learn. Many radio stations simply won't hire newspeople who can't type; in any event, typing is a skill that will come in quite handy in almost any broadcast career.

NEWS ASSEMBLY

An important responsibility of a news producer is fitting the pieces of the newscast together. (We're talking here about a newscast, although other facets of radio news production are examined later in this chapter, along with more specific details of newscast structure.) The assembly process can involve choosing stories and story order, and choosing the proper sound elements.

Choosing stories and story order

What goes on the air? What goes on the air first? Often the responsibility for answering these two questions will fall on you, and it requires a sense of news judgment. Running a story first makes it, in effect, the *lead* story and imbues it with additional importance. Although news judgment is a subject better addressed in journalism classes, the radio news producer must be aware that it is often necessary to shuffle news stories from hour to hour to provide variety in the news. Also, a story is often pushed up in the rotation because it is new. The time element is an important consideration because radio is a medium that thrives on timeliness; in fact, it can provide news more quickly than any other medium.

Choosing sound elements

Next you must select an actuality and integrate it into the copy. In addition to the actuality and wild sound described earlier, you will often have access to reports filed by journalists in the field. These reports usually come in the forms of voice reports or **voicers** and **voice-actuality** reports.

Voice reports. These straight news items are reported by a journalist and signed off in a fashion such as: "This is John Roberts reporting for WXXX

News." Voice news reports usually run between 30 and 90 seconds, although there's no hard-and-fast rule.

Voice-actuality reports. A voice-actuality is constructed in the manner of a voice wrap, the editing/production structure explained in Chapter 6. A voice-actuality is simply a report from a journalist with an actuality segment inserted. It is signed off like a voice report.

NEWS READING AND REPORTING

In small stations the role of producer is combined with the roles of reporter and news reader. Again, the broad topics of news reading and the technique of filing reports are beyond the scope of radio production, but it's important to remember that they do play a role. Inflection and tone are as eloquent as the choice of words. Pace of the delivery certainly is a production value. Also a production value is the quality and style of the ad-lib type of report filed by journalists in the field, which may involve use of the telephone or two-way radio. As a new producer, you should be aware that this kind of ad-lib report is done with some frequency in radio news, and is in fact the kind of thing radio does better than any other medium.

Many radio stations have used timeliness to their advantage by calling themselves "newsleaders" or "the news authority" in the community. Such slogans need to be backed up with good coverage and accurate reporting, but time and again radio has demonstrated its ability to go live at a moment's notice. Often, this can be done with a simple phone call. Anyone who has ever listened to "All Things Considered" or "As It Happens" knows of radio's superior ability to cover breaking stories immediately.

Gathering, writing, assembling, and reading and reporting the news are the basic tasks that comprise the structure of news programming. These tasks can be integrated into a number of types of programs, which for the sake of discussion we will group into public affairs programming, newscasts, and talk shows. (Talk shows are often a part of public affairs programming, but are different enough to merit separate discussion.)

NEWS AND PUBLIC AFFAIRS PROGRAMMING

Although there's really no precise definition, "public affairs" differs from "news" in that it is less immediate than breaking news. Public affairs programming is usually directed toward a specific topic, which is examined at greater length than is possible in a news report. The role of a producer in public affairs can involve selecting the topic for discussion or examination,

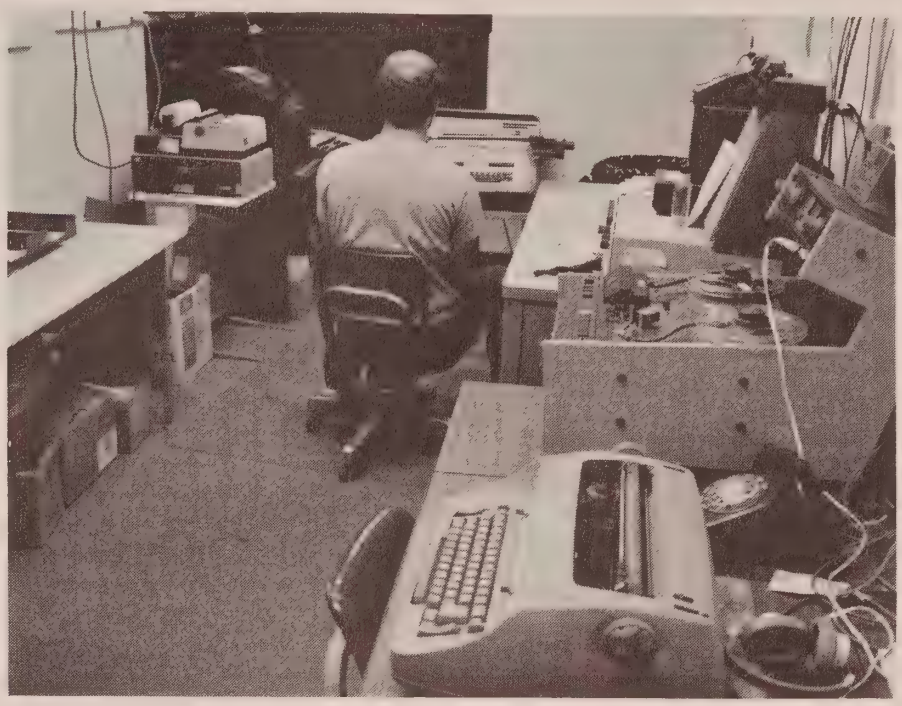


Figure 12.1. *A typical radio newsroom. Note the recording equipment.*

choosing guests, making all the organizational arrangements, and even setting up the mics.

The mainstay of public affairs programming is the interview or talk show, which is discussed in detail shortly. Public service announcements also are the responsibility of the public affairs producer.

Public service announcements, known as PSAs, are generally short announcements, similar in structure to commercials, which are provided at no charge on behalf of nonprofit organizations. PSAs are usually 30 or 60 seconds long, have the same structure as commercials, and can be approached with the same production techniques described in Chapter 11.

NEWSCASTS

In radio, the newscast is often a 3- to 5-minute program inserted into the music programming of the station. In most cases, the station offers the newscasts on the hour or on the half-hour, although the local news may follow the network news and may therefore be presented starting 2, 3, 4, or 5 minutes after the hour, depending on where the station breaks away from the network newscast. (Radio networks structure the newscasts so that local affiliates can break away gracefully at various points.)

The newscasts produced locally are usually put together in a newsroom, which contains a variety of equipment to facilitate construction of the newscast (Fig. 12.1).

Equipment in a typical newsroom includes provisions for recording off the telephone, a vital part of radio newsgathering (although some stations choose not to use telephone interviews). There are usually cart machines in the newsroom and a reel-to-reel tape recorder. **Wire service** teletypes are also usually located in the newsroom. In some cases, the newscast is done directly from the newsroom, so a mic and console are found in some facilities.

The content and structure of the newscast vary greatly among stations. Following are some of the typical mixtures and arrangements.

Exclusively local news

Many stations carry network newscasts and have their news staffs devoted entirely to local news. News staffs typically gather, write, assemble, and read the newscast over the air. The local news in such stations usually includes two or more pieces of actuality. Much of the local news coverage is rewritten from the paper; if staff size permits, local meetings are covered (usually in the evening) and a "voicer" left for the morning reporter.

Local news with wire copy

Many stations integrate international, national, and state copy into locally originated newscasts. By and large, radio stations get their state, national, and international news from wire services, most notably Associated Press and United Press International. There are other news services, and some are syndicated through the mail.

Although today much of the transmission is via satellite, the name "wire services" is still used, a reminder that all news was once fed over telegraph and telephone wires. The wire services offer special "feeds" to broadcast outlets, feeds that are different from the service given to newspapers. Essentially, the stories are shorter and written in broadcast style. The stories are often constructed in such a fashion that they can be updated quickly, with new information "plugged in." The wire services specify where the new information is to be inserted.

Some of the offerings of wire services are extensive news summaries, which are fed at predetermined times during the day; briefer summaries, which provide a couple of minutes' worth of copy; headline summaries; stock reports; agricultural news; commentaries and feature pieces; sports; and weather. Also, wire services feed special features that relate to current news items. A newsperson can utilize these features, which are fed well in advance of an upcoming event, to bolster a station's coverage of a major news story, such as a political convention. Wire service material is slugged with the time of transmission, along with other relevant facts (Fig. 12.2).

Wire services provide what's known as a *state split;* that is, the circuits of the services are turned over to state bureaus and state news is fed to the

```
222YNR
     WORLD-HEADLINES
  -0-
  THE SOVIET NEWS AGENCY TASS SAYS U-S AMBASSADOR ARTHUR HARTMAN MET
WITH FOREIGN MINISTER GROMYKO (GRUH-MEE'-KOH) TODAY FOR DISCUSSIONS
THAT INCLUDED THE DEADLOCKED ARMS TALKS.  THE EMBASSY SAYS THE MEETING
WAS AT HARTMAN'S REQUEST.
  -0-
  SYRIAN PRESIDENT ASSAD's (AH-SAHDZ') BROTHER. . .RIFAAT (REE-FAHT)
ASSAD. . .BECAME ONE OF THREE NEW VICE PRESIDENTS IN TODAY'S
GOVERNMENT RESHUFFLE.  HE'S NOW SEEN AS WELL-PLACED TO SUCCEED
PRESIDENT ASSAD, WHO SUFFERED A HEART ATTACK LAST NOVEMBER.
  UPI 03-11-84  06:23  PES
```

Figure 12.2. *A sample of wire service copy. (Reprinted with permission of United Press International, Inc.)*

appropriate stations. Much of this news is gathered by local affiliated stations and phoned in to the wire services. Traffic fatalities, for example, are almost always phoned in by local affiliates. The weather is also delivered in a split. Several forecasts will be fed, and the local newsperson picks out the appropriate forecast. (It might be slugged, for example, SEVEN WESTERN COUNTIES.)

Wire services are very useful and provide material that a local station couldn't easily obtain anywhere else. Unfortunately, the excellent job done by wire services, combined with the fact that many radio stations are badly understaffed, leads to the "rip-and-read" syndrome, wherein the newscast gets no more attention than reading 5 minutes of whatever's available.

In smaller stations, the rip-and-read approach to news often results in a newscast being torn from the wire service printer and read by a staff announcer, rather than by a full-time newsperson. Rip-and-read often sounds exactly like what it is: a half-hearted and somewhat sloppy approach to a station's news commitment.

If you utilize wire service material in your newscasts, and you almost certainly will do so at some stage in your radio career, proofread the wire copy in advance. Also, keep an eye out for state and regional stories that have a direct impact on your community. (The rip-and-read newscasters often overlook state and regional stories that might relate, for instance, to the health of a local industry or to a current or former local resident.)

Wire services provide such an excellent resource that many people involved in radio news production often overlook some important working principles. Here are some brief suggestions on utilizing wire services effectively in radio news production.

Acquaint yourself with the schedules and workings of the service. Very often, the schedule of transmissions isn't posted; if that's the case, track it down and learn it. The wire services provide working manuals and other descriptive literature that can be very helpful but often doesn't filter down to the newspeople. Asking for and reading through this material will be of great benefit.

Check copy for typos and pronunciation problems. Reading on the air is the wrong time to puzzle over a typo. Typos do happen on wire service feeds, and since the transmission systems are subject to interference, you may encounter garbled material.

Likewise, don't take the chance of stumbling through an unfamiliar name or word. Use a dictionary if you're in doubt, and ask someone at the station for advice on how to pronounce names of local people and communities. Wire services generally provide pronunciation guides for difficult-to-pronounce words. Learn to use these guides, and you may save yourself and your station some embarrassment.

Always verify the time of transmission on a story you will use. In a pile of wire copy, one piece of paper looks just like another. That's why it is important to check through copy to make sure that an old and dated story doesn't get included in copy scheduled to go on the air.

Keep a close eye on the paper supply. Teletypes have a habit of running out of paper before the material you need is fed. It seems simple, but paper problems are the bane of many newsrooms. Always familiarize yourself with the paper-changing process and find out where paper boxes are stored; even if it's not your job, you may be called on to change paper in an emergency. Also, have someone show you how to change printer ribbons.

If you miss a story, you can often call the wire service and have the item fed again, but it is an inconvenience for everyone.

News with wire copy and network audio

In addition to newscasts, some wire service and networks provide voicers, actualities, and voice actualities to affiliated stations. This kind of arrangement allows you to be very creative, gives more flexibility in sound, and also gives the newscast a very professional sound. Correspondents report the news from all over the world, and actualities from breaking news stories are fed as soon as they are gathered.

A wire service can feed a hard-copy description known as a "billboard" (Fig. 12.3). The billboard describes the piece, tells its length, and states whether it is a voicer, a voice-actuality, or an actuality. The individual pieces are counted down ("Rolling in three . . . two . . . one. . . . In Washington today, there was . . .") so that the person in the newsroom can start the cart machine at the proper time.

```
NETWORK-HOURLY-FEED
3-10 610P
   --FOLLOWING CUTS FED AT 6 :10 AND 7 :10PM E-S-T:

56 :46 V WA -(TERRORISM)- (VICKI BARKER)
TWO EXPERTS WARN OF NEW TERRORISM DANGER
IN U-S

57 :14 A ATLANTA -(DEBATE)- (SEN GARY HART,
D-COL, AT LEAGUE OF WOMEN VOTERS DEBATE) SAYS
REAGAN ADMIN IS "STEALING FROM AMERICA's
CHILDREN" DEFICITS (THIS COUNTRY)

60 :18 A ATL -(DEBATE)- (GEROGE MCGOVERN)
PROUD TO BE THE "CANDIDATE OF THE PAST"
(THE FUTURE)

S38 :27 A EAST RUTHERFORD -(NETS 106-SONICS 105)-
(DANN BRAINES, SONICS FWD) GOALTENDING CALL ON
HIM IN FINAL 30 SECONDS WAS BAD CALL (KEY CALL)

S39 :10 A E-R -(NETS-SONICS)- (ALBERT KING,
NETS G) IT WAS A TEAM EFFORT (LIKE THAT)

  UPI 03-11-84 06 :19 PES
```

Figure 12.3. *A wire service "billboard." (Reprinted with permission of United Press International, Inc.)*

Remember, the audio service is a different entity from the wire service copy, which comes over the teletype; the audio service is an extra. This type of product is also available from private organizations seeking to provide news features free in return for the publicity. Figure 12.4 shows a billboard for a university radio news service.

TALK SHOWS

Talk programs can run the gamut from news-oriented, issue-focused community affairs programs to celebrity interviews. Often, though, they come under the jurisdiction of the news and/or public affairs department.

Most often the talk show is prerecorded and features a host and one or more guests discussing a prearranged topic. The two most common forms

Syracuse University Radio News Service

Billboard for August 18-August 25, 1980

(315) 423-3008

Cut 1: On line 8:30 a.m. Monday, August 18, through 4:30 p.m. Monday, August 18

:58 V-A SYRACUSE UNIVERSITY--(THE ECONOMY)--(CARL HAUSMAN W-RICHARD OLIKER)
RECENT ECONOMIC INDICATORS POINT TO AN EASING OF THE RECESSION, BUT THE DEAN OF SYRACUSE UNIVERSITY'S SCHOOL OF MANAGEMENT FORECASTS ANOTHER SURGE IN INFLATION.

Cut 2: On line 4:30 p.m. Monday, August 18, through 4:30 p.m. Tuesday, August 19

:55 V-A SYRACUSE UNIVERSITY--(HEALTH)--(CARL HAUSMAN W-SUSAN REZEN)
IT'S SOMETIMES SO INTOLERABLE THAT IT MAKES PEOPLE SUICIDAL--AND SOME ESTIMATES INDICATE THAT UP TO 30 MILLION AMERICANS ARE AFFECTED BY IT AT ONE TIME OR ANOTHER. A SYRACUSE UNIVERSITY AUDIOLOGIST EXPLAINS WHAT CAN BE DONE TO HELP PEOPLE COPE WITH TINNITUS (ti NIGH tus).

Cut 3: On line 4:30 p.m. Tuesday, August 19, through 4:30 p.m. Wednesday, August 20

:59 V-A SYRACUSE UNIVERSITY--(ENVIRONMENT)--(CARL HAUSMAN W-BILL BANKS)
AMERICA'S WATER SUPPLY CONTAINS CHEMICALS THAT MAY--OR MAY NOT--CAUSE CANCER. THAT SITUATION, SAYS SYRACUSE UNIVERSITY'S ASSOCIATE DEAN OF LAW, HIGHLIGHTS THE NEED FOR A CHANGE IN THE WAY WE LEGISLATE AGAINST ENVIRONMENTAL HAZARDS.

Cut 4: One line 4:30 p.m. Wednesday, August 20, through 4:30 p.m. Thursday, August 21

:58 V-A SYRACUSE UNIVERSITY--(SOCIAL SERVICES)--(CARL HAUSMAN W-MAX CASPER)
MANY COMMUNITIES ARE CONVINCED THAT THERE NEEDS TO BE A CLEAN SWEEP OF SO-CALLED STREET PEOPLE. A SYRACUSE UNIVERSITY SOCIAL WORK PROFESSOR SAYS THE ATTITUDE AGAINST STREET PEOPLE IS IMMORAL AND UNFAIR.

Cut 5: On line 4:30 p.m. Thursday, August 21, through 8:30 a.m. Monday, August 25

:54 V-A SYRACUSE UNIVERSITY--(FINANCE)--(CARL HAUSMAN W-ELIZABETH HARTNETT)
THERE'S A NEW BANKRUPTCY LAW--AND IT APPEARS THAT A GROWING NUMBER OF PEOPLE ARE TAKING ADVANTAGE OF ITS MORE LENIENT PROVISIONS, SAYS A SYRACUSE UNIVERSITY SCHOOL OF MANAGEMENT FACULTY MEMBER.

FOLLOWING CUT 5 ALL PREVIOUS CUTS WILL BE REPEATED.

MATERIAL WILL BE LEFT ON LINE THROUGH THE WEEKEND.

Figure 12.4. *A billboard for a university radio news service. (Courtesy Syracuse University.)*

are the one-on-one show and the panel discussion. A popular variant is the call-in show.

In the *one-on-one talk show* an interviewer and a guest discuss a topic, and the interviewer often runs his own board with the guest on a separate mic in the same studio. Sometimes an engineer runs the board.

The *panel discussion* features a moderator and several participants. Here,

proper miking becomes a major consideration. Aside from following the mic techniques outlined in this book, the problem of miking a panel discussion can be dealt with by keeping the number of interviewees as small as possible. Some panel discussions on radio are truly awful because they are impossible to follow. A clamor of disembodied voices makes things very tough on the listener.

From the standpoint of the producer and/or moderator, it's important, in a multiperson discussion, to identify each speaker frequently during the program and to avoid whenever possible having two or more people speaking simultaneously. (This happens more often than you might think.)

The *call-in show* is another type of talk program, designed to include the listening audience. Often it is presented around a previously announced topic of discussion, but sometimes listeners call in and speak whatever is on their minds. What's on listeners' minds is not always suitable for airing, however, so a tape-delay system is often used. That is, the program is recorded live and fed back over the air several seconds later. Producers of call-in shows often screen calls in advance, weeding out cranks and clarifying the topic with the callers. A board operator also will handle the tape-delay system, monitoring the signal going out after the delay.

SPECIAL EVENTS

The news and public affairs producer often is charged with the responsibility for special events production. Many of the technical aspects are covered in the chapter on remote and sports production. Keep in mind that you may be called on to cover a very wide variety of events, such as store openings, county fairs, and press conferences.

PRODUCTION TECHNIQUES FOR NEWS AND PUBLIC AFFAIRS

Certain techniques relate to different productions; this section discusses some of the techniques that are particularly relevant and are not covered elsewhere in the book.

Interviewing

Although a complete discussion of interviewing would be more appropriate in a performance course, certain principles relate directly to production. Interviewing is actually a news production technique because the way a question is phrased will determine the product that results. Here are some suggestions.

Ask simple and direct questions. Try and put yourself in the place of the listener and determine what the listener would like to ask.

For example, in questioning the spokesman for a utility that is raising its rates, be sure to ask how much the rate hike will cost an individual listener. It is also important to phrase the question in a way that is not vague or overwhelming; that way, the answer you get is less likely to be evasive or too long.

Phrase questions that invite bite-sized answers, but don't ask yes-or-no questions. Obviously a plain "yes" or "no" will not provide you with much actuality. On the other hand, questions that invite ponderous answers are bad because the answers can be too unwieldy to edit. For example,

DO ask: How much more will a homeowner be paying in property taxes after revaluation?

DON'T ask: What impact will revaluation have on homeowners in the area, and how do they and the city council feel about the situation?

Ask follow-up questions. In a talk show, it's important to pursue a line of questioning if an interesting conversation develops. Formulate questions on the basis of previous answers. Don't fall into the trap of coming into the interview with a list of prepared questions and sticking to it no matter what. This is a common mistake and can result in an interview that will appear to the interested listener to be almost laughably bad. The listener isn't tensely clinging to a list of questions; he or she may be genuinely interested in the responses obtained and probably wants to hear an intelligent follow-up.

Fill listeners in. This is very important in a radio talk show, because statistics tell us that listeners tune in for a shorter time than do television viewers. The producer/moderator should frequently mention the names of the guests and identify the topic.

Story and actuality editing

A knowledge of editing is essential for newscasts. Editing allows you to inject some variety because you can take different pieces of interview segments, rearrange these actualities, and rewrite the stories around them. In addition to offering variety, editing of the actualities allows you to shape the story to be told in the quickest and most succinct way possible.

One of the biggest problems for beginning news producers is creating a story and editing an actuality from a news interview. What part of the tape should be used on air? Which part should serve as information that will be written into a news story?

Although there are no hard-and-fast rules, it may help to remember that *fact* usually is better written into the story, while *reaction and comment* are better used in actuality. For example, the listener is less interested in hearing

a politician recite how many votes he won by than in learning from the politician his reactions and plans.

Using sound sources in radio news production

The use of sound sources as background in radio news production is often overlooked. Sound bites can really dress up a news story. Traffic noise, for example, can be a helpful adjunct to a story about highway construction.

If you have been assigned to do a live, on-the-scene voice report, it is generally helpful to get local noise in the background. This will make the story more immediate for the listener. If you're covering a fire, for example, wouldn't it be much more effective to have the noise of the fire engines and roaring flames in the background? Oddly, some news reporters (accustomed to trying to reproduce studio conditions) seek a quiet place to voice their report.

Think in terms of sound elements that can be used in your radio reports (without, of course, being overly dramatic or misleading). Plan in advance for the sound bites you want to pick up.

Using the telephone to maximum benefit

You can feed tape over the telephone by using a pair of alligator clips (Fig. 12.5) connected to your tape recorder and to a telephone. This can be done quickly from a remote location. Your station's engineer will be able to prepare the clip system for you.

The telephone, of course, is also a newsgathering tool—in fact, one of the most important newsgathering tools. While you can't always get celebrities to come to the studio or grant an in-person interview, it's surprising how available they can be to a phone call. Or, a routine story, even a state story taken from the wire service, can be given added importance by carefully done telephone interviews.

Recording off the phone is a common practice in radio news and definitely should be exploited by a news producer. You must inform all parties that a recording is being made. Check with your news director for guidance on legal and procedural policies concerning telephone recording at your particular station.

Adding production elements to public service announcements

While you wouldn't want to tamper with a newscast by adding music or staged dialogue, the public service announcement can definitely benefit by attention to production details. One purpose of the PSA is to draw attention to a message.

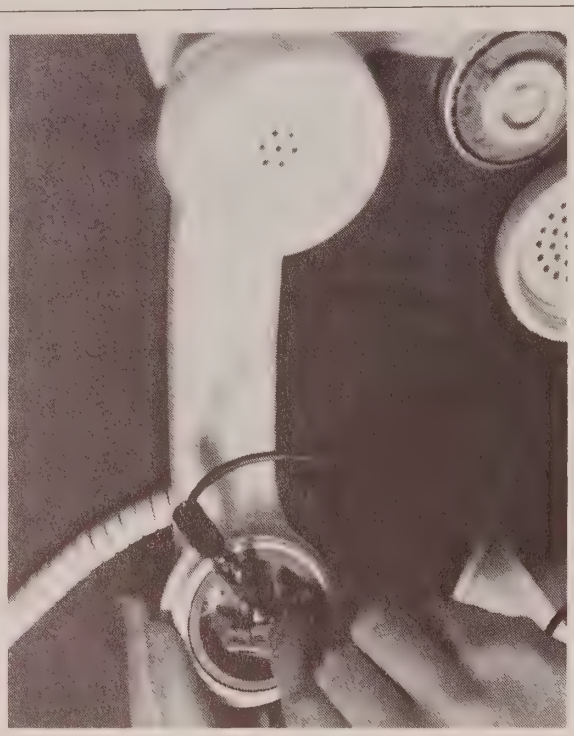


Figure 12.5. *A tape recorder output cord with alligator clips can be used to feed a recording directly into a telephone receiver. Remove the mouthpiece and attach the clips to the two prongs in the mouthpiece end of the receiver.*

Making the newscast a cohesive, unified whole

The elements should follow logically, and the pace and style of delivery should be varied to reflect story content. This sounds obvious, but many newscasters don't alter their deliveries in relation to the story. Thus the piece on the polar bear cubs born at the zoo is delivered in the same style as a report of a double-fatal auto wreck. Avoid a joking style in general, and be particularly wary of light-hearted readings of serious stories.

In essence, the newscast is an entire story, and while the individual elements vary in content, the items should follow gracefully.

Within the newscast you will want to strive for completeness; don't leave the listener hanging, waiting for an answer that never comes. On a related note, don't leave actualities hanging; in other words, don't play an interview segment and then move directly into another story. Have some copy after the actuality, even if it simply identifies the speaker. Incidentally, it is always a good idea to identify the speaker of an actuality before and after it's played. Avoiding confusion in the mind of the listener is one of the primary responsibilities of the radio news producer.

Responsibility, in fact, is a word often repeated in radio newsrooms. Pro-

viding the news *is* a heavy responsibility, and it's important not to forget that. Newspeople don't have to be stuffed shirts, but they do have to realize that they're in a serious business. But while it's serious, it can also be fun. News—and in particular radio news—is one of the most fast-moving and exciting of all professions.

APPLICATIONS

Situation 1/The Problem. A news reporter was assigned to cover a potentially violent job action at a local plant. Arriving on the scene, she found that picketers had been instructed not to talk to the press and police would not let her pass police lines to do an interview. The obvious approach was to read her notes into the microphone, but that seemed a particularly dull way to cover the story.

One possible solution. The reporter placed herself as close to the police lines as possible and voiced her report with chanting and other wild sounds in the background. Later, a scuffle broke out, and she recorded wild noise from that altercation and edited it into another report, which she produced back at the station.

Situation 2/The Problem. The producer/news reporter on duty Sunday afternoon found that there was nothing going on—and he had a half-hour newscast to fill in 2 hours. All he had available was feature stories in the local paper, and another organization's feature stories are not easily rewritten and adapted to a local radio newscast.

One possible solution. One state story fed by the wire service dealt with the governor's plans for improving the quality of public education in the state. It was a substantial and interesting story, but had no local angle. The news producer checked through his files of telephone numbers and called:

- The principal of a local high school
- The head of the local teachers' union
- A student at a local state college

He asked for their reactions to the governor's proposals, and recorded the actuality off the phone. Now, he had a good lead story for the upcoming newscast.

Exercises

1. Have another student read over a newspaper article. Then interview him or her about the article, as if your partner were a spokesman for one of

the parties involved in the article. (Your partner should keep the clipping handy for reference.)

Try to present a logical discussion of the subject. Because your partner is not really an expert on the topic, he or she will be unresponsive on occasion, but that is exactly the situation you'll run into from time to time in radio news. Your goal is to make the discussion into a graceful interview, 3 to 5 minutes long.

2. Take the interview you've created, edit out a section, and write up a voice wrap. Make the voice wrap deal with a particular newsworthy segment of the interview, and make it about 60 seconds long.

3. Next, come up with two new leads (new heads and orientations) and redo the story. Rewrite it and recut it as if you were freshening the story up for two upcoming newscasts.

Incidentally, mechanical practice on equipment you're likely to use will be valuable, so if you have the opportunity to practice, use it. Record an audio feed, for example, and practice taking audio off the telephone. Becoming familiar with the operation of portable cassette machines will be beneficial, too.

13
Remote And Sports Production

Remote and sports production form only a portion of the radio station's program day, but these areas put radio production people in the proverbial hot seat. Remote work, whether it involves covering a news conference or a football game, is a difficult undertaking that requires a great deal of preparation. Knowledge of equipment and production techniques also comes into play—the operational aspects are important in getting that signal back to the station.

Remote broadcasts often include sporting events, which is why a discussion of sports coverage is included in this chapter. Other common remotes include having a staff announcer play records from a car dealership, a new store, a restaurant, or other business. The goal in such cases is to give the client (who has paid a fee for having the remote originated from his or her business) exposure and increased business. Less frequently, remotes involve news coverage, such as live broadcasts of press conferences. Music presentations are sometimes done on remote; usually, however, concerts are recorded on site and are not fed live over the air.

Considerations of hardware and technical facilities will be largely determined by the equipment your station has on hand and by the technical qualifications of your engineering staff. Rely on your station's engineers for technical advice; they are the experts and will make many of the choices and installations.

Your role as a producer involves the planning, execution, and character of these events. While the engineering staff can give you help on the technical arrangements, you, the producer, must have an understanding of *all* the program elements and the kinds of effect that make remote broadcasts successful. Coupled with a basic knowledge of radio production equipment, your knowledge and planning will be the key ingredients in a good remote broadcast.

Figure 13.1. *This remote console features built-in turntables and folding legs for easy setup and transport. (Photo courtesy Micro-Trak Corporation, Holyoke, Massachusetts.)*

In essence, your responsibility is to put the remote together in a way that produces the best quality and provides the sound you need to keep up the standards of your station.

REMOTE RADIO EQUIPMENT

Most remote equipment is pretty much the same as that found in studio applications, although the smaller models are obviously favored. An exception is the specially designed remote console pictured in Figure 13.1, which is designed for easy setup and takedown. Remote consoles usually have turntables built in, and often, especially in smaller stations, double as studio production facilities while housed at the station. Submixers are also used in remote productions, especially when a number of different microphones must be used and the inputs on the console are limited, as they usually are.

Cart machines are generally not brought to the remote site because the playing back of spots is done at the studio. Newscasts are generally done at the studio, too. Back at the studio, the signal from the remote usually comes in on a remote pot, and the board operator handles coordination of other program elements originated from the studio. Sometimes program material from a remote location can be microwaved either to the station or directly to the transmitter. Microwave units are becoming increasingly common in radio broadcasting; in fact, larger stations may have dozens of such mini-transmitters in strategic locations throughout the city.

Telephone lines

In small and medium-sized markets, the link is still by land line, a telephone line known as a broadcast loop. The loop is a high-quality transmission line, rented by the telephone company, which connects the remote broadcast site to the station. Lines of different qualities are available, depending on the frequency range they can carry. Most stations have a standard policy concerning the type of loop typically ordered; when in doubt, ask the station's chief engineer about the ordering procedure.

When the line is installed, one end of it will, of course, terminate at the station. The other end, called the **telco drop,** will terminate at the site you select for your broadcast. There, your engineering staff will hook up the equipment to the telephone line termination. Usually the operation is not complicated, but it is best left to technically qualified people.

However, you as producer will have to find the terminal block left by the telephone company. This isn't always easy—especially in large environments such as state fairs—so it's essential to check well in advance on the location of the terminal. A crew of production people frantically scrambling to find the terminal a half-hour before airtime is not an uncommon sight in the typical remote broadcast.

Other equipment

A standard telephone is handy, too, so that the remote on-air person will have a backup method of communicating with the studio. In broadcasting from a store, you may elect simply to use an available telephone—if the store owner will let you—and keep the line open to the board operator at the station. In more inaccessible locations, the telephone company can install a separate telephone when the transmission line is installed.

The separate telephone is a good idea. Although the remote announcer can communicate back to the station by talking over the air line when the remote signal is in cue (back on the station console), that type of operation can be risky because the communication could wind up on the air. Sometimes, though, the remote announcer and the station board operator won't be able to take time out to chat, and some system of signals or protocol should be worked out in advance to avoid confusion. This will be examined shortly.

Microphones are, of course, part of the equipment needed for a remote broadcast. You will be well advised to use rugged moving coil mics, because remote work can be rough on equipment. Determining whether to use a cardioid mic depends on the physical environment and how much background noise you want included. Overuse of microphone directionality can detract from the broadcast; after all, if you are on remote from a store you want it to sound like a store, not a studio.

Mic technique is also a consideration outdoors. Wind filters, such as the one shown in Figure 13.2, are useful in eliminating wind noise, which on a mic doesn't sound like wind at all but more like the rumble of a foundry. Be aware that cardioid mics are much more susceptible to wind noise than the omnidirectional types.

In some instances, you may wish to add a mic to pick up wild sounds. In a basketball game, for example, mics are often placed near the backboards to capture the genuine sound of the game. Separate mics on the crowd also provide color and give additional flexibility to the balance of announcer and crowd noise (since the volume of the mics can be controlled separately on a console or submixer).

Picking up a speaker is often a problem in remote news coverage, whether it is for a remote broadcast live or for recording on the scene. You will be at an advantage if the speaker at, for example, a press conference is standing or seated at a lectern. By placing your mic on the lectern, you can usually obtain reasonably good quality.

Placing your mic on a lectern often involves taping it to a group of other reporters' mics, so a roll of masking or duct tape is an essential element in your package of remote equipment. If there is no other mic on the lectern, and you don't have a table or floor stand, you can improvise with the tape and attach the microphone in a jury-rigged manner (Fig. 13.3). Be careful whenever you tape a mic to a lectern, though, because unless you want to dismantle it during the speaker's remarks, you will be pretty much committed to staying for the entire presentation.

Be sure to pack enough cable to reach your recorder, mixer, or other equipment. More details on planning and packing for a remote are offered later in this chapter.

Another way to pick up audio from a speaker is to tap into the public address system. (PA mics are generally not the best quality, however, and you may wind up with a poor-quality signal.) Many PA systems were set up with this function in mind. If you can't have advance access to the PA block, make sure to bring a variety of connectors; although most PA terminals have standard XLR outputs, some do not.

A variation of the PA terminal is the multiple, which is often set up by savvy public relations people to allow reporters to tap into audio. Public relations people often provide this as a way to keep the lectern free of a forest of microphones. Professionally supplied multiples often have both mic level and line level outputs for the convenience of broadcasters.

In sports applications, headset microphones are often used. In addition to excellent noise cancellation (because of the physical qualities of the mic and because the element is close to the speaker's mouth), these are ideal when the announcer will be in a noisy situation, such as a ringside seat in a boxing arena. Headset mics also leave the announcer's hands free and

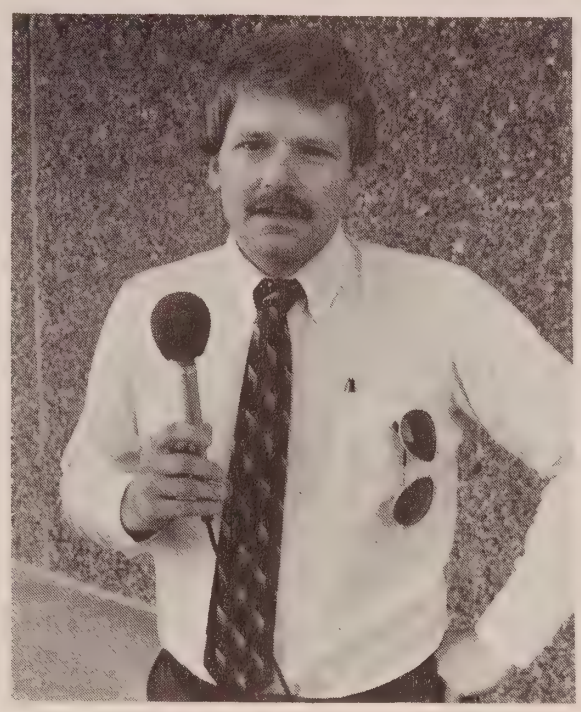


Figure 13.2. *Carl Hausman illustrates the use of a mic with a wind screen, for outdoor assignments.*

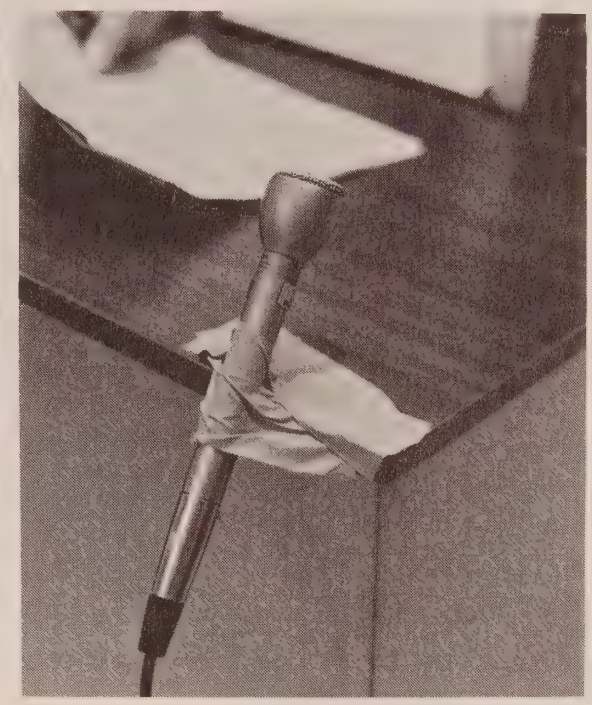


Figure 13.3. *A mic taped to a lecturn.*

don't crowd the table, a definite asset when there are many statistics and other items to be kept track of.

Some headsets are wireless and transmit an FM signal. The director's private line can usually be fed into one earphone, simplifying contact between production and talent, an option primarily used in television. Some have a built-in cough switch to turn the mic off if the announcer needs to cough, clear his throat, or communicate with someone off-air.

PLANNING THE REMOTE

A remote must be well planned. Indeed, one of the major sources of trouble in remote broadcasts has been and continues to be lack of advance planning. Remember that there is a great deal of detail work necessary for proper execution of remote broadcasts, and there is also quite a bit of pressure associated with these events. Much advertiser money is at stake, along with the prestige of the station. In many cases, rights for a sports broadcast have been paid for in advance, so the producer must be prepared to protect his station's interests by providing a well thought-out and airworthy product.

The first step in planning is securing the contractual arrangement, which might involve a merchant signing a contract with the sales department, or

the administration of a college contracting with your station for rights to a sporting event. This is the time to be sure that you understand the conditions that will exist at the site from which the program will originate. It is essential at this point to have a clear understanding of what will and what will not be provided for the broadcast: Will you have access to electricity? Telephones? A physically secure enclosure for your equipment?

Preparing the site

The next step is to survey the site. This should, ideally, be done twice: before and after installation of the phone line. On the first visit you can familiarize yourself with the area and make a rough plan showing the locations for various pieces of equipment. During the first visit you will also want to determine the availability of power and to assess external noise and wind conditions. The next purpose of the initial visit is to determine exactly where you want the phone line terminated and to prepare explicit instructions for the phone company.

On the second inspection, made closer to the air date, you verify that the phone line (or other transmission facility) is in place and make sure that conditions have not changed since your first visit. Check to make sure, for example, that new sources of noise have not been introduced, or that the recently erected broadcast booth isn't facing directly into the wind.

It's not always possible to make two checks, especially if you are planning a remote to another city, but the truism of better safe than sorry certainly applies to remote radio broadcasting.

Preparing the equipment

For the lack of a connector, the broadcast could be lost. The same caveat applies to microphones, cables, and power cords. Take an inventory of equipment before you leave for the site and immediately after you arrive. Although particular needs will vary, your inventory list will probably resemble this one:

- ☐ Console and/or mixers
- ☐ Microphones
- ☐ Wind filters
- ☐ Cable (at least twice as much as you think will be needed)
- ☐ A variety of connectors and adaptors (male to male, female to female, and male to female)
- ☐ Power cords and adaptors for two-prong and three-prong outlets
- ☐ Tape (electrical, masking, and duct)
- ☐ Portable and accurate electric clock

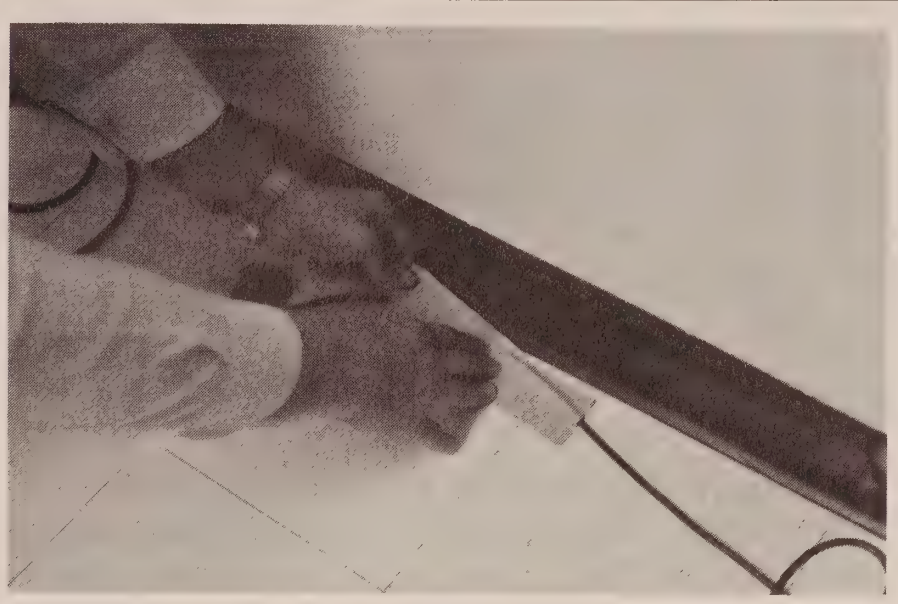


Figure 13.4. *Using tape to secure cable to the floor is a good safety measure.*

- Portable radio for local pickup of the signal
- Recorders, if used
- Earphones
- Mic stands and clamps
- Screwdrivers, scissors, and other tools

Incidentally, an adequate supply of tape is very important for safety considerations. To avoid imposing a hazard on yourself or others, tape mic cables securely to the floor as shown in Figure 13.4. Better yet, string them from the ceiling if possible.

Preparing a communication system

One of the most embarrassing and unprofessional situations in broadcasting can develop when the remote announcer and the board operator back at the station can't figure out who is supposed to do what. Much of this confusion can be avoided by planning out a protocol in advance.

Your role as producer may include acting as either remote announcer or board announcer; if this is the case, work out in advance what will be aired at the studio and when. Is the weather to be read from the studio? If not, how will the weather forecast find its way to the remote announcer? The board operator and remote announcer should have a clear understanding about such matters. The remote announcer can also keep the production flowing smoothly by giving cues to the station board operator, such as "In

a moment, we'll go back to the station for the local news, but first let's talk to Joe Robinson, who is manager of the . . . ."

Preparing the communication system also can involve the separate phone line mentioned earlier. Although the individual details will vary, advance thought about the site, equipment, and method of communication is always a necessary part of remote radio production. Next, let's examine some of the particular requirements germaine to sports broadcasting.

THE SPORTS REMOTE

Planning for the sports remote is important, too. The producer of a sports event, who in smaller markets may double as the announcer, will be responsible for assembling for the announcers, rosters of players, color information, and statistics, and will also be responsible for the physical setup. Practice is very helpful. If you can possibly arrange it, try sample coverage (record it on site for your reference) of a similar sporting event, preferably one held in the same location.

In preparation for the sports broadcast, check all connections and mics. Be especially careful of the location of the crowd mic and be prepared to move it or have another one already strung up; one raucous and/or obscene fan can badly foul up all your plans.

Talk to the announcers about who will handle the starts and stops of the broadcast—who will announce the commercials, who will start talking when the remote starts, and who will be responsible for communicating with the studio in the event of equipment problems or other difficulties. Plan who will toss the program back to the studio for play of taped segments, such as commercials and station identifications.

Finally, be aware that outdoor sporting events are subject to rainout and rain delay. Work out in advance when and if the program will go back to the station in event of rain delay. Will the board operator play records? Will the announcers fill with talk and feature pieces?

All sporting events offer unique challenges to the producer. Following are some suggestions for the individual problems posed by various sports.

Baseball

The possibility of game delay is one of the biggest factors in planning for a baseball game, so use the guidelines above to make contingency plans. As producer remember that baseball games have many portions of little or no action, so selection of an eloquent and conversational announcer is a must.

From a technical standpoint, the sounds of a baseball game don't always travel back to the point of the announcer's mic. (This is a problem common

to many sports.) A shotgun mic or parabolic mic (a mic positioned in a reflective bowl) can be used to pick up the crack of the bat or the slapping of the ball into the catcher's mitt.

Hockey

The producer of radio coverage for a hockey game has to select very good air people. The action is so fast that it's difficult for an inexperienced announcer to keep on top of it.

An action mic adds interest because the sounds of the hockey game aren't very loud.

Football

Producers of radio football coverage should be aware that their listeners are among the most technically oriented fans in sports. In-depth analysis is usually called for, and you'll need someone who can handle this task. Also, football sportscasts benefit from a fairly large staff; if you can find someone to keep track of statistics, downs, and penalties, you'll help the announcers do a better job.

Basketball

Basketball is subject to many audio problems. A gymnasium packed with cheering people is a difficult environment from which to broadcast; a half-empty gym can be even worse because of reverberation problems.

In high school coverage you probably won't have access to a press box, and even in many college games coverage is done from a table set up on the gym floor. The mic must be selected with an ear toward eliminating noise from people next to the announcer, and toward decent **acoustics** at the floor level.

One option is to use a directional mic or headset mic for the announcer and have a separate crowd mic. The two can then be mixed to provide a better-sounding balance. You may suspend the mic down from the press box, or even elect to string mics from the structure holding the backboard; this will add some interesting sounds to the coverage.

Basketball involves a great deal of statistical information, so the announcer(s) must have the capability of keeping numbers straight. For example, listeners will want to know how many fouls or rebounds a certain player has up to a certain point of the game, and it takes a well-organized announcer—or an announcer with some competent help—to have those stats at his or her fingertips.

Field sports

Sports played on a flat field, such as field hockey, soccer, and rugby, usually are difficult to cover for a number of reasons. First, there often are not bleachers or seats to lift the announcer above the action and offer a proper perspective. Second, wind noise is often a factor when there is no stadium to block air currents. Crowd noise is also a problem, since there may be no place to hang a crowd mic. Spectators may be hundreds of feet away or, conversely, 5 feet from your mic. There also tend to be problems with power and line availability.

In field sports, one of the best options available is to have a parabolic or shotgun mic on hand to pick up ambient noise from the crowd and from the athletes. (Wind filters usually can be a great help.)

You might wish to build a small platform to elevate the announcer if no vantage point is available. The top of a building usually works in a pinch. If you can't build a platform and the playing area is far from a structure, the bed of a pickup truck is better than nothing.

Boxing

An auxiliary mic is handy to pick up action sounds, as well as instructions in the corner between rounds. Of course some of the things said in a boxer's corner are not appropriate for airing. The same caution goes for the remarks of ringside spectators. A directional mic is in order because the announcer is within a few feet of spectators, not in a press box.

A FINAL NOTE

The day of a remote is typically a tense one for the people responsible for its execution, and the degree of tension is usually in inverse proportion to the amount of advance planning.

The most important factor in doing a remote broadcast, especially a sporting event, is *getting there on time.* Arriving on time is a frequent problem in coverage of major sports. Why? Because what normally is a 10 minute drive to the stadium can take 2 hours on game day, when the thoroughfares are choked with traffic. If the event is in your hometown, you'll have a good idea of travel time to the site on game day. If it is an away game, try and book accommodations within walking distance, or plan to leave very far ahead of schedule to ensure that you're on site in time for the broadcast.

One broadcaster of our acquaintance recalls with horror the day he was scheduled to announce play-by-play for a major college game. Traffic was terrible, and he had the distinctly unpleasant experience of hearing the na-

tional anthem over his car radio as he waited in traffic, vainly trying to get to the stadium on time.

In conclusion, we'd like to bring up the planning issue again. Problems can and do occur, but advance preparation can make the difference between an inconvenience and a horror story. Having backup equipment can make the difference between executing a quick repair and not going on the air at all.

APPLICATIONS

Situation 1/The Problem. The producer/announcer for a remote inside a grocery store had a great deal of difficulty with noise from the air conditioning system directly above her location. The setup couldn't be moved, so a directional mic was substituted. Now, however, there was no ambient noise whatsoever—the goal of the remote was to present a program from the new grocery store, but the broadcast might as well have come from a closet.

One possible solution. A mic was suspended from the ceiling over the cash registers, and the ambient noise fed into a mixer. A proper balance was struck between the announcer's mic and the ambient mic. Now, there was a sense of location to the remote.

Situation 2/The Problem. Live reports from the local golf tournament sounded flat and entirely lifeless.

One possible solution. The radio producer borrowed a technique from television and used a parabolic mic to pick up the swish of the clubs swinging and the plink of the ball dropping into the cup. Now, when the announcer said "We're standing near the eighteenth green, where Lee Leonard is about to putt for an eagle . . ." listeners could hear the ball being struck and dropping.

Exercises

1. Test out the sound qualities of various locations by taking a portable tape recorder and mic into various areas and business establishments. Try recording a test tape (with permission from the manager) in an auto dealer's showroom, a supermarket, a locker room, a restaurant, a shopping mall, an open field, and other locations you want to try.

   Briefly jot down the characteristics you feel each location has, and note the problems each might present for a remote broadcast.

2. Write down some of the special problems you think might be encountered in the following situations. Also, propose possible solutions. For

example, consider the situation of a booth at the fair grounds. You may encounter such problems as a rowdy crowd or heavy wind from the west. To solve these problems you should (1) ask the fairgrounds manager to station one of the police officers on duty near the booth and (2) put the remote console against the west-facing wall to keep wind from hitting the mic and possibly from dislodging the tonearms (this does happen).

Now, think of problems and solutions for:

- Coverage of a high school swim meet
- Remote from the construction site of a new building
- Remote from the opening of the Lilac Festival, held in a city park

3. Plan and execute a remote from the hallway or adjacent room outside your production studio. You and your partners can invent any situation you wish, but there is one ground rule: You cannot iron out problems by opening the door and conversing. Any communication must be done by wires that you and your instructor or lab assistant run yourself, or by intercom or telephone. Set up mics and turntables, if possible, and run their output back from the hallway or separate room into the board on the production studio. Assign some duties, such as playing commercials or reading the news, to the board operator in the studio.

14
Advanced Radio Production

This chapter on advanced production will serve as a jumping-off point for exploration into other specialized areas. Multichannel recording of music, for example, is a specialty within itself, and we can offer only a basic introduction in this chapter. As part of that discussion, we'll deal with stereo recording and briefly explore the relationship of a stereo signal to radio broadcasting. Engineering and other technical operations are specialties, too. Without writing a primer on electronics, we nevertheless introduce a few basic terms and concepts that might be useful to radio production people interested in expanding their knowledge in these areas.

The applications of audio in other media form a wide-ranging field, and while those applications typically involve the basic principles dealt with in this book, many are outside our scope. For a comprehensive guide to these applications, as well as to more advanced applications of the principles put forth in this book, we suggest *Audio in Media,* by Stanley R. Alten. You will find this book an excellent continuation of the information presented here.

MULTICHANNEL RECORDING

Many radio stations today are incorporating multichannel production facilities within their studio setups. Multichannel recording equipment allows for quality recording and mixing of music and other complex audio projects, such as sound tracks to multimedia presentations.

What exactly does multichannel mean? Pretty much what the name indicates: the console and recorder are capable of isolating a number of channels, depending on the channel configuration of the console and the track configuration of the record/playback system. It's important to make a distinction between tracks, which are associated only with tape ma-

chines, and channels, which may be associated with either tape machines or consoles.

A separate audio source can be placed on each of these channels and mixed into the final product. In music recording, for example, drums can be isolated on one channel, the lead vocalist on another, and guitar on yet another. This allows the producer to balance the sound sources properly and to remix the sources after the recording. Also, multichannel audio consoles typically offer a variety of sound-shaping effects that can alter the coloration of the sound.

Common formats for multichannel recording include arrangements of 4, 8, 16, 26, and 32 tracks; 16-track is one of the more popular formats in quality recording facilities. In 16-track recording there are 16 tracks placed onto the tape; each track can carry one or more audio sources. A console used for complex multitrack recording is pictured in Figure 14.1; a tape machine utilizing 2-inch-wide audio tape, used for multitrack recording, is shown in Figure 14.2.

Why is multichannel used? Because it gives greater flexibility and control. In music recording, for example, recording on multichannel offers a distinct advantage. If the recording of a music ensemble were done simply on one track (or in two tracks in stereo, as discussed later in the chapter), the result would be the *final* result. If the mic position caused the horns to sound too loud, little could be done. With multichannel recording, however, the horns are miked separately, and their volume can be increased or decreased during the following session, called the mixdown, when the musical elements are remixed.

But the advantages of multichannel recording don't stop there. Suppose the horn part was hopelessly bungled during the recording. Since each instrument is separately miked and recorded with multichannel, another musician could be brought in to rerecord nothing but the horn part, which would then be mixed into the final product. Such flexibility also allows a singer to cut several versions of a song until the desired sound is achieved. A singer can also *overdub* his or her own voice, adding a harmony part, for instance, to a previously recorded song.

Multitrack has another advantage in that multichannel consoles allow for sound shaping; that is, a variety of electronic devices can be used to alter the quality of the audio signal both during the recording and after the mixdown.

Before discussing those features, let's look at a typical console setup. The console pictured in Figure 14.3 is an eight-channel model. Even though it offers less channel capacity than a 16-track model, it functions according to the same basic principles. Always remember that regardless of the intricacy of the hardware, the principle is the same, namely: In a multichannel mixing console you have a double-duty board. One side of the board controls inputs. The other side controls outputs. This structure relates to the function

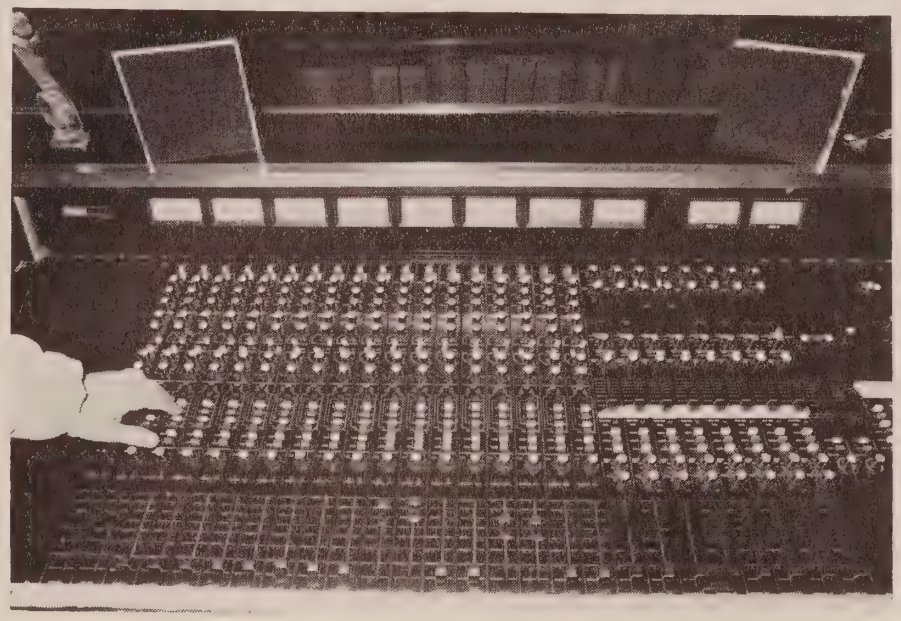


Figure 14.1. *A multitrack recording console.*

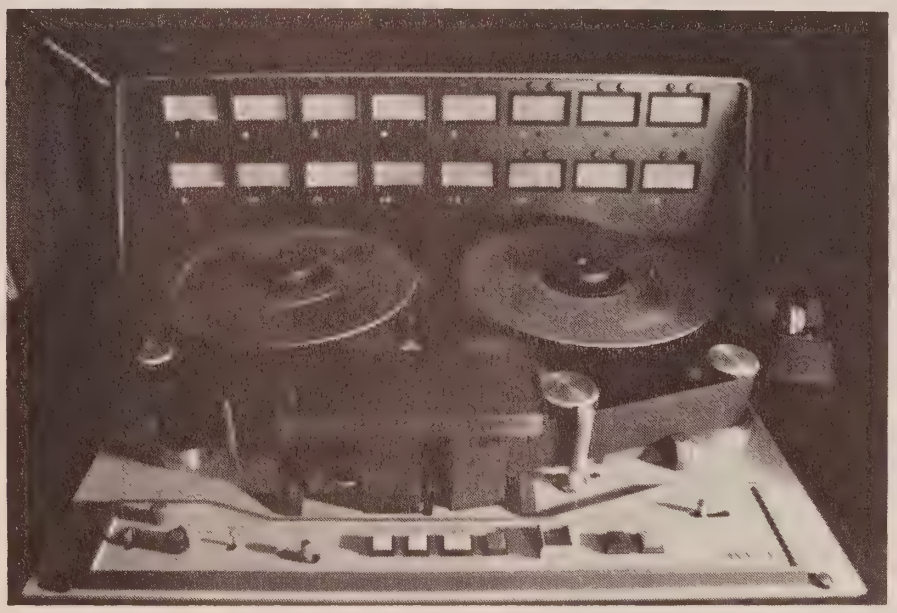


Figure 14.2. *A tape machine using 2-inch audio tape, for multitrack recording.*

of a recording engineer and a recording producer; basically, the engineer makes sure that the inputs are correct and the meters are reading properly, while the producer, sitting to the right, governs the mix and remix of the output of the console.

Input modules

The input side (Fig. 14.4) of the board takes in the signals from the mics (or other sources) and sends them through a series of circuits. A signal is routed through a series of circuits known as modules, the controls of which are

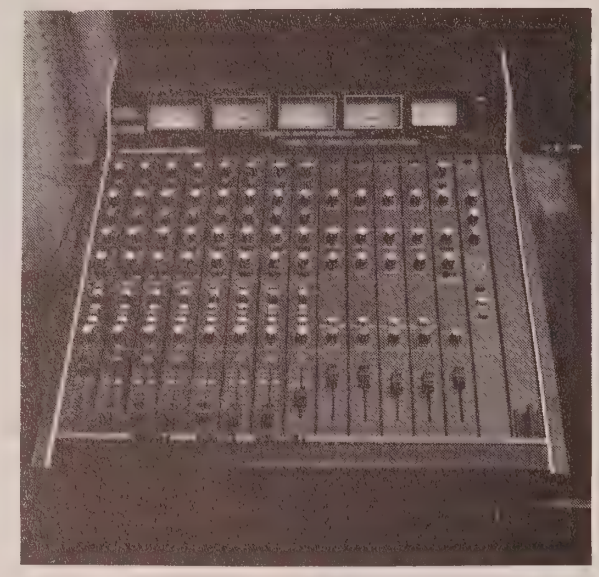


Figure 14.3. An eight-track console.

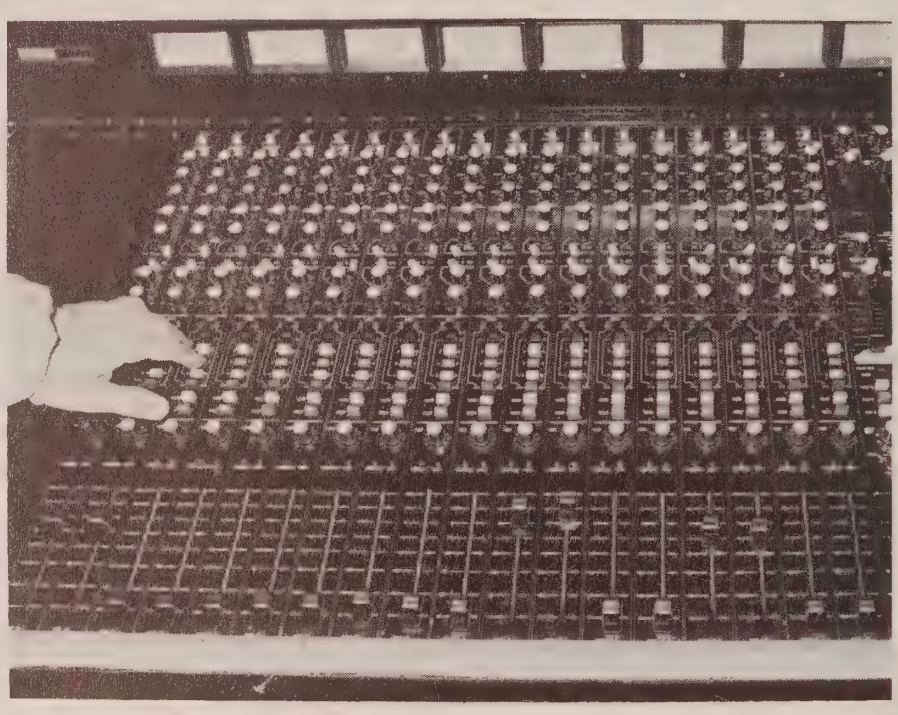


Figure 14.4. The input side of a multitrack console.

located in vertical columns. There are modules for each channel on each side of the console. The circuits in the input modules (which are not listed in the order of signal flow) include the following.

The vertical/slide fader. Multitrack consoles utilize vertical/slide faders rather than circular pots, ostensibly because the position of a bank of slide faders is easier to perceive at a glance than the positions of several dials. Also, most producers find it easier to control many faders than to control many dials.

Input selection controls. These include mic level and line level selectors. In addition to selection of sources, multitrack consoles offer a *trim* control, which

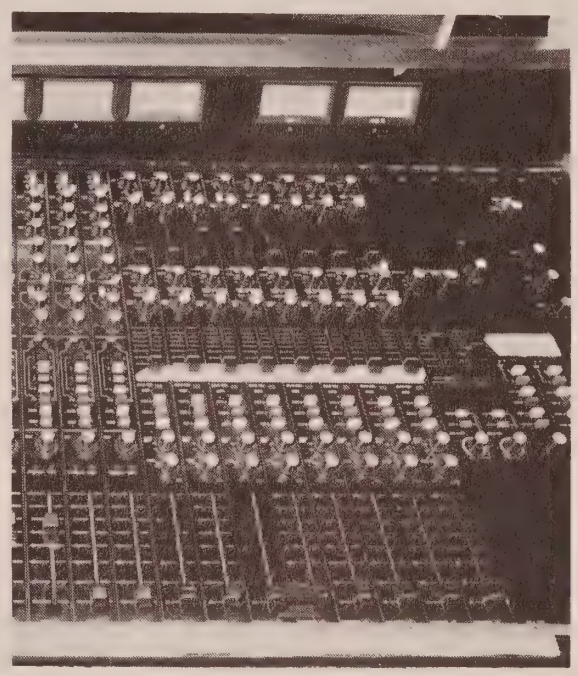


Figure 14.5. *Output buses.*

is a fine level adjustment of the volume of the input that allows you to keep sliders in the optimal control area.

Sound shapers. Equalizers and **filters** are located on the input modules. An equalizer alters the frequency pattern of an audio source; an equalizer can, for example, boost a certain range of frequencies. A filter, on the other hand, eliminates frequencies of a certain range, as explained in the section on equipment. A reverberation effect also is typically found on an input module.

Pan pot. This pot varies the amount of signal sent to each side of the stereo signals. Panning the pot to the left will send more of the signal to the left channel, and vice versa. A pan pot is used in the final mixdown.

Solo. This control mutes other inputs so that the channel being soloed can be heard alone.

Bus delegation. This controls sending the signal from the input modules to the board's output modules, which are known as buses. A **bus** is a junction of circuits. Any number of input channels can be routed into a particular bus in the output section of the console. Remember program and audition on a radio board? They, too, are buses.

Output buses

Output buses (Fig. 14.5) send the signal to the tape machine and to the monitors (although there are additional controls for the monitors, usually

above the output buses). The bus feature allows the signals assigned to each bus to be altered in volume, and some effects can also be added at the output level. The important thing to remember is that the output buses correspond to track numbers on the tape.

Monitor controls

On the multitrack board controls, the signal flow to the loudspeakers is governed by the monitor controls.

A note about multichannel consoles

The variety of hardware involved in multichannel recording is mind-boggling, and a discussion of multichannel usually winds up surveying the latest technical wonders on the market. However, the important thing about multichannel recording is not the technical features offered. What you should remember is that multichannel consoles have an input and an output section; the input circuits shape the audio signal and assign it (and any other inputs you designate) to a particular output bus. The output bus is a circuit junction that feeds a particular track on the tape machine. A multichannel board can send signals to a recorder through the same pots that are used for mixdown; some channels can be premixed—drums, for example, often are put on only one of the 16 tracks even though four separate channels may have been used for recording the drums. Because of the ability to shape sound and assign particular signals to certain tracks, the multichannel recording system gives great flexibility to the recordist and allows remixing of the program material.

Although hardware may vary, the principle won't. If you understand the principle, you'll be able to adapt with a minimum of instruction to the particular configuration of any multichannel console.

Role of multitrack recording

Radio stations more frequently are utilizing multitrack recording for operations such as recording commercial jingles and recording and mixing music presentations. In addition, multitrack work has wide application in a number of related audio areas. Multitrack is, however, primarily the domain of the music recordist, and music recording is sometimes encountered by radio station personnel.

While multitrack mixing does offer great flexibility in music recording, it is not the only way to record music. Some musical presentations are recorded simply by mounting a pair of microphones (or a stereo mic) above a musical ensemble. Since most music recording is in stereo, we'll deal with

stereo recording and miking next. Then, we'll wrap up the discussion of music by demonstrating mic techniques used in multitrack recording.

STEREO

Any console routes signals into a master channel or master channels. In the case of stereo, there are two master channels, usually designated as the left and right channels. Stereo gives a sense of depth to the program material, in much the same way as two ears or two eyes give a sense of depth.

Stereo broadcasting, long a staple of the FM band, has recently moved into AM broadcasting as well, with many stations adopting AM stereo. While there was, at the time of writing, some ambiguity over the type of receiving system which would eventually become standardized, it appears that AM stereo will become a major aspect of broadcasting.

Stereo is popular because the balance between left and right gives a feeling of location in space. In a symphony orchestra, for example, violins are seated to the left. In a stereo reproduction, the sound of the violins emanates primarily from the left-hand speaker, giving the listener the same sense of spatial orientation. In terms of physics, this sense of spatial orientation is created because your ears are attuned to decoding the very slight difference when sound reaches the ears. That's why you're able to tell the approximate position of someone speaking to you even if you're blindfolded.

A feature of multichannel recording not yet mentioned is the ability to artificially assign a spatial relationship to a particular sound. Do you want the guitar to come from the left and the sax to come from the right? It's a simple matter of manipulating the pan pot controls.

Stereo consoles used in broadcasting such as the one pictured in Figure 14.6 are able to process the stereo signal; they have a separate VU meter for each master channel. Operation of a stereo broadcast console is essentially the same as operation of a monaural console, but you can control the left and right channels with one pot instead of two.

There is a significant difference involved in stereo versus monaural recording process, however. We've presented the information in this chapter in a specific order, leading up to a discussion of music recording mic techniques, because the explanation of stereo mic techniques should clarify the roles of sound, stereo, and mixing. Understanding the basics of music recording is illuminating in terms of all areas of audio.

RECORDING MUSIC

There are two ways to record music in stereo: **total sound recording** and **isolated component recording.** Total sound recording involves, for ex-

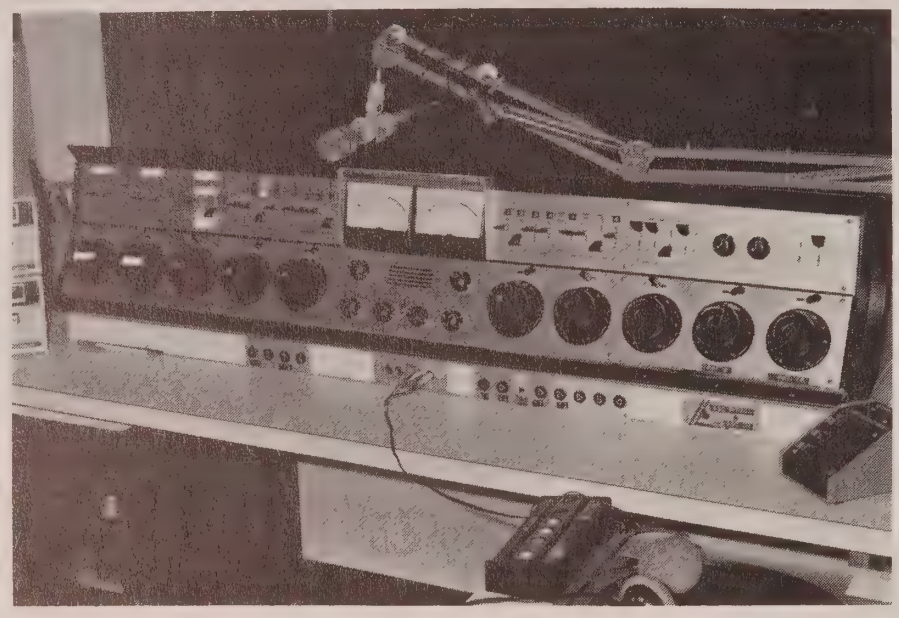


Figure 14.6. A typical radio station stereo console.

ample, setting up two mics (one for each stereo track) and recording a symphony concert. As mentioned earlier, this method is a one-shot deal: Your product is essentially the final version. In isolated component recording you set up a number of mics on various sections of the orchestra and mix the inputs with a multichannel console.

Which do you choose? Total sound recording is often used for symphony concerts because the mics pick up the ambience of the concert hall. It is also simpler to set up mics and—some people contend—this approach does not impart an artificial sound to the music. Total sound recording also eliminates a lot of problems associated with multiple mics, such as phasing.

Isolated component recording is more common in the recording studio (as opposed to the concert hall) and is most often used for popular music.

Both methods can produce excellent results. For many radio production applications, isolated component recording is more useful because the music (or other program material) can be remixed, which is highly practical when recording commercial jingles and/or voice-overs.

Total sound recording microphone techniques

Confronted with an orchestra or chorus, where does one place the mics? Usually on the ceiling above the audience section, facing, of course, the orchestra or chorus. Cardioid mics are quite commonly used, and in one case a bidirectional mic is mixed in. The most popular methods of orienting the mics are called coincident, spaced pair, and middle side.

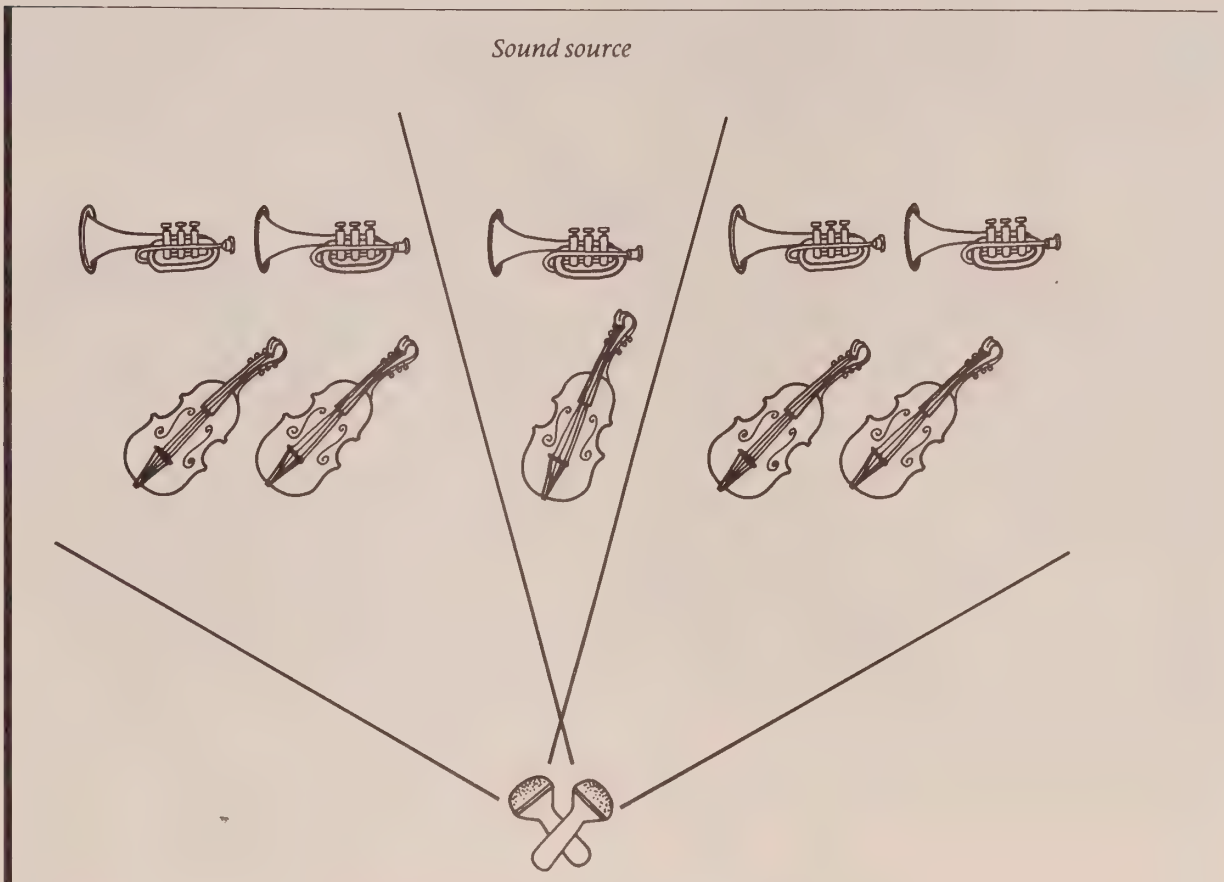


Figure 14.7. *Coincident miking.*

Coincident mics. This arrangement (Fig. 14.7) involves crossing two cardioid mikes, usually at about a 90 degree angle. This imitates the way the ears hear and results in the kind of sound you would hear sitting in the middle of the house. Why? Because the mic for the left channel picks up most of the sounds from the left side of the stage, the mic for the right channel picks up most of the sounds from the right side of the stage, and the sounds emanating from the middle are balanced between the two. If the mic angle is too narrow, the spatial illusion is lost, and if the angle is too wide there will be a "hole" in the middle of the orchestra.

Spaced-pair mics. When the mics are parallel, usually a foot or two apart (Fig. 14.8), you get a very "broad" sound. Having a spaced pair heightens the stereo effect, although the mics are subject to some phase cancellation problems, since their pickup patterns have quite a bit of overlap.

Middle-side mic technique. Middle-side miking involves a bidirectional mic picking up from either side, with a cardioid facing the middle (Fig. 14.9). Middle-side miking results in an extremely spacious sound, but it needs a special device known as a phase inverter to add the signals together properly.

These techniques can be used successfully in a variety of applications for total sound recording. In addition, they can be used to mic one instrument

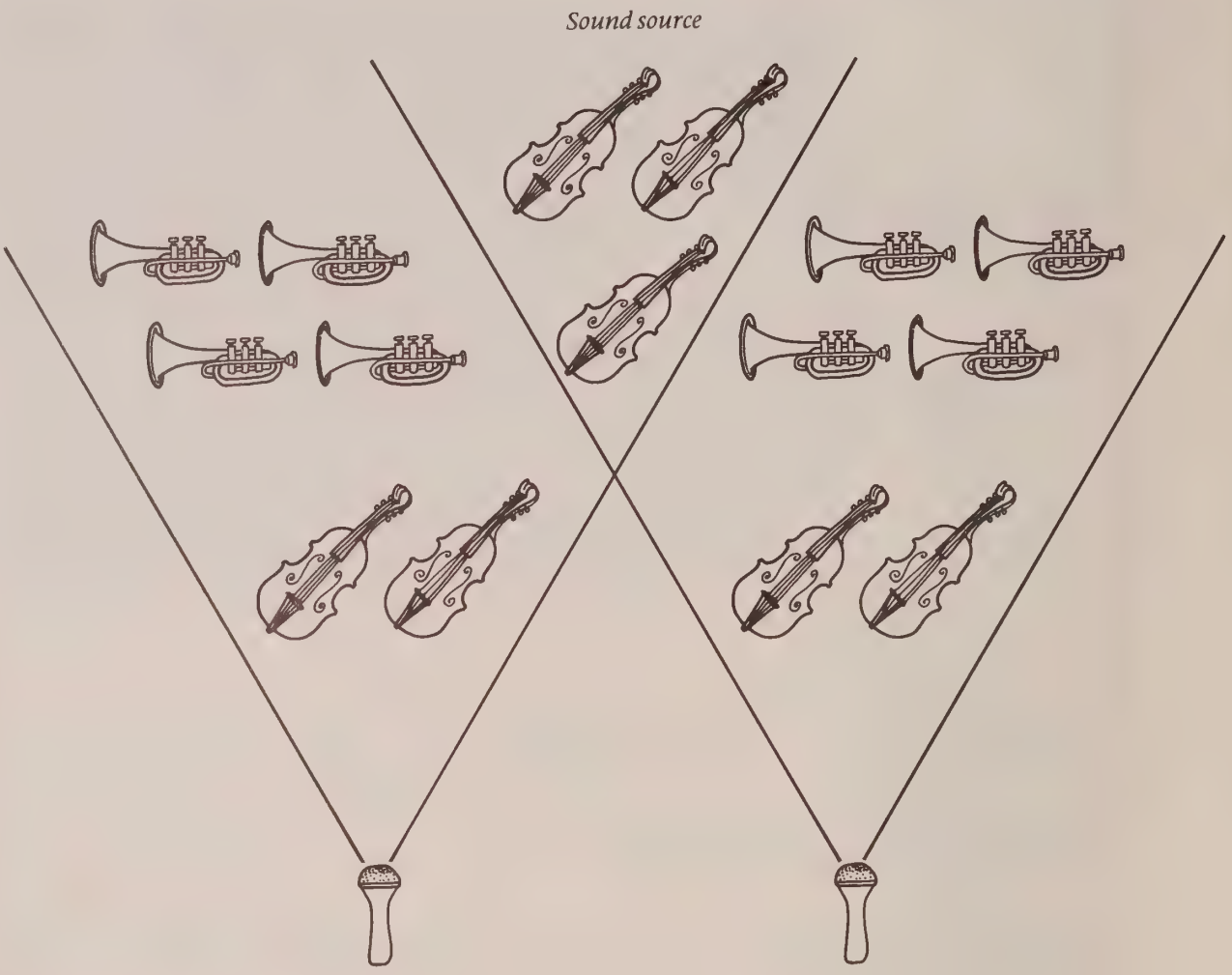


Figure 14.8. *Spaced-pair mics.*

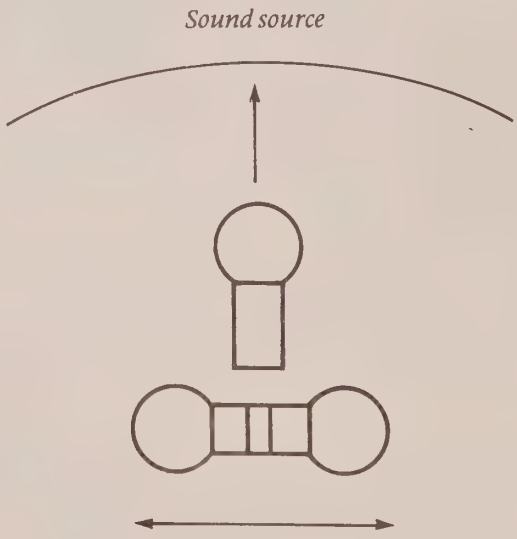


Figure 14.9. *Middle-side miking.*

in isolated component recording, although most instruments are generally picked up with one mic because the capabilities of the console will be used to spatially orient the instrument.

Isolated component recording

The most common question posed about isolated component recording is: How can the mic pick up only one instrument? Isolating instruments from one another in the sound studio often requires the use of baffles or isolation booths, or physically moving one instrument to another room. However, the use of a mic on one instrument results in considerable isolation from the sounds of other instruments, a factor that is often surprising to the first-time recordist.

The following mic techniques are useful in isolated component recording.

For singers. Most popular vocalists are comfortable with a relatively close mic distance, while classical singers prefer a larger distance. In any event, the distance is almost always under a foot, with the mic placed roughly at mouth level. It is generally not considered good practice to let the vocalist handle the mic.

For drums. Miking drums can be a very complex affair, involving as many as a half-dozen mics. Many recordists favor a separate mic for each unit (high hat, cymbal, snare, tom-tom, etc.), while others prefer to mic the whole drum set from above, often with a crossed pair. It's basically a matter of experimentation and individual judgment.

For pianos. In the method shown in Figure 14.10, one mic is pointed toward the lower strings and another toward the higher strings. This results in a broad mix of the sound. Other methods include pointing a mic toward the open top of a grand piano. Some recordists stick a mic into one of the sound holes. Sensitive condenser mikes, such as the AKG 451s shown here, are often favored for piano recording.

For strings. An electric guitar (and, for that matter an electric synthesizer) can be miked by pointing a microphone at the loudspeaker that is fed by the guitar. Special transformers can be used to route the signal from the guitar directly into the console.

Acoustic guitars are generally miked by pointing a mic toward the sounding hole. The AKG 451 is a good choice; it is quite sensitive to the subtle sounds of vibrating strings.

For brass. Brass is usually miked near the bell, since all the sound exits from the bell. An EV RE20 is a good choice because this durable moving coil mic won't be overpowered by the full sound of a trumpet. In addition, its characteristic warm sound tones down some of the trumpet's blare.

Figure 14.10. Miking a piano.

For woodwinds. Because most of a woodwind's sound exits from the finger holes (not the bell), that is where the mic belongs. The Neumann U87 is very sensitive to the warm breathiness of a clarinet and gives an excellent response (Fig. 14.11).

For ensemble work. With small rock groups, you can easily place a mic on each instrument. With larger ensembles, you'll want to designate a mic for sections: one for the violins, another for the brass, and so on. It's largely a matter of experience and experimentation.

ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT AND ITS USE IN RADIO PRODUCTION

Radio is an ever-changing field, and the equipment utilized can be highly complex. We're going to introduce some of the more advanced radio gadgetry and some of the more interesting applications of technology to producing radio and creating an effect. A radio production professional must keep current with advances in equipment. Read journals, attend conferences, and talk to colleagues; in many areas, radio is a very "state of the art" profession, and it pays to keep abreast of developments.

Equipment

First, let's look at hardware.

Figure 14.11. *Woodwinds are best picked up by placing a mic near the finger holes.*

Equalizers. These devices are a fixture in a recording studio and have many applications in all aspects of broadcasting. Essentially, an equalizer alters the frequency response of an audio signal. It can be used to boost or to cut down certain frequency ranges. One common type is called a *graphic* equalizer because the controls allow you to set a graphic representation of the response curve you would like to affect. By looking at the positions of the faders, you can tell which frequencies within the audible range have been enhanced or diminished. Each equalizer control is usually an octave higher than the preceding one.

Also commonly used in audio is the parametric equalizer. The difference between a graphic equalizer and a parametric lies essentially in the amount of selected frequency that can be manipulated. A parametric equalizer allows you to select one frequency and boost or cut just that frequency or that and surrounding frequencies. You accomplish this by choosing the range above and below the selected frequency you wish to EQ ("EQ" is part of radio lexicon, a verb meaning "to equalize") with a bandwidth control. For example, you could remove an unwanted 60-Hz hum from a remote broadcast better with a parametric equalizer because you would adjust it not to cut adjoining frequencies, which might be desirable because they added depth to your remote broadcast sound. Trying to accomplish this with a graphic equalizer might make the remote sound tinny and weak.

The purpose of an equalizer is to change the character of an audio signal. A recordist wishing to make an instrumental piece sound more bassy and powerful, for example, could use an equalizer to boost the bass frequencies.

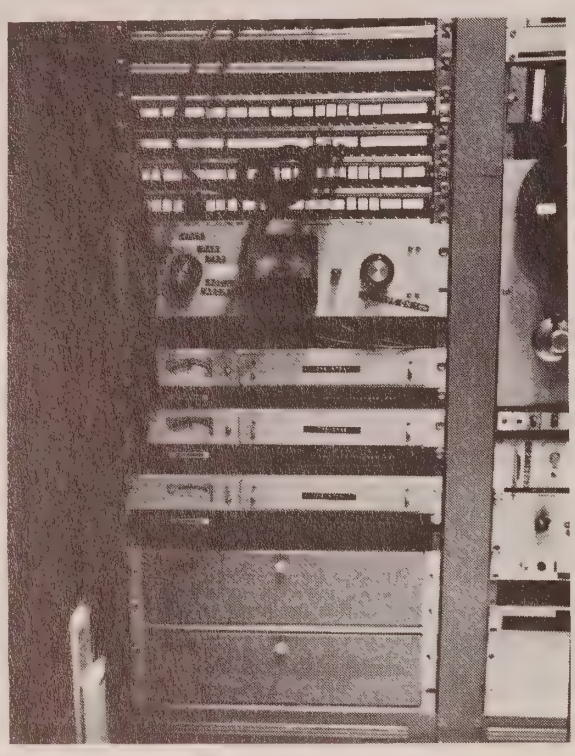


Figure 14.12. *Equipment rack in a radio station.*

Filters. Sometimes, a producer wants to delete a whole range of frequencies. A hiss, for example, can often be eliminated by a *low-pass* filter, which allows lower frequencies to pass but will chop off selected higher frequencies. A *high-pass* filter might be used to eliminate a rumble.

Compressors and limiters. These devices are often found in the equipment rack in radio control rooms (Fig. 14.12). A compressor shrinks the **dynamic range** of the audio signal. Low-volume parts are boosted; high-volume parts will be lowered.

Compression has a number of factors that can be set and varied, including the *attack* time (the length of time it takes for the compressor to kick in after a particular sound affects it) and the *release* time (the length of time the compressor takes to let the signal return to its previous level). A **limiter** is a compressor that severely restricts high-volume noises and has a high ratio of compression. Limiting is useful to keep sudden loud sounds from overmodulating the signal. (In fact, the Federal Communications Commission demands that radio stations keep their signals within certain tolerances to avoid overmodulation.) Compression is often used in radio stations to maintain a relatively constant signal that won't sink low enough to "fall off the dial."

Equipment for noise reduction. Dolby is the trademark of a device that reduces noise. In a professional unit, Dolby divides the frequency spectrum

into three bands, then pre-emphasizes (raises in volume) each band by a certain degree during recording; it raises those frequencies above the noise level. It lowers those frequencies by the same amount in playback. In practice, the frequencies are raised high above the so-called noise floor and then lowered again, such that the noise floor is lowered too, and noise reduced. Dolby units in professional applications are usually rack-mounted and installed in the audio chain between the output of the board and the tape recorder.

Another noise-reducing device goes by the trade name dbx. The dbx has a more pronounced effect than Dolby and uses a more intricate logarithmic formula for expansion and contraction of the sound. It can provide up to 30 dB of noise reduction on tape recordings.

Harmonizers. These electronic devices allow you to vary the pitch, tempo, and **harmonics.** Applications could include removing a harmonic to lessen sibilance in a person's voice and altering the harmonics to create an unhuman-sounding voice, such as a "computer" or "Darth Vader" voice. These devices are expensive—often in the $5,000 range—so they aren't usually found in small markets. A medium market station with a harmonizer often tries to solicit business from area ad agencies that might want a recording facility equipped with special effects.

Flangers. These devices allow you to create a mirror image of a sound and then shift it slightly; this throws the two sounds out of time and phasing and creates a bizarre effect that's been described as something like water rushing through a voice. Essentially the same effect can be done mechanically, as described in connection with the technique of doubletracking.

Pressure zone microphones. These mics, which eliminate proximity effect and phasing problems, are useful for concerts.

Spatial enhancers. These units will mix and subtract components of the stereo signal to produce a signal that gives the impression of a larger spatial environment. The intent is to reproduce more closely the effect of the concert environment.

Techniques

Here are some advanced techniques for special effects (some that use complex equipment and some that don't), which can be useful to a producer.

Echo. An echo is the feedback of the original signal from the playback head, back through the audio chain into the tape machine's record head. In essence, it produces the same effect as yelling "Hello" into stony caverns. By controlling the volume of the playback head through the board, differing amounts of echo can be achieved.

Reverb. Reverb (as in reverberation) differs from echo in that reverb is accomplished with a discrete unit, an electronic device that produces an electronic delay and adds it back to the signal. Unlike echo, reverb has a constant delay time. Since it is an electronic unit, not a matter of feeding back to a different head, it can be adjusted to fine tolerance. Some reverb units have a control called "depth," which allows the producer to vary the amount of original signal mixed back in. Reverb is both a technique and a reference to a particular piece of hardware, a reverb unit.

Forward echo. This is something like an echo in reverse. The echoes appear *before* the original sound, and lend excitement. In a rock format ID, for example, forward echo can lend excitement because the echo builds up before the call letters are given.

Accomplishing a forward echo is as simple as playing a tape backward on tape 1 and rerecording it on tape 2 *with the tape 2 pot open.* Now, playing tape 2 backward will give you an echo building up to the announcement—not away from the announcement, as in a normal echo.

Pan potting. Also known as channel bouncing, this technique takes full advantage of stereo's unique ability to capture the attention of a listener who is not expecting an announcer's voice to move from one location to another within a spot. Pan potting can also be used to create a dramatic effect of motion (such as a train whizzing by).

Changing speeds. Many tape recorders are equipped with pitch controls, which are actually speed controls. They can vary the pitch between 6 and 12 percent. Many of the new direct-drive turntables allow you to accomplish the same function.

One application of changing speeds is to slow down a recorded voice. In a commercial for a medicine, for example, the copy might begin: "Are you feeling out of sorts? . . ." The effect would reinforce the message.

Doubletracking. This interesting special effect, which is relatively simple to produce, involves recording a voice and then altering a copy of that narration—perhaps by equalizing, or slightly changing the speed. Both voices (giving the identical narration) are played back together. The effect gives an eerie, attention-grabbing aspect to the voice. The effect is something similar to **flanging,** described above in the section on equipment.

We've presented only a very limited amount of information on the technical end of radio, and there's a purpose behind that approach. Very often radio instruction becomes a discussion of hardware, and while that's interesting on some levels, it can be counterproductive. Supersophisticated equipment and the equally sophisticated talk that surrounds it seem to cloud the issue of radio production.

Radio production is, in our opinion, an art form. Like any art form, it

requires a thorough understanding of the techniques and tools of the trade. But it is more than stringing equipment together and using gadgetry to produce an audio novelty.

To those of us who have spent much of our lives involved with radio, the medium is a very personal form of communication. It's a communication medium that enters the house, the car, and even keeps us company while jogging. Radio production is the art of achieving the effects that make radio such an intimate, magic medium.

APPLICATIONS

Situation 1/The Problem. The producer of a program was recording a church choir for later playback. She miked each vocal section separately and planned to mix the program. The director of the choir listened to test recording and was not pleased with what he heard. "The choir," he said, "sounds like a group of jingle singers."

One possible solution. Why did the sound vary so much from what the choir director was used to hearing? Because close-up miking of the sopranos, the altos, the tenors, and so on, did not allow the reverberation of the music through the architectural spaces of the church, and thus the effects of the acoustics—and the sound of a church choir—were altered.

The producer opted for a crossed pair of cardioid mikes above the tenth row of pews and was able to achieve a richer, more realistic sound.

Situation 2/The Problem. A group of jingle singers and musicians were performing a commercial for an ice cream parlor. Gay Nineties music was called for, with a banjo and piano. Unfortunately, the sound coming through the mics featured the booming, rich tones of the studio's grand piano, which had mics pointing toward its raised top.

One possible solution. The producer repositioned the mics to a spot directly above the hammers. Now, a lot of hammer was heard, and the piano sounded much more honky-tonk than grand.

Exercises

1. Mic a piano in several ways, noting the effects of different mic placements. Position the mic(s) at any or all of the following locations, noting how the *mix* of mikes at various locations changes the character of the sound, too:

- ☐ Behind the soundboard on an upright
- ☐ In one of the sound holes inside a grand piano

- ☐ Pointing at the raised cover
- ☐ Above the keyboard
- ☐ Above the strings

2. If multichannel recording equipment is available, record a musical group under the supervision of your instructor or lab assistant. Remix the recording twice, using whatever equipment is available. The goal is to make two recordings of the same program material that sound radically different because of the mix.

3. As a variation of Exercise 2, split the class into two groups and let each, separately, record the same performers doing the same musical number. See if the two versions are identical.

APPENDIX A
Radio Production Techniques and Equipment: Views from Practicing Professionals

In some cases, principles spelled out in a textbook are different from those used in the profession. Throughout *Modern Radio Production,* however, we've tried to orient the information as directly as possible to the "real world" of radio production.

Using hardware and developing production skills are often the most difficult aspects of radio production work. Although the process may seem duller than the creative aspect, technical proficiency is absolutely essential and is a prerequisite for solid creative work. Working professionals are generally quick to stress this, and can also offer some excellent tips and insights into the material presented on consoles (Chapter 2), recording and playback units (Chapter 4), microphones (Chapter 5), and basic production techniques (Chapters 6–8).

We've spoken with several radio production pros and asked their advice. The perspective and the kind of information that can be gathered simply by asking questions are most interesting. If nothing else, that's what you should take away from this appendix—the fact that education doesn't stop the day the grades are turned in. Radio professionals can and usually do engage in a life-long learning process by talking with and observing their colleagues. The key is to ask questions. The answers can be helpful and reassuring. For example, it's interesting to note that mastering a console is sometimes intimidating even to an established professional, but once the basic concepts are applied, the operation becomes a simple and creative task. Jack Morton, an air personality for KVI Radio in Seattle, Washington, confirmed that during a recent interview.

Q: When you started at KVI did the board intimidate you at all?

A: Yes, I'd come to what here on the West Coast is a major market, and the board was like flying a 707.

What I did before I went on the air—I was scheduled to go on the

air on a Monday—was to come up on the Saturday night before. I ran an all-night show, which was a very quiet thing—a lot of records—and I got used to what the board does, the individual characteristics of the board. If you know the board well, you can become very at ease.

Q: Many air personalities, of course, run their own board, such as the way it is at KVI. Does running your own board affect the way you come across on the air?

A: Working a board myself, I can maneuver the program any way I want, instantly. If an idea hits I can work it myself without having to contact an engineer on the other side. Whatever prerecorded material I have with me, on cart for example, I can use instantly if an idea hits. And that's the joy of working your own board. Of course, you have to live with it by yourself. It's nobody else's fault.

Q: What are some of the more common mistakes people make when running their own boards during an airshift?

A: Turning up or down a wrong pot when they are trying blindly to go forth; I guess that's one of the most common mistakes. Maybe looking the other way and hitting a news switch when you're not supposed to—and all of a sudden you get a feed from the networks or something.

A radio production professional uses turntables and tape machines daily. One very important part of using recording and playback units is getting good signal quality. For top-quality production work, just getting the message down on tape is not enough.

Paul Hurd, vice-president and chief engineer of WHDH Radio in Boston, has been in radio for 43 years. He has worked extensively with production people in the effort to achieve the best possible audio quality. We asked Hurd to address that issue.

Q: What's a basic piece of advice you can pass along to someone getting started in radio who wants to achieve a good sound in his or her production work?

A: Well, we're assuming that the engineering staff has properly maintained the equipment. After that, I would say that the most important thing an operator can do is to clean the heads of the tape recorder and the pinch roller before each use.

Q: We realize that duties and responsibilities vary from station to station—and in some cases production people don't do this type of thing—but if they are expected to clean heads, is it something, say, a staff announcer can do?

A: Yes, it simply involves standard medicinal alcohol and a swab, like a Q-Tip. Don't put too much on, and make sure it doesn't drip down into the bearings. Then rub it lightly over the heads and the pinch roller. Cleaning the heads will make sure they're free of oxide and residue.

You would be surprised at how sometimes a tiny bit of gunk on the

record head—left on from a bad splice, perhaps—can completely prevent the tape from being recorded at all. Anything that prevents intimate contact between the tape and heads will hurt the quality of the tape. A loss of contact will start to have an effect by causing loss of high-frequency response.

Q: What about high-quality sound from a turntable? What should a producer be aware of?

A: First, treat the tonearm carefully. Second, keep the records clean. What happens is that dust builds up underneath the stylus and actually lifts the stylus off the grooves.

Q: Any other advice?

A: I would say that it's important to watch the VU meter on a tape recorder carefully. Recorders can be very susceptible to distortion if the recorder's meter is pinned. Consoles might have a lot of headroom, but tape recorders don't.

Also, I would like to point out that soft drinks, coffee, and cigarette ashes are the biggest enemies of equipment. A piece of equipment can be virtually ruined by pouring a Coke into it. So try to keep the equipment clean; if you smoke, keep your ashtray away from it, and don't set drinks where accidents can happen.

The sound production—both the quality and the personality of the finished product—also depend on microphone selection. Proper choice of mic is one of the first and most obvious ways of technically manipulating the sound to achieve an effect.

There are a number of special considerations involved in choosing mics for radio, according to Jay Schneider, supervisor of maintenance for the NBC Radio Network. Schneider, who has worked in production as well as maintenance (he has also done production for several syndicated radio shows and for a national cable television network) passed along some helpful suggestions.

Q: What should a producer consider in choosing mics for radio, as opposed to recording studio work?

A: Most recording studios use condenser mics, such as the Neumann U87, for voice recording. However, recording studios are inherently different from radio stations, since for one thing, radio stations often have the announcer operating the equipment. This equipment (cart machines, tape decks, etc.) tends to generate a great deal of mechanical noise. Because condenser mics so accurately reproduce sound, they would also pick up this undesired mechanical noise.

Instead, radio stations that employ combo operations usually use dynamic mics, which do not reproduce sounds as far away from the mic as do condenser mics. The trade off is often a less pure and less warm sound.

Q: Many announcers have mics they prefer to work with, mics whose personalities seem to agree with them. Do you think there's actually any validity to this, or is it just habit or superstition?

A: Each voice is made up of a unique spectrum of frequencies. Likewise, each model microphone tends to reproduce different frequencies with varying degrees of efficiency. Therefore, it is possible to match an announcer with an appropriate mic. For instance, a mic that is more sensitive at low frequencies is best used with an announcer that has a light voice (few lows), so as to compensate for the deficiencies in the voice and help even out the sound. This same mic, when used with an announcer with a deep voice, will tend to overload causing distortion.

Many FM radio stations try to have their announcers achieve a warm sound, to accentuate the lows, because they can be transmitted. AM stations are unable to transmit very low frequencies. To produce this warm sound many announcers try to snuggle up to the mic, but what they really end up doing is overloading the mic. They're not using proper mic technique.

Q: On the subject of proper technique, what are some of the more common mistakes people make when using mics?

A: One of the most common mistakes talent makes when using microphones is popping, caused by someone who hasn't learned to curb heavy *p*'s and *t*'s. That can also happen by speaking too directly into the diaphragm of a dynamic mic.

Spitting and being too close to the mic are other bad habits. There's no reason, ever, to be closer than 6 inches. But I know many FM announcers get really close to it. The engineer at the station may try and get them farther away by putting a big wind screen on the mic, which may also muffle the sound.

Being too far off mic is another problem. In a situation where you have an operator/announcer, that person might be so busy watching to make sure his next record is cued up or make sure that the correct cart is in the machine that he's looking around as he's talking and goes off mic. Announcers should practice moving their eyes, not their head as they announce while looking around. Inconsistency in the level at which an announcer is speaking as well as the distance from the microphone make for a poor performance on the air.

Basic production techniques are the building blocks of the final piece, and while that might sound simplistic, it is indeed true. Bob Mills backed that up when we spoke to him. A veteran of the Rochester, New York, market, Mills has worked as a radio staff announcer and was an extremely popular weatherman at WROC radio and television. Today, Bob Mills is president of an agency that handles broadcast advertising. Much of Mills's radio commercial production work is done for national markets.

Q: How do the production basics presented in Chapters 6, 7, and 8 relate to the kind of sophisticated production done by Bob Mills and Company?

A: Understanding the basics of any kind of production technique is absolutely essential, because if you don't know how to do the technical operations, you can't use the full potential of radio to produce a spot. Even if you're not the person doing the hands-on work, you have to understand the mechanics.

Q: What would you suggest as the best way to pick up the techniques of editing we've discussed in these chapters?

A: If I were teaching a course in radio production, I think I'd give a basic introduction to the equipment, leave the room, and come back in three weeks. There's no substitute for just using the equipment, practicing on it, playing with it. You've got to make the mistakes. Pretty soon, though, everything will fall into place.

Q: How does someone learning production decide which technique is best for him or her? For example, do you splice or dub?

A: I generally dub if I possibly can. There are applications—say, where you want to remove a word—where you will cut the tape, but every time a tape is cut you take a chance. If you make a mistake, it can be impossible to fix. (By the way, if I have to cut a tape, I sometimes make a copy first and cut the copy instead of the master.)

Remember that choosing a particular technique will be based on the equipment you're using. The choice boils down to what works best. Many turntables, for example, come up to speed very quickly without much of a wow. But if you're using an older model, you may have to adjust for it—slipcueing, for example.

Learn the equipment if you're going to do radio. If you don't, you're just fooling yourself.

APPENDIX B
Conversation With A Radio Network Producer

PRODUCER: DAVID GIBSON, NBC RADIO NETWORK

David Gibson is a producer for NBC Radio. He joined the network after graduating from Gonzaga University in Spokane, Washington, in 1981. Gibson has headed a variety of projects for the network including a weekly live "in-concert" program, sports features, special projects for NBC's "talk net," and demos and promotions in support of other network programming. He is one of the producers of a series of 2-hour specials for radio including a Valentine's Day special called "Love—The Comedy of It All," narrated by Burt Reynolds, "Fifty Years of NBC Comedy," hosted by Johnny Carson, and a Bob Hope Christmas special. Other specials produced by Gibson are a 2-hour movie special aired at Oscar time, a soap opera special hosted by Mason Adams, and a Halloween special using material from old radio dramas.

Gibson's experience also includes work at a multitrack recording studio in Spokane, Washington, where he was an engineer for various recording projects for artists and broadcasting facilities. His background allows a comparison of the job responsibilities of a network producer with production functions in a medium-sized market. His remarks convey a sense of what the production field looks like from the perspective of the country's oldest radio network.

Q: What is the major requirement for being a successful radio producer at the network level?

A: The most important part of being a producer here is really knowing what other departments are available, what they do, and most of all—how to ingratiate yourself with whoever it is that's in charge of the certain department that you need. I use many other depart-

ments—the scheduling and traffic area, the sales area, the research and archives, music library, operations, and network public relations. I use all those different departments a lot. Your project can stand or fall on the basis of how willing other people are to help you out. You want to have the right people to work on the shows you're doing. So you want to be real nice to people like the manager of operations for the network, the person who schedules your engineers, and the studio facilities people.

Q: Are you entirely depending then on other people to do the hands-on work for your productions?

A: Basically yes, but you can exercise a lot of control over who these people are. You want to know all the engineers on the staff: Who knows about music, who knows about sports—so that you can select the right people and then get them scheduled to your assignment. Some people are good at word editing, other people are good at music, and so on. When I was doing my live "in-concert" show, we had a couple of people as engineers who were really into music. In fact, they were musicians. Instead of telling them to "cut here," and "cut there," I could just say "Okay, I want to take out the second verse," or "I want to do the fourth verse twice and take out 12 bars of the guitar solo." This saves you a lot of time and a lot of grief because not only do they know what you're talking about, but they can accomplish a lot of things that you didn't even think of.

Because of the union situation here, we have another step in the ladder. We work with a director. I tell the director what I want, and then he relates to the engineer what it is that has to be done. That sometimes makes it very difficult if your director doesn't understand what it is that you're trying to put together. For someone from a small market it seems totally unnecessary. But on the other hand it provides the advantage of having three people going over the project rather than just one. Someone may suggest something you didn't think of. Or they'll know of a faster, more efficient way to put something together. Plus, the main responsibility of the director is maintaining location of certain pieces and times. If you're a producer, you're trying to be creative, and the last thing you want to be concerned about is running a stopwatch and trying to keep track of how much you're going to have to cut to bring this thing down to time. Having a director means you don't have to worry about those details.

Q: So then, there's quite a difference in how you operate now versus when you worked in a smaller market?

A: When I was in small market, you had time and facilities to just go in and experiment—try something else. At the network, I'm being charged against my budget for every hour of studio time I use, plus time for an engineer and an associate director. So you have to be very well prepared. When you get to the studio, things have to move quickly and be done quickly. You don't have a lot of time to go in and just experiment. You have to have your script pretty well thought out.

Q: Do you write the script?

A: That depends on the contractual situation and what the show is and what it's going to be used for. Some shows require a Writers' Guild writer. Other shows, like a demo for stations or for sales, don't require union writers. So you have to know what you can do and what you can't do in the situation you're being placed in. You can get yourself in a lot of trouble by stepping on the toes of a union.

And speaking of unions, one thing people have to realize is that when you're on the production side where you're doing hands-on work, and when you go from small market to large market, you're going to be very limited in what it is that you're able to do. You have very little creative input into what is being put together. That's basically because of the union situation. There are a lot of pluses to being in the union. You have a lot of advantages and you have great money. However, you're totally cut off from any creative input on any of the things that you do. That's something I think people who want to get into radio programming have to realize. They have to get to know what the responsibilities of the various jobs are so that they don't get themselves into a job that is not exactly what they want.

Q: How much does a network producer have to know about the hands-on aspects of radio production?

A: If you come in not knowing anything about production or the actual hands-on work, you can easily be bamboozled by those doing the actual production for you. And that can finish you in a hurry. In my case, firsthand knowledge has been very useful in other ways too. When I came to NBC they were not doing music programming to any extent. So a lot of the equipment—equalization, noise reduction, compression—was not in use here and the engineers didn't really have any experience in using it. When I came in I began to do music and, knowing about the recording industry, I could let the proper people know that we had to have certain items of equipment in order to do music programming properly. I had worked in a multitrack recording studio in Spokane and I had to keep up on electronics and recording as well as the equipment needed to do audio work. That background has been a definite help as a producer at NBC.

Q: How do you go about the job of coordinating with all the departments you have to work with?

A: It depends on who is giving you the assignment. If somebody comes in from sports I try to talk to people in television and find out what they're doing and how our project dovetails with what they're doing, I have to know what is being sent out as promotion and advertising, and how we'll coordinate all our efforts to get consistency. If you're way out in left field and everyone else is coordinated on a special project and integrated into one specific plan, you're fighting against yourself. So I start by finding out what everybody else is doing in that same avenue and try to build on that, rather than starting from scratch.

For instance, I'm in the process right now of doing a feature on

baseball for the pennant races. There's no use in my choosing a piece of music from the library that I just think is great when sports is using another theme. The theme of our big campaign right now is "Be there," and we build on that whenever we can to tie projects into an identification with NBC. It's obvious that whether I like it or not, I should use the "Be there" theme. That kind of situation, in a lot of cases, dictates the types of music and pieces of music that you'll use.

The other thing is that it's easy for me because NBC is spending hundreds of thousands of dollars to have musicians come in and play theme music for us to identify the network and promote our new season. So all I have to do is call up our people in Los Angeles and they'll send me tapes of all our themes that are currently being used. In addition to current themes, some of the ones that are no longer being used still identify NBC in a certain context—maybe they were used for baseball or football or whatever, but they still evoke a feeling for whatever it is that I'm doing.

Q: What kinds of situation do you run into selecting talent for your projects?

A: In most cases in radio you don't have the money to entice the big names that you want on your show. So you have to come up with a way to get these people that doesn't cost you much money. In one instance we wanted a particularly well-known personality to host on a radio special for us. Since the budget wasn't adequate to pay his price, the question became, What could we offer him that would make him want to be on the show? Well, since we're owned by RCA, we said, "How would you like to have a videodisc player and a full set of videodiscs?" We were able to get him to do the show.

Other times something someone is doing will get them interested in the show. For instance, when we did the first show, an old comedy from NBC's archives, we knew Johnny Carson was a big fan of Jack Benny and really liked radio. So when we approached him, he wanted to do the show just because he'd never done anything like that in radio and he wanted to be able to do a tribute to Jack Benny.

When I was doing my country and western show, I always made it a point to find out what organizations or causes the different artists that I wanted to get on the show were involved in. When I tried to get the Bellamy Brothers, they were reluctant. But I found out that they were involved in an endangered species organization that was trying to protect the manatees in Florida. So I called them and said, "Hey—be on the show and I'm going to give you time on the show to make your pitch about saving the manatees." That was enough to entice them. Those are the kind of things that I always look out for. I try to keep a running record of who is involved in what, so that we can use that as leverage to get them into the shows that we want them to do.

Q: So it is a matter of using resources creatively?

A: Exactly. Basically, what I try to do is use every avenue that I possibly can to get to whatever it is that I want done, whether that involves

choice of music or announcer, or whatever. For example, we have a staff of announcers at NBC who have been on staff for a long time. So people here use this as an advantage. They'll take somebody like Don Pardo, who's been here for years and years, and stick him on "Saturday Night Live" and give that kind of camp feeling to the show. Plus, it gives an identification because people remember the voice when he did "Jeopardy" and all those kinds of thing.

On the other hand, if you want to promote something as new and different and fresh we go to freelance people. For instance, on our soap opera special we used Don Pardo in some sections of old soap operas, but we also used Bill St. James, who is on our owned and operated FM station, to bring in a new voice when we talked about soap operas that are going on now.

Q: The job sounds complex but fascinating.

A: You have to know who can help you. What my job comes down to is being a nice guy. No matter how good you are, if people don't enjoy working with you, they won't help you.

APPENDIX C
Another Time, A Play
By Richard Wilson

Production of this play can serve as a good exercise in understanding the construction and flow of an outstanding drama. It probably will—as intended—pose a great technical challenge. In fact, we considered less difficult and less sophisticated plays for inclusion in this appendix, but decided that the challenge presented here would provide an excellent learning experience. It also graphically points out what we mentioned in Chapter 10 about the need to maintain a fabric of believability.

Richard Wilson is a prize-winning author of fiction and nonfiction. He won the Nebula award of the Science Fiction Writers of America for his novelette, *Mother to the World.* Wilson has written more than 100 published science fiction stories and three novels. He's also written a history book and has been a reporter and editor in Chicago, Washington, New York, and London.

And now, *Another Time. . . .*

SOUND: KEYS IN DOOR, DOOR OPENS, TWO MEN WALK INTO ROOM.

Neighbor (Don): Come up to my place and have a nightcap, Harry. It's still early.

Harry: No thanks. I've had too much already.

Neighbor: You only have a birthday once a year.

Harry: Is that all? Lately they seem to come along more often.

Neighbor: None of that, now. Fifty-three is young. Besides, you don't look a day over 52. This is a nice apartment. You've lived here a long time, haven't you?

Harry: About 30 years. Me and my memories.

Copyright © 1984 Richard Wilson. All rights reserved. Adapted for radio by Carl Hausman. Adaptation used with permission of Richard Wilson.

Neighbor: Of Helen? Sorry, but people in the building do talk.

Harry: It's all right. Helen died here. We were going to be married. Meanwhile, we were living here. The Ninth Avenue El was still up then. The trains rattled right outside these windows. What a racket they made! But we didn't mind. We kept the shades down and felt all the more secluded.

Neighbor: I didn't mean to stir up painful memories.

Harry: It's never painful to think of Helen. I miss the El, though. They started tearing it down the day of her funeral.

SOUND: NEIGHBOR SHUFFLES NERVOUSLY.

Neighbor: Look, I better go.

Harry: It's all right. I live in the past a lot, except when somebody snaps me out of it, like you. Thanks for the pub crawl, Don. It's been years since somebody dragged me out.

Neighbor: Don't mention it. I've got to go.

Harry: Want some coffee or anything? Want to sit with me and watch TV?

Neighbor: No thanks. Good night, Harry. Happy birthday.

Harry: Good night.

SOUND: DOOR OPENS, NEIGHBOR EXITS.
SOUND: HARRY PULLS UP CHAIR, SNAPS ON TELEVISION, TWISTS TV CHANNEL DIAL. THROUGH SOUND OF TELEVISION SPEAKER, COMMERCIALS COME ON. THEY ARE CHANTED AND BUILD TO AN OFFENSIVE CRESCENDO.

Voices: Better! More! Bigger! Newer!
Best! Most! Biggest! Newest!
Pain! Pain! Pain!
Relief! Get relief! Get instant relief!
Cramps? Irregularity? Aching back? Hurt? Hurt?
Eat! Smoke! Drink! Diet! Lose weight! Exercise!
Go! Come! RUN! ASK YOUR DOCTOR! ASK YOUR GROCER!!
ASK YOUR. . . .

SOUND: TV CLICKED OFF. FOOTSTEPS AS HARRY WALKS ACROSS ROOM. CLICK OF RADIO BEING TURNED ON. . . . CHARACTERISTIC SOUND OF STATIONS SLIDING PAST AS DIAL IS TWISTED.

Voice (calm and friendly as he moves the dial): We have brought you the Atwater Kent concert. . . .

New voice (as dial is turned): This is station WEAF signing off. . . .

New voice (as dial is turned): And so it's good night again from those sweethearts of the air, May Singhi Breen and Peter de Rose. . . .

New voice (as dial is turned): This has been Raymond Knight, the Voice of the Diaphragm, enunciating.

New voice (as dial is turned): Tune in again tomorrow to WJZ for Billy Jones and Ernie Hare, the Happiness Boys.

SOUND: HARRY CLICKS OFF RADIO.

Harry (not believing it): WEAF. WJZ. I'm back in the past . . . when I was happy . . . young. When life was uncomplicated. **(Laughs.)** I am *happy. I* am *young.* ***(He begins to believe it.)***

It's true. Why not? As long as I want it to be it's true, here in this room, right now. As long as I don't look in the mirror—as long as I don't switch on the TV.

And I'm 25! Helen's alive! But where is she? She's gone down to the corner, I guess. She'll be back in a minute with our midnight milk and oatmeal cookies. . . . Maybe a couple of charlotte russes.

SOUND: IN DISTANCE, THE RUMBLE OF THE EL. IT GROWS LOUDER, LOUDER, AND CLOSER.

Harry: The El . . . but if I look, it won't be there.

Radio voice: *Yes it will.*

Harry: Who said that? The radio? You . . . but . . . I want it to be, but it isn't.

Radio voice: *Yes it is.*

Harry: I have to meet it halfway. Have faith. I have to go out. Then it will be there. *I know. I know.*

SOUND: THE VAGUE RUMBLING OF AN EL PLATFORM.

Harry: This is the El platform. . . . And the gum machine . . . and the mirror—I'm *young.* **(His voice is reflecting change in age.)**

April: Of course you are. Handsome, too.

Harry: Who are you? Are you Helen?

April: Helen? No. Have you got a buffalo nickel? To get me through the turnstile?

Harry: Buffalo nickel?

April: Jefferson won't do. He hasn't been minted yet. *You* know that.

Harry: I'm not sure I know what you mean.

April: Yes you do. Have you got two buffalo nickels for a Roosevelt dime?

SOUND: CLINK OF COINS AS THEY EXCHANGE.

Harry: How could you know about Roosevelt dimes? He wasn't—isn't even president yet. FDR, I mean. Wouldn't he still be governor of New York?

April: I'm not good at current events, but I think it's later than that. Just a minute, let me get through the turnstile.

SOUND: COIN DROPS AT TURNSTILE AND TURNSTILE TURNS. APRIL'S FOOTSTEPS.

Harry: You're not from here either—are you? Your clothes look right, though. How did you get here? **(Laughs.)** I don't even know what year it is. It was too dark to see the license plates and I couldn't find a newsstand—to buy a paper.

April: You don't need a paper.

Harry: I seem to be about your age. How old are you?

April: Twenty-four.

Harry: And I'm twenty-five. Let's see—I was born **(he figures to himself)**—and if I'm 25 this is 1936. Is that right?

April: It doesn't matter. Everything is relative in the duoverse.

Harry: In the what?

April: Never mind. You don't have to understand.

Harry: I really don't want to—to push it too far. It's too fragile.

April: It's not really. But I can understand your feeling.

Harry: Can you? I was listening to the radio—it's an old Atwater Kent—because I was mad at the television. . . . You know what television is?

April: Yes, of course.

Harry: That's right. You know about Roosevelt dimes and Jefferson nickels. Maybe you know about Helen. She died, but if this is. . . .

April: I'm sorry. You won't find Helen. You can reverse time but you can't cancel death.

Harry: I didn't *really* think you could.

April: You said you were listening to the radio—steeping yourself in the past.

Harry: I didn't say that.

April: That's the way it happens.

Harry: It happened to you, too.

April: Not exactly *happened.* I planned it.

Harry: Well, I certainly didn't—what's your name?

April: April.

Harry (formally): Hello, April. I'm Harry. Where are you going, April?

April: I'll be going with you . . . while you do your sightseeing in 1936. Then I'll go home with you.

Harry (surprised and embarrassed): Oh? Home with me?

April: It'll be all right.

Harry (not so sure): Of course. But—home where the TV set is? You'd be—wouldn't you be—old—?

April: Don't worry about anything, Harry. Enjoy yourself. That's what you came back to do, isn't it? Aren't you happier?

Harry (after a pause): Yes, I am.

April: Where do you want to go?

Harry: First? First to the Staten Island Ferry. Because—because it was there—

April: You don't have to explain. Not in the duoverse.

SOUND: TRAIN RATTLES INTO STATION. . . . SOUND DISSOLVES TO WIND, LAPPING WAVES, HARBOR SOUNDS SUCH AS FOGHORNS IN DISTANCE.

April: I'm glad you had two buffalo nickels for the ferry.

Harry: I'm really here? Literally?

April: What do you think?

Harry: I don't know. Here—now. It's too—Could I meet myself? If I looked, could I find another Harry? The one who's living through 1936 the first time?

April: No. You're the only Harry in this 1936.

Harry: This 1936? I—is that what you mean by—what do you call it—the duoverse? There are more than one?

April: Yes, but you mustn't think I understand everything I have a name for. I do know you couldn't be here—and neither could I—unless there was something controlling the paradoxes. That's the duoverse, they tell me—a twin universe to keep time travelers from running into themselves.

Harry (troubled): Who tells you that? No . . . don't tell me. I don't need to know. I'm just so glad I found you.

April: I'm glad I found you. I'd been looking for so long.

SOUND: FOGHORN.

Harry (almost as a prayer): Let's not lose what we've found. Let's keep it forever.

April: And thou beside me—under the branches of the time-tree . . . ? Something like that? Oh, Harry!

SOUND: THEY EMBRACE AND KISS.

April (with infinite regret): It's impossible, Harry . . . I'm going the other way.

SOUND: HARRY AND APRIL WALKING TO DOOR OF HARRY'S APARTMENT. SOUND OF EL IN BACKGROUND. DOOR OPENS. SOUND OF HARRY AND APRIL WALKING IN.

April: We haven't done much sightseeing in your beloved past. We haven't seen the Hippodrome—the streetcars on Broadway—

Harry: No, don't turn on the lights yet. You're all the past I want. **(Concerned.)** Is it all right for you to be here?

April: It's the way it has to be. There's no other.

Harry: But here I'm old—and you—?

April: Not till we turn on the TV, Harry. Not till then. I'll turn on the lights now.

SOUND: LIGHT SWITCH.

Harry: I'm still young. I'm—sit down, please. What can I get you?

April: Coffee?

Harry: I just have to heat it up. It's already been percolated once.

SOUND: WALKS ACROSS ROOM.

April (calls to him): I might have known you'd have real coffee. No millions of tiny flavor buds for you, eh, Old Timer?

Harry (calls to her): I don't have the room.

SOUND: HARRY WALKS BACK INTO ROOM, SOUND OF CUPS CLINKING AND HARRY AND APRIL DRINKING. HARRY STARTS TO SAY SOMETHING, BUT EL TRAIN DROWNS HIM OUT. FINALLY:

April (puts down cup; sound of her chair scraping back as she stands): Thank you for the coffee—and everything.

Harry (sound of him jumping up): Don't go! Please!

April: I must. It's a long way. Turn on the TV, please.

Harry: No—I won't! I won't make you old!

April: You don't understand.

Harry: Please! It's too early. There's nothing on. Wait. . . .

April: I *have* waited, Harry. You don't know how long.

SOUND OF EL.
SOUND OF APRIL MOVING PAST AND TURNING ON TV. SOUND OF TV VOICE. AS TV VOICE COMES ON, SOUND OF EL DIES OUT.

TV voice: . . . And now, kiddies, it's time for your Uncle Jack to tell you about a wonderful surprise waiting for you and your mommies in the supermarket. . . .

SOUND: TV CLICKS OFF.

Harry (the age once again in his voice): You're the same! I'm old—but you're twenty-four! Even though we're back in the present!

April (sadly): I told you we were going different ways. Your way was back. Mine was—is—forward. Oh, my dear, I'm sorry. I had to use you. I had no choice.

Harry: You came from the past—but in 1936—you weren't even born!

April: I wish—I'm so afraid this will hurt you—but I'm not from your past, or even your present . . . I'm from the future.

Harry: The future—then I'm just—a stop on your journey . . . where you're going . . . I'm dead!

April: No, Harry. It's all—relative. It's what you are *now* that matters. Not what will be, or what was.

Harry: I know I hoped for too much. I wanted my youth and I wanted you—and I can't have both. I can't have either.

April (distressed at his unhappiness): It was to have been so simple, so scientific. I was to go back—they have machines—and make notes. Saturate myself in the atmosphere of the past. Oh, it doesn't matter! You're what counts. I've hurt you and all I wanted was to give you what happiness I could, in passing—

Harry: It doesn't matter. I'm just a phantom in your life—in your real present. Where you belong, I'm only a corpse in the graveyard.

SOUND: APRIL STARTS TO CRY.

Harry: Let me finish. Be realistic. I'm just a complicating factor who got in your way. You mustn't compare yourself with—with someone who doesn't exist in your own time, but think of me occasionally . . . up there in twenty-hundred and—whatever it is.

April: Harry, stop it! Don't kill yourself in your own lifetime . . . I'll stay with you, my dear. I will! I can't do this to you.

Harry: No, I won't let you. Look, I'm a sentimental man who's been privileged to know his youth again. Knowing that youth, I know yours. I won't let you sacrifice yourself—for a phantom who died before you were born.

SOUND: APRIL SOBS.

Harry: Come on, child. Wash your face. Off with that lipstick. Cupid's bows are passé. (Indulgently, fatherly) Scoot! You've got to fix yourself up and find somebody who can make change for a coin that hasn't been minted yet. . . . Forgive my vanity, but I hope this time it's a woman.

SOUND: APRIL WALKS TO BATHROOM, DISTANT SOUND OF WATER RUNNING. SOUND OF WALKING BACK INTO ROOM.

Harry: When you go, don't say goodbye.

April: All right.

Harry: I hate long goodbyes. Leave as if—as if you were going down to the corner—to get some—some milk and oatmeal cookies.

April (tries to pretend): All right. I guess I'm ready. Is there—anything else you want while I'm out?

Harry: Maybe a charlotte russe?

April (the pretense fails): Oh, Harry, I don't even know what that is!

Harry: Never mind.

SOUND: DOOR OPENING, APRIL WALKS OUT. THERE IS SILENCE. SUDDENLY, THE DOOR BURSTS OPEN. APRIL'S FOOTSTEPS AS SHE RUNS IN.

Harry: You didn't go!

April (panting, barely able to speak): Y-yes.

Harry: You couldn't have, and been back so soon.

April (panting): I could have come back to yesterday, if I'd wanted, traveling in time. At least there *is* a yesterday.

Harry: Of course there's a yesterday. That's where we—you mean where you went back to—ahead to—whatever you say—it's not—it's been—?

April: There's no tomorrow.

Harry: What do you mean?

April: Where I was going I'd have been a corpse—without even a graveyard. I mean when I got close to where I wanted to go I realized it wasn't even there any more. Something wiped it out—or it finally blew itself up—I don't know what. I just know it's gone.

Harry: . . . and so you came back to me.

April: That's not very flattering is it? I'm sorry.

Harry: You're here. The details don't matter.

April: You're the one I turned to.

Harry: That matters. Very much. You're welcome. But the one you've turned to is an old man,

April: Hush. You're not old. You've lived in a suspended life. I'm the one who's aged, dashing back and forth between the centuries.

Harry: You lie—adorably. But stay with me. At least until you find your bearings in this crazy time.

April: I *want* to stay with you. You're the same person I met on the El platform. Do you think you've changed—inside?

Harry (lightly): Inside, I always think of myself as 19—much too young for a mature woman like you.

April: Oh, Harry, I *can* love you. I will. Just give me a little time.

Harry: You have all the time I have left.

April: . . . I want to stay with you forever, Harry. And if we only listen to the radio all our remaining years, that'll be all right, as long as we're together. And one night, Harry, who knows—we'll turn on the old Atwater Kent—and hear the Street Singer or the Happiness Boys—and then the program will be drowned out by the Ninth Avenue El—I can almost hear it—rattling its way through that magic time when you're twenty-five and I'm twenty-four.

SOUND: THE EL IS HEARD. ITS SOUND SWELLS AND THEN FADES TO SILENCE.

SUGGESTED READING

- Stanley R. Alten. *Audio in Media,* 2d ed. Belmont, Calif.: Wadsworth Publishing Company, 1986. A comprehensive book that examines advanced production techniques and how those techniques apply to various media such as radio, TV, and film. Includes excellent sections on music recording and sound studio design.
- Linda Busby and Donald Parker. *The Art and Science of Radio.* Newton, Mass.: Allyn & Bacon, 1985. A brief overview of the general operations of a radio station.
- Don Davis and Carolyn Davis. *Sound System Engineering.* Indianapolis: Howard W. Sams, 1975. A technical approach to building, designing, and operating sound systems.
- Harold E. Ennes. *AM/FM Broadcast Operations.* Indianapolis: Howard W. Sams, 1974. A very technical and complete handbook on audio and radio broadcasting theory and procedure. A good choice for the advanced reader.
- F. Alton Everest. *Acoustic Techniques for Home and Studio,* 2d ed. Blue Ridge Summit, Penn.: TAB Books, 1984. Explains the principles of human hearing and sound with specific information about resonance, diffusion, and interference.
- Joseph S. Johnson and Kenneth K. Jones. *Modern Radio Station Practices,* 2d ed. Belmont, Calif.: Wadsworth Publishing Company, 1978. A comprehensive approach to radio station operations, including production, from a management point of view.
- Alex Nisbett. *The Technique of the Sound Studio,* 4th ed. Stoneham, Mass.: Focal Press, 1979. A comprehensive approach to the subject. The book contains study aids and an extensive glossary.
- Alex Nisbett. *The Use of Microphones,* 2d ed. Stoneham, Mass.: Focal Press, 1983. A thorough examination of mic placement and use. Particularly helpful to anyone doing multiple-mic setups.

- David Ogilvy. *Confessions of an Advertising Man.* New York: Atheneum, 1980. A revealing insight into the world of professional advertising by the founder of one of the world's most successful advertising agencies.
- Robert S. Oringel. *Audio Control Handbook,* 5th ed. New York: Hastings House, 1983. A technically oriented book, which will be of use to students interested in exploring some of the engineering applications involved in radio.
- Vance Packard. *The Hidden Persuaders.* New York: David McKay Co., Inc., 1957. Explores some of the ways people are influenced and manipulated by professional persuaders who are seeking to sell products, people, or ideas.
- Robert E. Runstein. *Modern Recording Techniques.* Indianapolis: Howard W. Sams, 1974. Intended primarily for a music recordist, rather than broadcaster, this book provides interesting insights into some of the more technical areas such as mixing and electronic effects.
- Herbert Zettl. *Television Production Handbook,* 4th ed. Belmont, Calif.: Wadsworth Publishing Company, 1984. Has two chapters on television audio that include techniques of miking music performance and other mic usage.

Two journals useful in keeping up-to-date are *Broadcasting* and *Broadcast Management and Engineering. Broadcasting* is geared toward broadcast owners and managers but contains useful information on new technical developments in radio. *Broadcast Management and Engineering* specifically addresses recent trends in electronic equipment. Other useful magazines are *Audio, Sound International,* and *Studio Sound.*

GLOSSARY

acoustics. The study of sound. The properties of a studio, room, or concert hall, that contribute to the quality of sound heard in it.

actuality. The sound of an event, recorded or broadcast at the time the event took place. Also called a sound bite.

air. A source on the console that monitors the output of the station after it has been subjected to limiters and compressors.

airshift. Period of time during which a radio operator puts programming on the air at a radio station.

amplitude. Designation for the property of a sound wave or electrical signal that determines its magnitude.

audio. A reference to the transmission or reception of sound.

audition. A mode of console operation in which sound can be channeled through without being fed to the on-air transmitter. Also assessing material or talent in advance of production.

backtracking. Counterclockwise rotation of a disc on a broadcast turntable. Part of the sequence of functions used to cue a record.

bidirectional. A microphone pickup pattern in which sound sources are accepted from two opposite directions, but not from the sides.

blast filter. See **pop filter.**

board. Common term for an audio control console.

bus. The system that mixes together the outputs of a number of sound sources.

cardioid. Describes a microphone with a unidirectional, heart-shaped pickup pattern.

cartridge. The element of a record player that converts vibrations of the stylus to electrical energy.

cartridge machine. A unit that plays and/or records cartridge tapes.

cartridge tape. A continuous loop of recording tape housed in a plastic case usually called a "cart."

channel. The route followed by a signal as it travels through the components of a system. An input or output designation on an audio control console.

compression. The process used to minimize distortion by reducing the differences in level between low- and high-volume segments of a recorded or broadcast sound.

condenser mic. A microphone that contains a capacitive electrical element. Changes in the vibrating diaphragm of the mic alter the strength of the charge held by the electrical element. Condenser mics often require an external power supply.

console. A device for amplifying, routing, and mixing audio signals.

cross-fade. Gradual replacement of one sound source with another. One sound is faded out, and the other is simultaneously faded up. At one point their sound levels are the same.

cue. To ready a record or tape playback device so that it will play at the first point of sound or proper starting point.

To indicate, by hand signal or other means, the desired time to begin a performing activity.

cut. A segment of recorded sound on a disc or tape.

To record a segment of audio production such as a commercial or public service announcement.

decibel (dB). As applied to sound, a relative measure of volume.

delegation switch. A device that allows the operator of a console to choose which of two or more sources is to be controlled by a particular pot.

diaphragm. The portion of a microphone that vibrates in response to sound.

distortion. A change or altering in the quality of a sound that impairs the ability of a listener to identify it with its source.

donut. Term used in radio production to describe a recorded audio segment with an introduction, an ending, and a music bed. An announcer uses the segment as a production aid by reading copy over the music bed.

dubbing. Recording sound from one recorded source to make another recording.

dynamic mic. A microphone in which a coil moves through a magnetic field in response to sound vibration sensed by the diaphragm of the mic.

dynamic range. Refers to the difference in volume between the loudest and quietest sounds of a source.

echo. Repetition of a sound, usually caused by the reflection of the source bouncing off a hard surface.

An electronic special effect created by a delay unit or by feeding back the output of a tape machine's playback head while recording.

editing. In audio production, the alteration of a recorded sound. Most commonly done with audio tape by physically cutting and splicing the tape or by electronic transfer from machine to machine.

editing block. A plastic or metal block used to properly align audio tape for cutting and splicing.

editing/production structures. Patterns of editing commonly used in radio production: "establish music, voice under, voice up," "cross-fade," "voice out, music up," "music wrap," "voice wrap," and various combinations of these.

equalization. Alteration of a sound source by varying the frequency balance of the sound source.

fade. Bringing a sound source up or down on an audio console at a given rate of speed, usually slowly.

false ending. Characteristic of some recorded material in which the apparent end of the segment in fact is not the end.

feedback. Reamplification of a sound resulting in a loud screech from a loudspeaker. Often caused by mic pickup of the output of a speaker that is carrying the sound being picked up by the mic. Also heard when the record head of a tape machine receives the output signal of the same recorder.

filter. An electronic system that reduces or eliminates designated frequencies.

flanging. Slightly delayed reproduction of a source, which is mixed with the original source of that sound and altered to produce a special effect.

format. A radio station's programming strategy to attract a particular audience. Format is the mix of all elements of a station's sound, including type of music played, style of announcing, and so on.

frequency. The number of times a sound wave varies in one second. Expressed as cycles per second (cps) or hertz (Hz).

frequency response. The range of frequencies that can be reproduced by an audio system.

harmonics. Frequencies related to a fundamental frequency that are multiples of the original. The mixture of harmonics with the fundamental gives a sound its particular timbre or tonal color.

harmonizer. An electronic device used to vary pitch, tempo, and the harmonics of a sound source to create special effects.

heads. The devices on a tape machine that impart a signal to the tape. They are generally the erase head, the record head, and the playback head. The erase head scrambles the iron oxide particles on the tape, the record head arranges the particles in order, and the playback head reads the pattern formed by the record head.

hertz (Hz). Designation for frequency. Same as cycles per second. Named after Heinrich Hertz, whose discoveries made possible radio transmission.

isolated component recording. Recording various components of an orchestra or other multiple-component sound sources using a separate microphone to record each component. The output of each mic is recorded on a separate channel, for mixing after the recording session.

leader tape. Plastic or colored tape that doesn't record or play back. It is used to separate cuts on a tape or at the beginning or end of a tape to protect the recorded portion from damage. Some leader tape also shows marks that allow the operator to accurately time segments between audio cuts.

limiter. A device to suppress dynamic levels of a reproduced sound above a preset limit to provide a more constant output level.

magnetic tape. In radio production, audio tape that is made of a backing strip coated with iron oxide particles. When the particles are aligned in response to a signal in a recording device, the signal can be stored and later played back as sound.

master pot. The potentiometer (volume control) that governs the entire output of a console.

microphone. A transducer that converts sound energy to an electrical signal, which may then be amplified, recorded, or broadcast.

mix. To combine a number of sound sources. Commonly used as "mix-down," a session of blending and balancing the various tracks of a multitrack recording.

modulation. The electrical imprint of a sound signal on an audio or radio wave.

monaural. Literally "one-eared"; only one channel of audio. The addition of another discrete channel gives a stereo effect.

monitor. Loudspeaker in a sound studio.

moving coil. A type of microphone that uses a coil that moves through a magnetic field in response to the movement of a diaphragm, which vibrates in response to sound waves. The movement of the coil produces an electrical signal.

multichannel. Designation of a type of console used in sound recording. Consoles with 4 to 32 output channels are used for mixing various sound sources.

music bed. A segment of recorded music used as background sound in a broadcast production, usually a commercial. (See *donut.*)

network. A linkage of broadcast stations in which a central source of programming supplies material to individual stations making up the system.

noise reduction. The process of reducing undesired spurious sound elements in an audio recording system.

omnidirectional. Describing a microphone pickup pattern in which sound sources are picked up equally well in all directions regardless of their position in relation to the microphone.

output. The designation for that which is fed out of an audio system.

patching. A method of changing the routing of a signal through an audio system. Also a connection that is temporarily placed between audio inputs and outputs.

phase. When two or more sounds reach a microphone at the same time, the sounds are said to be "in phase," and their amplitudes combine. When sounds reach the microphone at different times, they are said to be "out of phase," and they cancel each other. The measurement of a sound source is based on its sine wave representation of 360 degrees. Sources that are in phase begin and end at the same point, sounds out of phase begin at different points.

pickup pattern. A representation of the area within which a microphone effectively picks up sound. Based on a 360-degree polar pattern.

playback. Listening to an output of a sound source, like a record or tape.

playback (only). Designation for a cartridge tape machine that does not have a recording capability.

polar pattern. A graph using concentric circles that are assigned decreasing values toward the center of the graph. A pattern superimposed on the graph represents the area within which the microphone effectively picks up sound.

pop filter. A wind-blocking screen in or on a microphone designed to prevent the blasting or popping noise caused by announcers who pop their *p*'s and *b*'s.

popping. An undesirable explosive sound caused by too vigorous pronunciation of sounds such as *"p"* and *"b."*

pot. A potentiometer; the device on an audio console that controls volume.

preamp. A small amplifier that boosts a signal, usually up to line level. It generally accomplishes the first step in the amplification process.

program. A mode of operation in which sound can be channeled through the console to the on-air transmitter.

rarefaction. An area in which air molecules become less dense; opposite of compression. Sound waves are carried through the air by a series of rarefactions and compressions.

remote. Refers to productions done on location as opposed to in a studio.

An input on an audio console that comes from an external location.

ribbon mic. A microphone with a paper-thin element that vibrates in response to the velocity of sound waves. The element is suspended in a magnetic field that converts the sound to an electrical signal.

segué. Two recordings played consecutively without a live interruption.

shotgun mic. A long, narrow microphone that has a very narrow, highly directional pickup pattern.

sibilance. The noticeable prominence of *''s''* sounds.

signal-to-noise ratio. The ratio between the intended sounds of a recording or broadcast and the undesirable noise of a system expressed in decibels.

slip starting. A method of starting a record on a turntable whereby the operator holds the record as the turntable spins and releases the record to get instant startup. The term is often used interchangeably with slipcueing.

sound. The perception by the ear or other instrument of waves resulting from the vibrations of air molecules.

sound effects (SFX). Any sound other than music or speech that is used to help create an image, evoke an emotion, compress time, clarify or reinforce a message.

splicing. The process of joining together two pieces of recording tape, using an editing block and adhesive tape made specifically for this purpose. Most commonly done as part of the editing process.

spot. A prerecorded announcement, usually a commercial.

stereo. Designation for sound reproduction that uses two channels to create the illusion of depth and dimension of space.

stylus. The portion of a record player that makes contact with the grooves in a record and vibrates in response to the shape of grooves. The vibrations create in the cartridge an electrical signal that is fed into an amplifier and distributed within a sound system.

submixer. Delegation of several sources to one of several submasters on a multitrack console.

submixing. Use of a device that allows for more than one input to be fed into a single channel of an audio console.

task-oriented sequence. The process of structuring radio production tasks in the most convenient and efficient method within the confines of the production studio. Thus reversing the ending of a spot may be done first if the order makes a more efficient sequence of events.

telco drop. The point at which the telephone company terminates a transmission line that will carry a remote signal back to the studio from the site of a remote broadcast. The station's remote equipment is connected to the drop.

total sound recording. A recording situation in which the entire sound output of a musical group, for example, is recorded as a single sound source rather than recording separate sections or instruments using separate mics, which are fed to separate recording tracks of a multitrack recorder.

track. That portion of a strip of magnetic tape used for recording sound information.

The ability of a phonograph cartridge to accurately trace the grooves of a record without distortion.

transducer. Any device that performs the function of converting energy from one form to another. A microphone acts as a transducer when it converts sound energy to electrical energy.

turntable. System consisting of plate, drive mechanism, tonearm, speed control, and on–off switch, used for playing disc recordings.

unidirectional. A microphone pickup pattern in which sound sources are picked up clearly from one direction only.

voice actuality. A report from a journalist with an actuality segment inserted.

voicer. An oral report of a straight news item, spoken by a journalist who signs off with a name. Voicers are inserted into a newscast by the producer, who may also be the on-air announcer.

volume. The level of sound, perceived as varying degrees of loudness.

volume unit meter (VU meter). A device that provides a visual readout of loudness. The most important use of a VU meter is taking zero on the scale as a reference for the proper level of audio output.

wire service. A newsgathering organization that supplies news copy and audio reports to subscribers, who use the wire service material to supplement their own newsgathering resources.

wow. The sound of a record or tape when the audio portion is heard before the playback device has reached full speed.

INDEX

acetate (tape base), 43
acoustic network, 70
acoustics, 203
action, dramatic, 153
actuality, 121, 126, 179, 181–182, 184, 186, 190, 193
Adams, Mason, 230
ad-lib, 106, 129, 182
adult contemporary format, 4
advertising, 3–4, 163, 168, 170, 175
affiliate, network, 6, 185–186
agency, advertising, 164, 170
airplay, 174
airshift, 8, 124–130, 134, 141
airtime, 107
AKG mic, 217
album-oriented rock, 5
alligator clips, 191–192
AM, 213, 228
ambient sound, 84, 122, 161, 205
American Society of Composers, Authors, and Publishers (ASCAP), 112
amplification, 11, 14, 23–24
amplitude, 63, 65–67, 69
announcer, 125, 134
Another Time, 235–243
appeals, advertising, 163, 166, 168–170
assembly, news, 181
Associated Press, 184
attention, 154–155, 163
audience, 4–5
audio tape, 43
audition bus, 211
audition channel, 16–19, 23, 28, 59, 126
authority, appeal to, 169
automation, 5–6

background audio, 160
backplate, 68–69
backtiming, 42
backtracking, 33, 36–37, 41, 103, 134
baffles, sound, 217
balance, 203
bandwagon effect, appeal to, 169–170
baseball, 202–203
basketball, 203
bass roll-off, 80, 84, 86
beautiful music station, 164
bed, music. *See* music bed
believability, 172
Bellamy Brothers, 233
Benny, Jack, 233
Benoit, Phil, 165, 171
bidirectional mic, 69–70, 72, 76, 85, 115, 160, 214
billboard, 186–187
blast filter, 84–85
blending, 131
Block, Martin, 21
board. *See* console
boom mount, mic, 84, 159
boxing, 204
brass, 217
breaking normal, 28–29. *See also* patch
breathy voice, 146
broadcast loop, telephone, 197
Broadcast Music Incorporated (BMI), 112
bulker (bulk eraser), 54–55, 57
bus, 211
bus delegation, 211
bus, output, 211–212

cable, 200
call-in show, 188–189
capacitor, 67–68. *See also* condenser mic
capstan, 45, 47
cardioid, 69–72, 75–76, 80, 85, 115–116, 150, 197–198, 214, 223
Carson, Johnny, 230, 233
cartridge, 31–32, 39. *See also* tonearm
cartridge tape, 23, 46, 52–53, 57, 59, 100, 102, 108, 121, 128, 131–132, 174, 184, 186, 196, 226–227
cassette tape, 50–52, 54, 101
channel, 13, 29, 208, 210
channel bouncing, 222
classical format, 5
classical music, 114
clock, 200
coincident mic operation, 214–215
combo operation, 7, 29, 90, 107, 124–125, 149, 227
commercials, 8, 28, 59, 90, 104, 106, 109, 112, 122–125, 128–129, 134, 138, 140–141, 144–145, 152–156, 161–177, 202, 212, 214, 223
communication, system, remote, 201
compact disc, 39–40
complex waveform, 66
compressing time, in drama, 156
compression, 61–63, 66, 70, 144, 220, 232
condenser mic, 67–69, 71, 76–77, 81, 84, 227
Confessions of an Advertising Man, 164
conflict, dramatic, 152–153
console, 10–29, 41, 57–58, 68, 108, 121, 124–125, 128–129, 131–133, 149, 208–210, 226–227
  multitrack, 209–210
  operator, 189, 196, 206
  remote, 200
  stereo, 214
control board. *See* console
control room, 8, 133
controls, tape machine, 47
co-op advertising, 142
Cosell, Howard, 146
cough switch, 199
countdown, 49, 186
country format, 4

country music, 114
creative concept, 165
cross-fade, 42, 102, 123, 143, 149
crowd noise, 198, 204
cue channel, 11, 16–18, 23, 59
cueing, 15, 29, 33, 36, 48, 123, 125, 128–129, 197
cue tone, 49, 52–57, 100
cut, 33, 36–37, 113, 128, 142, 174, 188
cycle, 62, 66

dayparts, 5
dB (decibel), 65–66, 70
dB SPL, 65
dbx noise reduction, 221
dead acoustics, 108–109, 150
dead air, 15, 132
dead potting, 38, 42, 103, 134
decay, 66
decibel sound pressure level, 65
deck, tape, 57
delegation switch, 21, 23, 29
denoument, 153
dialog, 153
diaphragm, 67–71, 228
digital sound, 40
directional mic, 204–205. *See also* cardioid
director, 231
disc, 30–32, 34, 36, 41–42, 48, 102, 111, 120, 123
disc jockey, 2, 144, 146
distortion, 145
DJ. *See* disc jockey
documentary, 156, 160
Dolby, 51, 220–221
donut, 170–171
double audio, 54
double tracking, 221–222
drama, 152–161, 172, 235–243
drive, psychological, 163
drive wheel, 53
drums, 217
dub (duplicate), 51, 58, 90, 97, 121, 229
duration, 66
dynamic mic, 227–228. *See also* moving coil mic
dynamic range, 40, 220

earphones, 201. *See also* headset
echo, 66, 144–145, 173, 221
editing, 48, 51, 101–104, 121, 194
  point, 91–96
  structures, 171
  tabs, 97
editing block, 94–96, 98
ego, appeal to, 169
electromagnetic field, 43
electronic editing, 91, 97
Electro-Voice mic, 77–78, 84–85, 217
Electro-Voice mixer, 25
Emergency Broadcast System, 125
emotional triggers, appeal to, 170
EMT turntable, 39
engineering, 15, 29, 195, 197, 209, 218, 226, 231
equalization, 21, 211, 219, 232
equipment, remote, 199–200
erase head, 45–48, 54
establish, 102, 105
evoking emotion, 141
excitement, 140
exposition, 154

fact sheet, 129
fade, 123, 132
fader, 210
fade-up, 149
false ending, 132
fast forward, 48
fear of rejection, appeal to, 169
Federal Communications Commission, 220
feedback, 18–19, 58, 80
feed, telephone, 191
  wire service, 184
Fessenden, 2
field sports, 204
filter, 211, 220
flanger, 221–222
flat response, frequency, 84
floor stand, mic, 82, 159
flux, 46
FM (frequency modulation), 5, 145–146, 150, 213, 228
football, 203
format, 3–6, 15, 41, 114, 124, 130, 141, 208
forward echo, 222
Freberg, Stan, 164
frequency, 62–67, 76, 211
  range, 77, 80, 220
  response, 73, 76–77, 79–81, 227
full track, 49–50
fundamental, 64

generation, dubbing, 121
generic music, 112, 170
Gibson, David, 230–234
Gonzaga University, 230
graphic equalization, 219
groove, disc, 120

half-track, 49–51
hand-held mic, 77–79
hand signals, 118–120

hard sell, 172
harmonics, 66, 221
harmonizer, 221
Harvey, Paul, 146
Hausman, Carl, 199, 235n
head (tape begins), 95
head, magnetic, 44–49, 51–52
headphones, 19–20, 82
headset, 24
headset mic, 77–78, 198
headstack, 49
The Hidden Persuaders, 164
high-resolution signal, 145
hit radio format, 4
hockey, 203
Hope, Bob, 230
hot-potting, 38, 41, 58
humor, 163, 174
Hurd, Paul, 226–228
hypercardioid, 74
Hz (hertz), 62–66

identification, 140
idler arm, 45, 47
input channel, 23
input module, 211
interval, 62
interview, 187, 189, 194
inverse pyramid, 180
iron oxide, 43, 48
isolated component recording, 213–214, 217–218
isolation booth, 217

jazz, 114
jingles, 170, 214

key, 13, 131
kill, mic, 119
KVI Radio, Seattle, 225

land lines, telephone, 6, 197
lavalier mic, 77
leader tape, 49, 95, 100
lead grooves, 33, 37, 41
lead, news, 194
lead story, 181
legal policy, 191
level, 117, 119. *See also* mic level signal, line level
licensing fee, music, 112, 142
limiter, 220
line level, 21, 84, 210
lively acoustics, 150
live production, 106–107, 131–133
local angle, news, 193
local news, 184
loudness, 67, 159. *See also* volume

magnetic tape, 43
make good, 124
Marconi, 2
master disc, 33
master pot, 20, 23
melodrama, 153
mic level signal, 21, 84, 210
microphone, 18, 20, 26, 28–29, 31, 57, 60–87, 108, 115, 118, 120, 123, 133, 145, 150, 158, 197, 199–200, 204–205
  parabolic, 203
  stands, 201
  technique, 217–218
Micro-Trak Corporation, 196
microwave unit, 196
middle-side mic orientation, 214–216
Mills, Bob, 228–229
mixing, 11, 24, 107, 121
modulation, 13
monitor, 14, 18, 132–133, 211–212
monoaural, 50
Morton, Jack, 225–227
Mother to the World, 235
motivational research, 164
movement, 158
moving coil mic, 67–76, 81–82, 84, 86, 197. *See also* dynamic mic
multichannel recording, 207, 213
multiple, 28, 198
multiple input channels, 15
multitrack recording, 232
music, 138, 142–143, 156, 175
  bed, 102, 112, 121, 123, 142, 174–175
  in commercials, 170
  generic, 170
  library, 112–113, 170
  license, 111–112
  programming, 183
  recording, 111, 213
  wrap, 103
muting system, 18
mylar, 43

NBC Radio Network, 227, 230
Nebula Award, 235
needle. *See* stylus
needle drop, 142
network, 6, 28, 133
  feed, 21
  news, 183
Neumann mic, 76–78, 84, 218, 227
news, 58–59, 90, 107, 121–122, 125, 128–129, 141, 145, 152, 156, 178–195
  assembly, 181
  gathering, 179

news (*continued*)
interview, 148
judgment, 181
local, 184
newscast, 183, 192
operations, 51
producer, 192
room, 183
writing, 180
noise, 13, 55, 57, 101, 120, 122, 198, 205
cancellation, 198
reduction, 51, 220–221, 232
wild, 193
normal connection (patch), 28

obscenity, 131
O'Donnell, Lew, 165
Ogilvy, David, 164
omnidirectional, 69–70, 76, 80, 84–86, 115, 122, 160
output bus, 211–212
outro, 134
overdub, 208
overmodulation, 14
oxide, 43, 48, 51, 54, 226

pace, 130, 145–146, 182
Packard, Vance, 164
panel discussion, 188
pan pot, 211, 222
paper supply, wire service, 186
parabolic mic, 203, 205
parametric equalization, 219
Pardo, Don, 234
patch, 26
bay, 26–28, 108, 132
cord, 27, 132–133
personal fulfillment, appeal to, 168
personality, mic, 79, 81–82, 228
perspective, 159
phantom power supply, 68, 77, 84
phase, 71, 73, 115–116, 214
piano, 217–218
pickup capsule, 77, 79
pickup pattern, 69–76, 80, 82, 115–117, 148
pinch roller, 45, 47
pitch, 65–66
plate (turntable), 30, 36
playback head, 45–47, 54
playback only cart, 53
plugs, 26
polar pattern, 79
polyphonic music, 114
pop filter, 85
popping, 81–82, 115, 227
popular music, 114
portable tape machine, 161, 194, 205
ports, mic, 70, 73
pot, 12–17, 20, 22–23, 29, 58, 117, 131, 222, 226
pan, 211
remote, 196
potentiometer, 24. *See also* pot
power cord, 200
power supply, mic, 81
preamplifier, 12, 23
presence, 160
press conference, 195
pressure gradient, 67
pressure zone mic, 221
prestige, appeal to, 169
producer, 7–8, 106, 110–111, 121, 125–126, 130, 141–142, 145–146, 148–149, 156, 159, 161, 164, 171, 174, 182, 189, 201, 209, 230–234
production elements, 138–151
production library, 112
production structures, editing, 102–104
production studio, 107–111, 206
production value, 175, 180, 182
program
bus, 211
channel, 14, 16, 18–19, 23, 28, 57, 59
log, 125, 127–128
programming, 6
promo, 122
proximity effect, 75, 80, 86
PSA (public service announcement), 8, 134, 150–151, 183, 191
public address system, 198
public affairs, 152, 156, 178–190

quality, appeal to, 169
quarter track, 49–51

Radio Advertising Bureau, 164
range, frequency, 73, 77
rarefaction, 61–63, 66–71
ratings services, 23
RCA mic, 76, 85–86
record control, tape machine, 48
record head, 45–48, 54
recording, 106–123, 201
equipment, 183
isolated component, 213–214, 217–218
music, 213
multichannel, 207, 213
multitrack, 232
tape, 43–59
total sound, 213–214
recuing, cart, 55, 132, 134
reels, tape, 44, 47, 93
reel-to-reel tape, 23, 27, 44–48, 51, 54, 57–59, 101, 174, 184

remote, 195–206
  console, 196
  lines, 22
  planning, 199–200
  pot, 196
  site, 200
resolution, 153
response curve, 73, 75–76, 80–81, 219
reverberation, 66, 158, 211, 222–223
rewind control, tape machine, 48
Reynolds, Burt, 230
ribbon mic, 67–68, 70–71, 76, 81–82, 86
rip-and-read, 185
rock music, 113
routing, 11, 24

satellite, 6–7, 184
Saturday Night Live, 234
schedule, wire service, 186
Schneider, Jay, 227
Science Fiction Writers of America, 235
script, 155, 157, 166–167, 231
segue, 102
Sennheiser mic, 78, 84
sexual success, appeal to, 169
SFX. *See* sound effects
shaper, sound, 211
shotgun mic, 77, 79
Shure mic, 85
sibilance, 115
signal-to-noise ratio, 13
sincerity, 172
sine wave, 62–64, 66
singers, 217
slide fader, 12, 23–24, 210
slipcueing, 36, 38–39, 41–42, 229
slip starting, 37
slug, news story, 185
solo, 211
Sony mic, 84
sound, 60–67
sound bite, news story, 179, 191
sound effects, 56, 58, 120, 138, 141, 143–144, 150, 156–157, 161, 173, 175
sound of station, 3, 130–131
sound on sound, 56
sound over sound, 54
spaced pair mic orientation, 214–216
spatial enhancer, 221
special events, 189
specialty music, 114
speech bump, 80
spinning the disc, 36–37, 39
spinning the plate, 33, 35, 39, 42
splicing, 90–100, 121, 229
split, 185
sports, 86
sports production, 195–206
spot, 110, 146, 148–149, 157, 161, 166, 229. *See also* commercial or PSA
stand, mic, 201
state split, 184
station identification, 59, 130
station sound, 3, 130–131
stereo, 24–25, 49–50, 159, 207–208, 213
stereo console, 214
stinger, newscast, 143
stop control, tape machine, 48
stretch, 119
strings, 217
St. James, Bill, 233
studio mic, 77, 79, 150
studio recording, 232
stylus, 31–33, 35–37, 39–41, 120
submixing, 26, 196
supercardioid, 73–74, 84
supply reel, 44, 47
suspense, dramatic, 153
syndicators, 5–6
synthesizer, 217
system mic, 77, 79

table stand, mic, 82
tail (tape end), 95
take-up reel, 44, 47
talkback system, 108
talk shows, 8, 182, 187–188
tape deck, 227
tape delay system, 129, 189
tape, electrical, etc., 200
tape guides, 47
tape path, 45
tape machine, 23, 27, 44–48, 51, 54, 57–59, 101, 108, 133, 174, 184, 208, 226
  speed select, 45
  transport mechanism, 47
target audience, 4, 164
task-oriented sequence, 111
TEAC cassette recorder, 51
technical considerations, drama, 158–160
Technics turntable, 40
telco drop, 197
telephone, 193, 200, 202
  interview, 191
  lines, 197
  recording, 179, 184, 191
teletype, 125, 187
telex communication, 78
terminal block, 197
theme, 138
tight board, 124
timbre, 66–67
timer, 149
timing, 145–146
tonearm, 36, 120, 227
tone generator, 63

top forty format, 4
total sound recording, 213–214
track, 49, 207
transducer, 31–33, 39, 43, 60–61, 76
transmission, wire service, 186
transmitter, 124, 196
treatment, 175
trim control, 210–211
turntable, 12, 15, 19, 23, 28–42, 48, 108, 149, 196, 226, 229
  drive mechanism, 31–32
  speed control, 31–32
  switch, 31–32
  tonearm, 31
two-inch audio tape, 209
typos, wire service, 186

unidirectional mic, 73, 84
union rules, 125, 133, 231–232
United Press International, 184–185, 187
up-tempo, 140

value, appeal to, 169
vertical fader, 12, 23, 210
visual (cue) signals, 29
voice actuality, 181–182, 186
voice, in commercials, 171
voicer, 181, 184, 186
voice over, 151, 214
voice quality, 146
voice wrap, 103
volume, 11, 65, 67
VU (volume unit) meter, 13–14, 17, 23–24, 28, 45, 48, 54, 65, 149, 173, 213, 227

waveform. *See* sine or complex wave
weather, 185
WHDH Radio, Boston, 226
whimsy, 172
wild sound, 179, 193, 198
Wilson, Richard, 235
Winchell, Walter, 145
wind filter, 198, 200
wind screen, mic, 85, 199, 228
wireless mic, 199
wire service, 128, 130, 184–187, 191
WNEW, New York, 2
woodwinds, 218–219
wow, 36, 56–57
wrap-up, 119
Writers' Guild, 232
writing news, 180
WROC, Rochester, NY, 228

XLR connector, 82–83, 198

zero VU, 65

Do you want to succeed in radio production? Here's the book that shows you how to

- Create a message
- Achieve effects
- Communicate with listeners

MODERN RADIO PRODUCTION explains the latest equipment and shows you how to use that hardware in editing, news production, commercial production, and on-air work. This book goes several steps further: it demonstrates the role of production in radio programming and puts both equipment and operating procedures in the larger context of communication.

In this book you'll find:

- Step-by-step guides to operating key equipment, illustrated with photo sequences and diagrams
- Coverage of practical techniques—splicing, dubbing, editing—and the different requirements for recorded and on-air productions
- "How-to" information you can use to create dramatic effects, pull an airshift, create effective commercials, mike a poor speaker, organize a complex production, or integrate the techniques necessary for successful news coverage

MODERN RADIO PRODUCTION
is another outstanding addition to the
Wadsworth Series in Mass Communication

ISBN 0-534-05064-6